Contents

0.1 Alphabetical Index 2
1.1 Maintenance 21
1.2 USA Warranty 47
2.1 Safety First 87
3.1 Controls and Equipment 169
3.2 Tips and Advice 275
3.3 Technical Data 392
iPod Adapter 403

Volkswagen
Owner's Manual

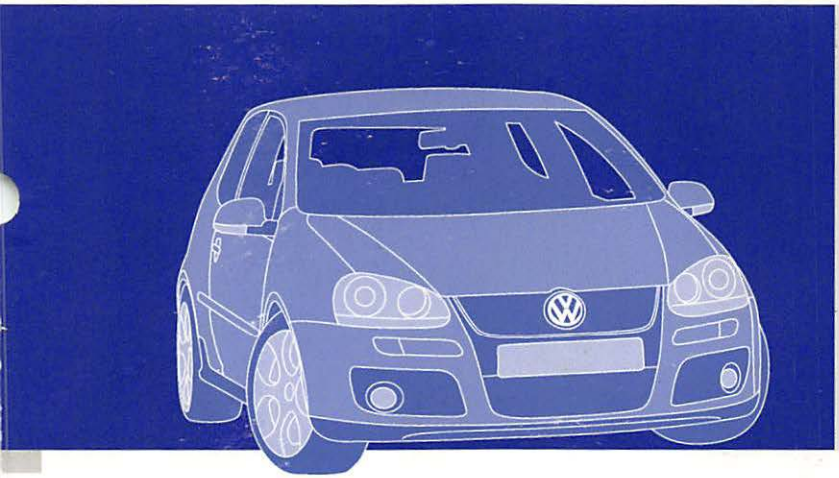
0.1 Alphabetical Index

Golf GTI
Model year 2006

1 Service

2 Safety

3 Features



Please read this important information before reading your Owner's Literature

The booklets in the Owner's Literature binder contain important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle and further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to vehicles with Diesel engine."

Meaning of symbols:

- ▶ The section is continued on the next page.
- ◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.
- ® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Your Owner's Literature

Your driving companion

This Owner's Literature is meant to serve as your constant driving companion. It's a good idea to always keep it handy in your vehicle. This Owner's Literature contains important information and all sorts of useful tips about your Volkswagen. Be sure to carefully read all booklets so that you become familiar with your Volkswagen as soon as possible.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle. If you cannot find one of the booklets listed, bring this to the attention of your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Quick Reference Guide

You will find the Quick Reference Guide in the front cover of your Owner's Literature binder.

Supplements

You will find any Supplements in the Owner's Literature immediately after this booklet.

Booklet numbering

A two-digit number appears on the front page of each booklet. The number will help you to find a booklet and return a booklet to its correct location if you remove it from the Owner's Literature binder, for example 2.1.

The first number indicates the section and the second one is the numbering in that section.

Language version

All booklets contained in the Owner's Literature Binder are also available in French and Spanish.

To obtain a **French version**, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or write to:

Volkswagen Canada Inc.
Customer Relations
Assistance à la clientèle
777 Bayly Street, West
Ajax, Ontario L1S 7G7

To obtain a **Spanish version**, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer (delayed introduction).

Table of contents

The Owner's Literature binder is divided into following sections:

1 **Service**: This section contains detailed information about your warranties and explains how you can keep your Volkswagen in top driving condition by having it serviced regularly.

2 **Safety**: This section explains what you need to know about the safety features in your Volkswagen. It covers topics like safety belts, passive safety, airbags, child seats along with child safety and head restraints.

3 **Functions**: This section explains all the controls of your Volkswagen, explains how to operate and maintain your car and covers the technical data of your Volkswagen. ▶

For your satisfaction

We have thoroughly inspected your Volkswagen from the top to bottom and have found it to be satisfactory. All Owner's documents have been presented and explained, and all your questions have been answered to your satisfaction.

Date

Signature - Sales Consultant

Date

Signature - Service Consultant

Stamp of your authorized Volkswagen dealer

Wishing you safe and happy driving!

Congratulations on choosing Volkswagen! We're sure you'll enjoy driving your new Volkswagen which has been designed and built with your safety and comfort in mind.

So that we can always quickly identify you and your vehicle, we ask that you take a moment and enter your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) in the spaces below. If you' re not sure, your dealer can do this for you.

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):

Key words

Enclosed you'll find an extensive and comprehensive alphabetical index of following booklets: Safety first, Controls and Equipment, Tips and Advice and Technical Data.

Each booklet has a two-digit number on the front page. This number will help you to find a booklet and return a booklet to its correct location if you remove it from the Owner's Literature binder.

This index will help you to find information quickly by using key words.

Example of a key word

Battery **3.2:** 24, **3.1:** 35

You will find information about battery in booklet 3.2 on page 24 and booklet 3.1 on page 35.

A

ABS **3.2:** 4
  Warning light **3.2:** 5
  See also Anti-lock brake system
Accessories
  What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? **3.2:** 31
Acoustic signal **2.1:** 14
Acoustic warning **3.1:** 84
Activating the switchable locking feature **2.1:** 65
Address of NHTSA **2.1:** 12, **3.2:** 106
Address of Transport Canada **3.2:** 107
Adjustable front seats **3.1:** 58
Adjusting safety belt height **2.1:** 25
Adjusting the compass variance zone **3.1:** 23
Advanced Airbag System **2.1:** 32
  Airbag deployment zone **2.1:** 38
  How the components work together **2.1:** 37
Advanced Airbag System components **2.1:** 35
Advanced front airbag system **2.1:** 33
After changing a wheel **3.2:** 87
Airbag deployment zone **2.1:** 38
Airbag system **2.1:** 28
  Care **2.1:** 44
  Components (front airbags) **2.1:** 35
  Components (side airbags) **2.1:** 46
  Components (side curtain protection™ airbag) **2.1:** 51
  Curtain airbags **2.1:** 50
  Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat **2.1:** 30
  Disposal **2.1:** 44
  Front airbags **2.1:** 32
  How it works? **2.1:** 48, 51
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? **2.1:** 35, 46, 51
  Importance of sitting properly **2.1:** 28
  Importance of wearing safety belts **2.1:** 28
  Important things to know **2.1:** 28
  Indicator light **2.1:** 40
  Monitoring **2.1:** 40
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light **2.1:** 41
  Repairs **2.1:** 44
  Side airbags **2.1:** 46
  When must the system be inspected? **2.1:** 40
  Where are my airbags located? **2.1:** 32, 46, 50
Air conditioning
  Condensation **3.1:** 83
  Important notes **3.1:** 83
  Malfunctions **3.1:** 83
  Unpleasant odor **3.1:** 83
Air conditioning system **3.1:** 75
  Climatronic **3.1:** 78
Air recirculation mode
  2C-Climatic **3.1:** 77
  Climatronic **3.1:** 82
Alarm system **3.1:** 34
  Switching off **3.1:** 34
Alloy wheels
  Cleaning **3.2:** 26
Alternator
  See Generator
Anti-lock brake system **3.2:** 5
  What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? **3.2:** 4

Anti-theft alarm system **3.1:** 34
Linking your trailer **3.2:** 18
Switching off **3.1:** 34
Anti-theft wheel bolts **3.2:** 84
Antifreeze **3.2:** 47
Arm rest
front **3.1:** 60
Automatic belt retractor **2.1:** 19
Automatic car wash **3.2:** 22
Automatic locking **3.1:** 32
Automatic mode
Climatronic **3.1:** 79
Automatic transmission
Selector lever lock **3.1:** 89
Tiptronic **3.1:** 88
Automatic transmission with Tiptronic **3.1:** 91
Automatic wipe/wash function for the rear widnow **3.1:** 51
Auto Safety Hotline **2.1:** 12, **3.2:** 106
Average fuel consumption **3.1:** 21
Average speed **3.1:** 21

B

BAS **3.2:** 3
Battery
Charging **3.2:** 56
How often should I replace my engine battery? **3.2:** 56
Important information to know before disconnect the battery **3.2:** 55
Replacing **3.2:** 56
What you must do after reconnect the battery **3.2:** 55
Winter conditions **3.2:** 55, 56
Before driving **2.1:** 3
Belt pretensioner
Disposal **2.1:** 27
Service **2.1:** 27
Booster seats **2.1:** 62
Brake assist system **3.2:** 3
Brake booster **3.2:** 2
Brake fluid
Changing **3.2:** 54
How often should the brake fluid be changed? **3.2:** 54
What is the correct brake fluid level? . **3.2:** 53
What kind of brake fluid should I use? **3.2:** 54
Brake pads **3.2:** 13
Brake pads worn
Warning light **3.2:** 2
Brakes **3.2:** 13
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? **3.2:** 13
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? **3.2:** 4
Brake servo **3.2:** 13
Brake system **3.2:** 53
Warning light **3.2:** 2
Braking distance **3.2:** 13
Break-in period
Engine **3.2:** 12
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? **3.2:** 12
Breaking in
Brake pads **3.2:** 12
Tires **3.2:** 12
Breaking in tires **3.2:** 12
Bulb change **3.2:** 93
Bulb failure **3.2:** 93
Warning light **3.2:** 93
Bumper
Cleaning **3.2:** 23
Bumper cover
Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb **3.1:** 96
Buzzer **3.1:** 46, 84

C

Calibrating the compass **3.1:** 22
California Proposition 65 Warning **3.2:** 39, 55
Capacities **3.3:** 5
Cargo area **2.1:** 10
Car wash **3.2:** 22
Catalytic converter **3.2:** 9
CB radio **3.2:** 33
CD changer **3.1:** 65

Cell phone 3.2: 33
Cellular phone 3.2: 33
Center arm rest
  front 3.1: 60
Central locking button 3.1: 32
Changing a bulb 3.2: 93
Changing a wheel 3.2: 86
Changing brake pads 3.2: 12
Changing units 3.1: 14
Changing windshield wiper blades 3.2: 51
Chassis 3.2: 27
Chassis number 3.3: 2
Check fuel cap 3.2: 36
Checking engine oil level 3.2: 44
Checking tire pressure 3.2: 68
Child restraint on the front seat 2.1: 30
Child Restraint Systems (CRS)
  information 2.1: 68
Child safety 2.1: 53
Child safety locks 3.1: 33
Child seats 2.1: 53
  Booster seats 2.1: 62
  Convertible child seats 2.1: 60
  Infant seats 2.1: 59
  Lower anchorages 2.1: 71
  Mounting and releasing lower anchorage connectors 2.1: 72
  On the front passenger seat 2.1: 30
  Safety instructions 2.1: 56
  Tether anchors 2.1: 68
  Tether strap 2.1: 69
Chrome
  Cleaning 3.2: 26
Cleaning
  Alloy wheels 3.2: 26
  Automatic car wash 3.2: 22
  Bumper 3.2: 23
  Chassis 3.2: 27
  Cloth seat covers 3.2: 29
  Engine compartment 3.2: 27
  Exterior 3.2: 22
  Fabric trim 3.2: 29
  Instrument panel 3.2: 28
  Leather 3.2: 29
  Outside mirrors 3.2: 25
  Plastic parts 3.2: 28
  Safety belts 3.2: 30
  Washing the vehicle 3.2: 22
  Windows 3.2: 25
  Windshield 3.2: 25
  Windshield wiper blades 3.2: 25
  Wooden trim 3.2: 28
Cleaning and protection 3.2: 21
Climatic 3.1: 75
  Controls 3.1: 75
  Malfunctions 3.1: 83
Climatronic
  Important notes 3.1: 83
  Malfunctions 3.1: 83
Clock 3.1: 8
Closing the doors 3.1: 30
Cloth seat covers
  Cleaning 3.2: 29
Coat hooks 3.1: 66
Code number
  For anti-theft wheel bolts 3.2: 80
Cold tire inflation pressure 3.2: 61
Compass
  Adjusting 3.1: 23
  Calibrating 3.1: 22
Compass menu 3.1: 19
Condensation 3.1: 83
Control lights 3.1: 4
Controls
  Power windows 3.1: 38
Convenience closing 3.1: 40, 42
Convenience menu 3.1: 16
Convenience opening 3.1: 40
Convenience operation (electric windows) 3.1: 17
Convertible child seats 2.1: 60

Coolant **3.2:** 47
Level **3.2:** 49
Loss **3.2:** 49
Coolant level
Warning light **3.2:** 48
Coolant temperature
Gauge **3.1:** 9
Safety instructions **3.2:** 48
Trailer towing **3.2:** 48
Warning light **3.2:** 48
Crash recorders **3.2:** 34
Cruise control system
Indicator light **3.1:** 96
without display **3.1:** 96
Cup holders **3.1:** 67
in the front center console **3.1:** 67
In the rear center console **3.1:** 67
Curbs **3.3:** 4
Curb weight **3.3:** 6
Current fuel consumption **3.1:** 21
Curtain airbags **2.1:** 50
Customer CARE Center **2.1:** 28

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat **2.1:** 30
Data Link Connector (DLC) for On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD) **3.2:** 11
Daytime driving lights **3.1:** 43
Daytime Running Lights **3.1:** 43
Deactivating the switchable locking feature **2.1:** 67
Depress brake pedal **3.1:** 6
Determining correct load limit **3.2:** 71
Differential lock **3.2:** 6
Digital clock **3.1:** 8
Dimensions **3.3:** 4, 7
Display **3.1:** 13
Distance between driver and steering wheel **2.1:** 4
Distance traveled **3.1:** 21
Door release handle **3.1:** 3
Doors **3.1:** 33
close **3.1:** 33
closing **3.1:** 30
Warning light **3.1:** 33
Drive economically **3.2:** 19
Drive economically and help protect the environment **3.2:** 19
Driver
See Seating position
Driving outside of the U.S.A. or Canada
Precautions **3.2:** 107
Driving safety **2.1:** 3
Driving time **3.1:** 20
Driving with an automatic transmission **3.1:** 89
Driving with children **2.1:** 53
Dust filter **3.1:** 83

E

EDL **3.2:** 6
See also Electronic Differential Lock
EDS
Warning light **3.2:** 5
Electrical socket **3.1:** 68
Electronic differential lock **3.2:** 6
Electronic Differential Lock
Warning light **3.2:** 5
Electronic immobilizer **3.1:** 85
Electronic Power Control **3.2:** 9
Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)
How it works **3.2:** 6
Emergency
Locking driver's door **3.2:** 88
Opening lever for the rear lid **3.2:** 89
Unlocking driver's door **3.2:** 88
Emergency closing **3.2:** 88
Emergency flasher **3.1:** 45
Emergency locking all doors **3.2:** 88
Emergency opening **3.2:** 88
Doors **3.1:** 34
Emergency unlocking of rear lid **3.2:** 89
Engine
Break-in **3.2:** 12
Engine compartment
Cleaning **3.2:** 27
Precautions you should take when working inside the engine compartment **3.2:** 39
Working in the engine compartment **3.2:** 39
Engine compartment layout **3.3:** 5
Engine compartment overview **3.3:** 5

Engine coolant **3.2:** 47
Additives **3.2:** 47
Can I add plain water to the engine coolant? **3.2:** 50
Coolant losses **3.2:** 50
Engine data **3.3:** 5
Engine hood **3.2:** 41
How do I unlock the engine hood? **3.2:** 41
Warning light **3.2:** 41
Engine management **3.2:** 9
Engine oil **3.2:** 42
Adding **3.2:** 45
Additives **3.2:** 46
Checking level **3.2:** 44
Consumption **3.2:** 43
Dipstick **3.2:** 44
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? **3.2:** 43
Oil change **3.2:** 46
Specifications **3.2:** 42
Specifications gasoline engine **3.2:** 42
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? **3.2:** 42
When should I check the engine oil level? **3.2:** 43
Where is the oil dipstick **3.2:** 44
Engine oil pressure
Warning light **3.2:** 45
Engine oil sensor
Warning light **3.2:** 44
Environment
Avoiding pollution **3.2:** 23, 36
Cleaning the engine compartment **3.2:** 28
Drive economically **3.2:** 19
Vehicle care products **3.2:** 21
Environmental information
Fuel economy **3.1:** 9
Environmental tip
Fuel economy **3.1:** 74
EPC
Warning light **3.2:** 9
See also Electronic Power Control
ESP **3.2:** 6
Button **3.2:** 6, 7
Warning light **3.2:** 7
Event Data Recorder **3.2:** 34
Examples of improper seating positions **2.1:** 8
Exhaust gas system
Warning light **3.2:** 11
Exhaust system **3.2:** 9
Extender for the safety belts **2.1:** 23
External aerial **3.2:** 33

F

Fabric trim
Cleaning **3.2:** 29
Fastening
Booster seats **2.1:** 62
Convertible child seats **2.1:** 60
Infant seats **2.1:** 59
Safety belt extender **2.1:** 24
Safety belts **2.1:** 19
Floor mats **2.1:** 9
Fog lights **3.1:** 43
Front airbags
Description **2.1:** 32
Front airbag system **2.1:** 32
Airbag deployment zone **2.1:** 38
The basics **2.1:** 32
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics **2.1:** 15
Front center armrest **3.1:** 65
Front seats **3.1:** 58
Fuel filler cap
Warning light **3.2:** 35
Fuel gauge
Display **3.1:** 10
Fuel level **3.1:** 10
Fuel tank **3.1:** 10
Fuse box
In the instrument panel, left **3.2:** 92
In the instrument panel, right **3.2:** 92
Fuses **3.2:** 90
Fuse table **3.2:** 92

G

Gaskets **3.2:** 26

Gasoline **3.2:** 37
Blends **3.2:** 37
Containing alcohol **3.2:** 37
Octane rating **3.2:** 37
Premium **3.2:** 37
Regular **3.2:** 37
Unleaded **3.2:** 37
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? **3.2:** 37
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? **3.2:** 37
Winter or summer tips **3.2:** 37
Gasoline additives **3.2:** 38
Gear selector lever
See Automatic transmission with Tiptronic
General illustration **3.1:** 3
Generator
Warning light **3.2:** 56
Glossary of tire and loading terminology **3.2:** 58
Glove compartment
Front passenger side **3.1:** 64
Gross Axle Weight Rating **3.3:** 3
Gross Vehicle Weight Rating **3.3:** 3

H

Hand brake
See Parking brake
Hazard lights **3.1:** 45
Headlight flasher **3.1:** 46
Headlight lens fogging **3.1:** 44
Headlights **3.1:** 43
Fog lights **3.1:** 43
Switching **3.1:** 43
Washer system **3.1:** 52
Head restraints
Adjusting **3.1:** 56, 57
Correct adjustment **2.1:** 7
Removing **3.1:** 57
Heated front seats **3.1:** 59
Heavy clothing and safety belts **2.1:** 17
High beam **3.1:** 46
High beam lever **3.1:** 46
High voltage warning label **3.3:** 2
Horn **3.1:** 3
How could I damage the catalytic converter? **3.2:** 9
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? **3.2:** 13
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? **3.2:** 43
How do I unlock the engine hood? **3.2:** 41
How many airbags does my vehicle have? **2.1:** 35, 46, 51
How often should I check my tire pressures? **3.2:** 69
How often should I replace my engine battery? **3.2:** 56
How often should I wax my car? **3.2:** 24
How often should the brake fluid be changed? **3.2:** 54
How to jump start **3.2:** 100
Hydroplaning **3.2:** 72

I

Identification number **3.3:** 2
Ignition key **3.1:** 84
removal lock **3.1:** 85
Ignition switch **3.1:** 84
Importance of sitting properly **2.1:** 28
Importance of wearing safety belts **2.1:** 28
Important information to know before disconnect the battery **3.2:** 55
Important things to do before driving **2.1:** 3
Improperly worn safety belts **2.1:** 26
Improper seating positions **2.1:** 8
Indicator light
Airbag system **2.1:** 40
Cruise control system **3.1:** 96
See also Warning light
See also Warning lights
Indicator lights
Airbag system **2.1:** 41
Instrument cluster **3.1:** 4
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF **2.1:** 41
Indirect ventilation **3.1:** 80
Individual unlocking **3.1:** 16, 30
Infant seats **2.1:** 59
Information messages **3.1:** 11
Information texts in the display **3.1:** 12
Inside day-night mirror **3.1:** 52
Installing
Child restraint with a safety belt **2.1:** 63
CRS using the LATCH system **2.1:** 72

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage **2.1:** 70
Instrument cluster **3.1:** 8
Menu structure **3.1:** 14
Instrument cluster illumination **3.1:** 3
Instrument cluster lighting **3.1:** 44
Instrument panel **3.1:** 3, 66
Cleaning **3.2:** 28
Instruments **3.1:** 8
interior front lights
front **3.1:** 47
interior lights **3.1:** 47
Interior lights
background **3.1:** 48
reading **3.1:** 48
reading lights **3.1:** 47
Intermittent wipe **3.1:** 49

J

Jack **3.2:** 85
Jumper cable **3.3:** 5
Jumper cables **3.2:** 99
Jump starting **3.2:** 99, 100
Access positive and negative terminals **3.2:** 100

K

Keys **3.1:** 27
Key tag **3.1:** 27
Kick-down function **3.1:** 94

L

Lane change flash function **3.1:** 17
Language in display **3.1:** 14
Leather
Cleaning **3.2:** 29
Leather seats
Pressure marks **2.1:** 70
Lifting platform **3.2:** 105
Lifting the vehicle **3.2:** 105
Light change **3.2:** 93
lights
Lights **3.1:** 43
interior **3.1:** 47
Lights & Vision
Menu **3.1:** 17
Lock cylinders **3.2:** 26
Locking driver's door in an emergency **3.2:** 88
Locks **3.2:** 26
Child safety **3.1:** 33
Low beam **3.1:** 43
Lower anchorages **2.1:** 71
Luggage compartment **2.1:** 10, **3.1:** 69
Luggage compartment cover **3.1:** 71

M

Main menu - Multi-Function Indicator **3.1:** 20
Malfunction Indicator Lamp **3.2:** 11
Malfunction messages **3.1:** 11
Manual mode
Climatronic **3.1:** 81
Manual transmission **3.1:** 87
Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights **3.3:** 6
Maximum Vehicle Weights **3.3:** 6
Menu compass **3.1:** 19
Menu for convenience functions **3.1:** 16
Menu for Lights & Vision **3.1:** 17
Menus
Example of use **3.1:** 15
Menu sound system **3.1:** 18
MFI **3.1:** 20
MIL
See Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Miles (kilometers) to empty **3.1:** 21
Mirrors
Inside mirror **3.1:** 52
Make-up mirrors **3.1:** 49
Outside mirrors, electrical **3.1:** 53
Simultaneous adjustment **3.1:** 53
Mirrors lowered function **3.1:** 17
Modifications **3.2:** 32
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System **2.1:** 40
Mounting and releasing the lower anchorage connectors **2.1:** 72
Multi-Function Indicator **3.1:** 20
Multi-function steering wheel **3.1:** 24

N

New tires and wheels **3.2:** 73
NHTSA **2.1:** 12, **3.2:** 106
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules **3.2:** 34
Number of seats **2.1:** 13

O

OBD **3.2:** 11
Occupant seating positions **2.1:** 4
Oil **3.2:** 42
  Oil change **3.2:** 46
Oil dipstick **3.2:** 44
On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD) **3.2:** 11
One-touch opening and closing power windows **3.1:** 39
Operate your vehicle safely **3.2:** 14
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada **3.2:** 107
Outside mirrors
  Cleaning **3.2:** 25
Outside temperature display **3.1:** 21
Overview
  Indicator lights **3.1:** 4
  Instruments **3.1:** 8
  Multi-function steering wheel **3.1:** 24
  Warning lights **3.1:** 4

P

Paint
  Polishing **3.2:** 24
  Waxing **3.2:** 24
Panic button **3.1:** 28
Parking **3.1:** 95
  Automatic transmission **3.1:** 90
  Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb **3.1:** 96
  Low bumper cover, spoilers and suspension **3.1:** 96
  When parking on slopes **3.1:** 95
Parking Assistance
  Cleaning sensors **3.2:** 23
Parking barriers **3.3:** 4
Parking brake **3.1:** 94
  See also Parking brake
Parts **3.2:** 31
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light **2.1:** 41
  Start blinking **2.1:** 42
Passengers
  See Seating position
Pedals **2.1:** 9
Physical principles of a frontal collision **2.1:** 15
Pinch protection
  Power roof **3.1:** 42
  Windows **3.1:** 40
Plastic parts **3.2:** 24
  Cleaning **3.2:** 28
Pollen filter **3.1:** 83
Pollution filter **3.1:** 83
Power
  Roof **3.1:** 41
Power locks **3.1:** 30
  Individual unlocking **3.1:** 30
Power roof **3.1:** 41
  Pinch protection **3.1:** 42
Power steering **3.2:** 8
  Warning light **3.2:** 8
Power washer **3.2:** 23
Power windows **3.1:** 38
Pregnant women
  Special considerations when wearing a safety belt **2.1:** 22
Premium Gasoline **3.2:** 37
Pressure marks **2.1:** 70
Proper adjustment of head restraints **2.1:** 7
Proper occupant seating positions **2.1:** 4
Proper safety belt position **2.1:** 21
Proper seating position
  Driver **2.1:** 4
  Front passenger **2.1:** 5
  Occupants **2.1:** 4
  Rear passengers **2.1:** 6

R

Raising the vehicle with the jack **3.2:** 85
Reading lights
  back **3.1:** 48
  front **3.1:** 47
Rear lid **3.1:** 35
  closing **3.1:** 37
  Emergency unlocking **3.2:** 89
  Indicator light **3.1:** 35

Rear seat **3.1:** 60
Rear seat.
folding back **3.1:** 61, 62
folding forward **3.1:** 61
Rear view mirror **3.1:** 52
Rear window heating **3.1:** 75
Heating element wires **3.2:** 25
Rear window wiper **3.1:** 51
Rear wiper **3.1:** 49
Refueling **3.2:** 35
Regular care **3.2:** 21
Regular Gasoline **3.2:** 37
Remote control key
Buttons **3.1:** 28
Replacing the battery **3.1:** 30
Synchronizing **3.1:** 29
Removing caps to access positive and negative terminals **3.2:** 100
Repair Manuals **3.2:** 107
Repairs **3.2:** 32
Airbag system **2.1:** 44
Replacement keys **3.1:** 27
Replacing
Wheel rims **3.2:** 75
Replacing the battery
Remote control key **3.1:** 30
Replacing tires and wheels **3.2:** 73
Reporting safety defects **2.1:** 12
Canada **3.2:** 107
United States **2.1:** 12, **3.2:** 106
Retractor **2.1:** 19
Reverse
Automatic transmission **3.1:** 93
Rims
Replacing **3.2:** 75
With screw-on decorative covers **3.2:** 58
With threaded rim ring **3.2:** 57
Roof load **3.1:** 74
Roof rack **3.1:** 72, 74
Roof rack mounts **3.1:** 72
Roof weight **3.3:** 4
Rubber gaskets **3.2:** 26

S

Safe driving **2.1:** 2
Safety
Child safety lock **3.1:** 33
Safety belt extender **2.1:** 23
Safety belt height adjustment **2.1:** 25
Safety belt position **2.1:** 21
Adjusting safety belt height **2.1:** 25
Pregnant women **2.1:** 22
Safety belt pretensioners **2.1:** 26
Safety belts **2.1:** 13, 19
Cleaning **3.2:** 30
Extender **2.1:** 23
How can I adjust the height of my safety belt? **2.1:** 25
How do you put on your safety belt correctly? **2.1:** 19
Improperly worn **2.1:** 26
Installing child restraint **2.1:** 63
Not worn **2.1:** 16
Safety belt position **2.1:** 21
Safety instructions **2.1:** 17
Special considerations for pregnant women **2.1:** 22
Switchable locking feature **2.1:** 65
Unfastening safety belts **2.1:** 25
Warning light **2.1:** 14
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? **2.1:** 16
Why assume the correct seating position? **2.1:** 28
Why safety belts protect? **2.1:** 17
Why wear safety belts? **2.1:** 15, 28
Safety belts protect **2.1:** 17
Safety belt warning light **2.1:** 14
Safety compliance sticker **3.3:** 2
Safety equipment **2.1:** 2

Safety instructions
Belt pretensioners **2.1:** 27
Child restraint on the front seat **2.1:** 30
Child seats **2.1:** 56
Coolant temperature **3.2:** 48
Loading the luggage compartment **2.1:** 10
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System **2.1:** 43
Proper seating position for passengers in rear seats **2.1:** 6
Proper seating position for the driver **2.1:** 4
Proper seating position for the front passenger **2.1:** 5
Safety belt extender **2.1:** 23
Safety belts **2.1:** 17
Side airbags **2.1:** 48
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags **2.1:** 52
Screw-on decorative covers **3.2:** 58
Seat adjustment **3.1:** 55, 58
Seat heating
Front **3.1:** 59
Seating capacity **2.1:** 13
Seating position
Distance between driver and steering wheel **2.1:** 4
Driver **2.1:** 4
Front passenger **2.1:** 5
Improper seating positions **2.1:** 8
Occupants **2.1:** 4
Rear passengers **2.1:** 6
Seats
Number of seats **2.1:** 13
Securing load **3.1:** 74
Selector lever lock **3.1:** 89
Selector lever postions **3.1:** 92
Service Interval Display **3.1:** 11
Service position **3.1:** 50
Settings menu **3.1:** 13
Setting the clock **3.1:** 14
Side airbags **2.1:** 46
Description **2.1:** 46
How they work? **2.1:** 48
Safety instructions **2.1:** 48
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags
Description **2.1:** 50
How they work? **2.1:** 51
Safety instructions **2.1:** 52
Snow chains **3.2:** 78
Sockets
12 volt **3.1:** 68
Sound system menu **3.1:** 18
Spares **3.2:** 31
Spare wheel **3.2:** 81
Location **3.2:** 80
Speed rating letter code **3.2:** 74
Speed warning **3.1:** 21
Starting the engine
With the ignition key **3.1:** 85
Starting with jumper cables **3.2:** 99
Steering **3.1:** 25
Steering lock **3.1:** 84
Steering wheel
Distance to the driver **2.1:** 4
Steering wheel height adjustment **3.1:** 25
Steps for determining correct load limit **3.2:** 71
Sticker on the left door jamb **3.3:** 3
Stopping the engine **3.1:** 86
Storage area
Roof **3.1:** 65
Storage compartment **3.1:** 64
additional storage **3.1:** 66
Front center armrest **3.1:** 65
Storage for the vehicle literature **3.1:** 64
Sunroof **3.1:** 41
Sunshade
power roof **3.1:** 41
Sun visor **3.1:** 49
Switchable locking feature
Activating **2.1:** 65
Deactivating **2.1:** 67
Switches
Emergency flasher **3.1:** 45
Light switches **3.1:** 43
Power outside mirrors **3.1:** 53
Power roof **3.1:** 41
Power windows **3.1:** 38
Switching off the engine
With the ignition key **3.1:** 86
Switch lighting **3.1:** 3

T

Tachometer **3.1:** 9
Tailgate **3.1:** 35

Tank
Filling the tank **3.2:** 35
Fuel gauge **3.1:** 10
Opening the fuel filler flap **3.2:** 35
Technical modifications **3.2:** 32
Tether anchors **2.1:** 68
Tether strap **2.1:** 69
Threaded rim ring **3.2:** 57
Tie-down hooks **3.1:** 70
Tie-downs **2.1:** 12
Tire pressure **3.2:** 68
Tire pressure monitoring display (Canada models) **3.2:** 65
Warning light **3.2:** 65
Tire pressure monitoring system
Sensors **3.2:** 75
Tires and wheels **3.2:** 75
Valves **3.2:** 75
Tire pressure monitoring system (US models) **3.2:** 62
Tires
Replacing **3.2:** 75
Service life **3.2:** 72
Speed rating letter code **3.2:** 74
Tire Identification Number **3.2:** 74
Tire manufacturing date **3.2:** 74
Tire specifications **3.2:** 74
Tread depth **3.2:** 72
Uniform tire quality grading **3.2:** 76
Winter tires **3.2:** 77
Tires and vehicle load limits **3.2:** 70
Tires and wheels **3.2:** 57
Checking tire pressure **3.2:** 68
Cold tire inflation pressure **3.2:** 61
Dimensions **3.2:** 73
General notes **3.2:** 57
Glossary of tire and loading terminology **3.2:** 58
New tires and wheels **3.2:** 73
Replacing **3.2:** 73
Snow chains **3.2:** 78
Tire pressure monitoring system **3.2:** 75
Tires and vehicle load limits **3.2:** 70
Wheel bolts **3.2:** 79
Winter tires **3.2:** 77
Tire service life **3.2:** 72
Tools **3.2:** 80
Torn or frayed safety belts **2.1:** 17
Towing **3.2:** 102
General notes **3.2:** 103
When can your vehicle not be towed? **3.2:** 105
Towing eye **3.2:** 102
front **3.2:** 102
rear **3.2:** 103
Tow starting **3.2:** 104
TPMS
See Tire pressure monitoring system
TPMS (US models)
Warning light **3.2:** 62
Trailer towing **3.2:** 15
Anti-theft alarm system **3.2:** 18
Brakes **3.2:** 15
Coolant temperature **3.2:** 48
Driving tips **3.2:** 17
Operating instructions **3.2:** 16
Safety chains **3.2:** 15, 17
Technical requirements **3.2:** 15
Tire pressure **3.2:** 16
Towing tips **3.2:** 18
Trailer lights **3.2:** 15
Trailer weight **3.2:** 16
Trailer weights **3.3:** 6
Transport Canada **3.2:** 107
Transporting long items **3.1:** 63
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) **3.2:** 72
Trunk **2.1:** 10
Trunk lid **3.1:** 35
See also Rear lid
Turn signal and high beam lever **3.1:** 46
Turn signals **3.1:** 46
Warning light **3.1:** 46

U

Underbody sealant **3.2:** 27
Unfastening
Safety belts **2.1:** 25
Unidirectional tires **3.2:** 57, 86
Uniform tire quality grading **3.2:** 76
Unpleasant odor **3.1:** 83
Upholstery
Pressure marks **2.1:** 70

V

Vehicle
Lifting **3.2:** 105
Vehicle battery **3.2:** 55
Vehicle care
Exterior **3.2:** 22
Vehicle care products **3.2:** 21
Vehicle control modules **3.2:** 34
Vehicle electric system **3.2:** 56
Vehicle identification data **3.3:** 2
Vehicle identification label **3.3:** 2
Vehicle identification number **3.3:** 2
Vehicle phone **3.2:** 33
Vehicle tool kit **3.2:** 80
Location **3.2:** 80
Vehicle Weights **3.3:** 6
Ventilation slits **2.1:** 11
Volkswagen Service Repair Manuals **3.2:** 107

W

Warning light
ABS **3.2:** 5
Brake pads worn **3.2:** 2
Brake system **3.2:** 2
Bulb failure **3.2:** 93
Checking engine oil level **3.2:** 44
Coolant level **3.2:** 48
Coolant temperature **3.2:** 48
Cruise control **3.1:** 96
Doors **3.1:** 33
EDS **3.2:** 5
Engine hood **3.2:** 41
Engine oil pressure **3.2:** 45
Engine oil sensor **3.2:** 44
EPC **3.2:** 9
ESP **3.2:** 7
Exhaust gas system **3.2:** 11
Fuel filler cap **3.2:** 35
Generator **3.2:** 56
MIL **3.2:** 11
Power steering **3.2:** 8
Safety belts **2.1:** 14
TPMS (US models) **3.2:** 62
Windshield washer fluid **3.2:** 50
Warning light (Canada models)
Tire pressure monitoring display **3.2:** 65
Warning lights **3.1:** 4
Emergency flasher **3.1:** 45
Instrument cluster **3.1:** 4
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF **2.1:** 41
Turn signals **3.1:** 46
Warning messages **3.1:** 11
Warning texts in the display **3.1:** 12
Washer fluid **3.2:** 50
Washing by hand **3.2:** 22
Washing the vehicle **3.2:** 22
Washing with power cleaners **3.2:** 23
Waxing
How often should I wax my car? **3.2:** 24
Wear indicator **3.2:** 72
Weights **3.3:** 3, 6
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? **3.2:** 4
What happens if you do not wear your safety belt? **2.1:** 16
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? **2.1:** 21
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? **2.1:** 16
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? **3.2:** 37
What impairs driving safety? **2.1:** 3
What is the correct brake fluid level? . **3.2:** 53
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? **3.2:** 12
What kind of brake fluid should I use? **3.2:** 54
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? **3.2:** 42
What should I do after changing a wheel? **3.2:** 69, 87
What should I do after replacing wheels? **3.2:** 69
What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? **3.2:** 31
What should I do if I want to modify my vehicle? **3.2:** 32
What should I do if I want to repair my vehicle? **3.2:** 32
What should I do if the brake warning light comes on? **3.2:** 2, 53
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? **3.2:** 37
What you must do after reconnect the battery **3.2:** 55

What you should know when driving with children? 2.1: 53
Wheel bolt caps 3.2: 83
Wheel bolts 3.2: 84
Torque 3.2: 79
Wheel changing 3.2: 82
Wheels 3.2: 57
Checking tire pressure 3.2: 68
Cold tire inflation pressure 3.2: 61
General notes 3.2: 57
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 3.2: 58
New tires and wheels 3.2: 73
Tires and vehicle load limits 3.2: 70
When can your vehicle not be towed? 3.2: 105
When must a safety belt be replaced? 2.1: 17
When must the airbag system be inspected? 2.1: 40
When parking on slopes 3.1: 95
When should I adjust the tire pressures? 3.2: 69
When should I check the engine oil level? 3.2: 43
When should I check the tire pressures? 3.2: 69
When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 3.1: 10, 3.2: 37
Where are lower anchorages located? 2.1: 71
Where are my airbags located?
Front airbags 2.1: 32
Side airbags 2.1: 46
Side curtain protection™ airbags 2.1: 50
Where are tether anchors located? 2.1: 68
Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? 3.2: 68
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 2.1: 73
Where is the oil dipstick 3.2: 44
Why safety belts protect? 2.1: 17
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 2.1: 7
Windows 3.1: 38, 39
Cleaning 3.2: 25
Windshield
Cleaning 3.2: 25
Windshield washer fluid 3.2: 50
Warning light 3.2: 50
Windshield wiper and washer system 3.1: 49
Windshield wiper blades
Cleaning 3.2: 25
Windshield wipers 3.1: 49
Changing blades 3.2: 51
Changing the rear wiper blade 3.2: 52
Service position 3.1: 50
Winter operation 3.1: 50, 52
Winter tires 3.2: 77
Speed warning 3.1: 14
Wooden trim
Cleaning 3.2: 28
Working in the engine compartment 3.2: 39

Afterword

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany

© Volkswagen AG

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

1.1 Maintenance

Passat, Golf

Model year 2006

1.1

Table of contents

Warranty Voucher 2
Warranty Voucher 2
Odometer Replacement and other dealer stamps 3
Service Information 4
When do I bring my car in for service? ... 6
This is what will be done at each scheduled service 8
Brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years 22

Warranty Voucher

Warranty Voucher

Present this voucher to an authorized dealer if warranty service is required.

Warranty begins on the month of first use of the vehicle or its delivery to the first retail purchaser, namely on:

_____

_____

Month Day Year

(to be filled in by authorized Volkswagen

Stamp of authorized Volkswagen Dealer

WVWEV7 1K 3 6W132966

1K1 9U2

1. GOLF GTI NAR GTI
147 KW 6F

2. BPY GUT
LC9Z RZ

3.

4. B0D CX8 G0K H7K J1L D2L
1AT 1G1 2FN 1NL 5RR 5SH T59
0BF 3U1 QG0 8US 8GU 8ZH
1KV 1LV 3FE 3YR G11 7GB
0Y3 4UM 4X3 4R4 4K0 N2K 5MD
8RW 2JG E0A 0AE 0BF 2UC 2G7
1JE L35 0YC

Vehi

1. Vehi

2. Type

3. Tran

4. Opti

Odometer Replacement and other dealer stamps

Air Conditioner
Warranty Registration Certificate
(except factory installation)

Attach here
(for dealer use only)

Federal Law requires that a label be affixed
to the left door frame when the replacement odometer
does not indicate the actual vehicle mileage (kilometers)
after repair or replacement.

Genuine Volkswagen replacement odometers
are supplied with a label

Odometer Replacement

Month Day Year

(to be filled in by authorized Volkswagen Dealer)

At mileage / km

Stamp of authorized Volkswagen Dealer

Service Information

Dealer Service

There are nearly 800 authorized Volkswagen dealers in North America. They have Volkswagen trained technicians, proper workshop equipment and parts to give you expert service.

Volkswagen dealers are committed to quality service.

- Your authorized Volkswagen dealer offers many services for your convenience, such as extended service hours, early bird service, body repairs, to name just a few. Ask about them.
- Arrange your service with your dealer when it is convenient for you.
- Ask your Service Advisor about the service you need and discuss the cost involved.
- Leave word where you can be reached during the day and when you would like to pick your car up.
- Keep all receipts of maintenance and repairs performed. Your service record is important when making use of your warranty.
- Maintenance services performed by your authorized dealer at the intervals specified, will also be documented in this booklet.
- Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer always has the most current Service and Maintenance information for your Volkswagen model. It is possible that this information may differ from the check points listed in this booklet. Your Volkswagen Service Advisor can answer any questions you may have. ◀

Do-It-Yourself Service

Your Owner's Manual contains many helpful hints on what you can service yourself.

- You can check tires for wear or damage and correct tire pressure, including the spare.
- You can check the windshield washer container.
- You can check your car's interior and exterior lighting system for correct functioning.
- You can check the engine oil level with every fuel filling.
- You can perform these simple checks once a week. They save time, trouble and expense later.

Your technician will not check the above mentioned items in each case during regular service and maintenance visits. ◀

Emission Control Maintenance

1 A clean environment is of concern to all of us. Volkswagen has built into your vehicle an efficient emission control system, using genuine Volkswagen parts, in conformance with the Federal Clean Air Act in the United States and Canadian Emission Standards, respectively. To help keep our air clean, you can do your part by providing regular maintenance for the emission control system in your vehicle.

2 **Maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components may be performed by any qualified automotive service and repair establishment or individual without affecting the Emission Control System Warranty, provided that such repairs are performed to manufacturer's specifications, and that replacement parts are at least equivalent to genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability. Warranty repairs and replacements, however, must be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.**

3 If other than genuine Volkswagen replacement parts are used, the owner should make sure that such parts are warranted by their manufacturer and that they are at least equivalent to genuine Volkswagen replacement parts in emission performance and durability. To be certain that the emission control system functions as designed, regular maintenance is necessary for all components of the vehicle which influence exhaust emissions.

Why Service?

- An untuned engine wastes fuel.
- An emission control system not properly serviced can increase pollution.
- A minor adjustment now may prevent a repair later.
- Follow the recommended maintenance schedule and make in-between checks. This way you help keep your car dependable and safe.
- The intervals shown in the table on the following pages are based on vehicles operating under normal conditions. In the case of severe conditions, such as extremely low temperatures, excessive dust etc., it is necessary for certain operations to be carried out in between the given intervals. This applies particularly to engine oil changes and the cleaning or replacing of the air cleaner filter element.
- If you have questions about how to maintain your vehicle or about your Maintenance Services, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Authorized VOLKSWAGEN dealers are ready to serve you and are committed to quality service and customer care.

When do I bring my car in for service?

Service Interval Schedule

If your vehicle has one of these engines, then this is your Service Interval Schedule.

- **1.8L Turbo Gasoline Engine (Golf, GTI, Jetta, New Beetle, Passat)**
- **2.8L V6 Gasoline Engine (Passat),**

If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Oil Change Service
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
15,000 miles (24,000 km)	Oil Change Service
20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
25,000 miles (40,000 km)	Oil Change Service
30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
35,000 miles (56,000 km)	Oil Change Service
40,000 miles (64,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
45,000 miles (72,000 km)	Oil Change Service
50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
55,000 miles (88,000 km)	Oil Change Service
60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
Services should be performed at the scheduled mileage (kilometer) intervals, or 12 months after the last Service, whichever occurs first. Your Service advisor will fill in the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance booklet each time you bring in your vehicle for Service. At this time, the Service advisor will also inform you when the next Service is due. Therefore, it is important that you follow the Service schedule.	
The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers).	

Service Interval Schedule

If your vehicle has one of these engines, then refer to the Service Interval Schedule on the following page.

Gasoline Engines

- 1.8T Gasoline Engine (Golf, New Beetle)
- 2.0L Gasoline Engine (Golf, New Beetle)
- 2.5L Gasoline Engine (Jetta)
- 2.0T Gasoline Engine (Passat)
- 3.6L VR6 Gasoline Engine (Passat)

Diesel Engines

- 1.9L TDI-PD Diesel Engine (Golf, Jetta, New Beetle)
- 1.9L TDI-PD Diesel Engine (Jetta)

5,000 miles (8,000 km)	Oil Change Service
10,000 miles (16,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
20,000 miles (32,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
30,000 miles (48,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
40,000 miles (64,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
50,000 miles (80,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
60,000 miles (96,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
70,000 miles (112,000 km)	Oil Change & Maintenance Service
Services should be performed at the scheduled mileage (kilo-metre) intervals, or 12 months after the last Service, whichever occurs first. Your Service Advisor will fill in the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance booklet each time you bring in your vehicle for Service. At this time, the Service Advisor will also inform you when the next Service is due. Therefore, it is important that you follow the Service schedule.	
The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers).	

This is what will be done at each scheduled service

Delivery Inspection service

- Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will fill out the necessary information and stamp your Maintenance book to confirm that the necessary services have been performed.
- Automobile technology changes continuously. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer always has the most current Service and Maintenance information for your Volkswagen model.

It is possible that this information may differ from the check points listed in this booklet. Your Volkswagen Service Advisor can answer any questions you may have.

- If you are not sure when to bring your car in for service, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

Delivery Inspection	
Before your vehicle is delivered to you, it is inspected according to factory guidelines. The Delivery Inspection was performed on:	
Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	whichever occurs first Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 5,000 miles (8,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 10,000 miles (16,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometres)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 15,000 miles (24,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 20,000 miles (32,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check electrolyte level **(Passat)**
- Battery: Check **(Golf, Jetta, New Beetle)**
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints and tie rod ends; check tie rods
- Headlights: Adjust
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 25,000 miles (40,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 30,000 miles (48,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 35,000 miles (56,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 40,000 miles (64,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Water separator: Drain **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check electrolyte level **(Passat)**
- Battery: Check **(Golf, Jetta, New Beetle)**
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- V-belt: Check tension and condition; adjust if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch

- Automatic transmission final drive oil: Check level and for leaks; add if necessary
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Headlights: Adjust
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Brake fluid: Replace every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Spark plugs: Replace **(all models except Passat 2.0L TFSI)**
- Air cleaner: Replace filter element
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Ribbed belt: Check condition
- Power Steering: Check fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints, tie rod ends; check tie rods
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Automatic transmission: Check ATF
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate **(New Beetle only)**
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Convertible top: Check function and check roll-over protection with convertible top open (New Beetle Convertible only)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.
- Underbody: Check for damage
- Wiper blades: Check condition
- DSG transmission: Change transmission fluid and filter **(New Beetle, Jetta)**

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 45,000 miles (72,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 50,000 miles (80,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water (**TDI engine only**)
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (**New Beetle only**)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (**where applicable**)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary (**where applicable**).

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 55,000 miles (88,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 60,000 miles (96,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Spark plugs: Replace **(Passat 2.0Tonly)**
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check electrolyte level **(Passat)**
- Battery: Check **(Golf, Jetta, New Beetle)**
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Timing belt: Check condition (4 cylinder gasoline engine only)
- Automatic transmission final drive: Check fluid level and for leaks
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Front axle: Check dust seal on ball joints and tie rods; check tie rods
- Headlights: Adjust
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary (where applicable).

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 65,000 miles (104,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 70,000 miles (112,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 75,000 miles (120,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 80,000 miles (128,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Fuel filter: Replace (**TDI engine only**)
- Water separator: Drain (**TDI engine only**)
- Battery: Check electrolyte level (**Passat**)
- Battery: Check (**Golf, Jetta, New Beetle**)
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Spark plugs: Replace
- Air cleaner: Replace filter element
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Dust and pollen filter (**where applicable**): Replace
- Timing belt: Check condition (4 cylinder gasoline engine only)
- V-belt: Check tension and condition; adjust if necessary
- Ribbed belt: Check condition
- Spark plugs: Replace (**all models except Passat 2.0L TFSI**)
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Automatic transmission final drive oil: Check level and for leaks; add if necessary
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Headlights: Adjust
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Power steering: Check fluid level
- Brake fluid: Replace every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints, tie rod ends; check tie rods
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Automatic transmission: Check ATF
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check (where applicable)
- Convertible top: Check function and check roll-over protection with convertible top open (New Beetle Convertible only)
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary (where applicable).
- Underbody: Check for damage
- Wiper blades: Check condition
- DSG transmission: Change transmission fluid and filter (**New Beetle, Jetta**)

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 85,000 miles (136,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 90,000 miles (144,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level, add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral position switch
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness, brake fluid level
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Timing belt: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 95,000 miles (152,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 100,000 miles (160,000 km) - ALL MODELS

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Engine: Check for leaks
- Exhaust system: Check for damage and leaks
- Water separator: Drain water **(TDI engine only)**
- Fuel filter: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- Battery: Check electrolyte level **(Passat)**
- Battery: Check **(Golf, Jetta, New Beetle)**
- Door check straps: Lubricate
- Dust and pollen filter **(where applicable)**: Replace
- Cooling system: Check coolant level; add if necessary
- Windshield washer: Check fluid level; add if necessary
- Automatic shift lock: Check operation including park/neutral/safety switch
- Automatic transmission: Check for leaks
- Manual transmission: Check oil level; add if necessary; check for leaks
- Wheels: Rotate from front to rear
- Tires/spare wheel: Check condition and pressure
- Brake system: Check for damage/leaks, brake pad thickness and brake fluid level
- Drive shafts: Check boots
- On-Board diagnostic system: Check fault memory; purge if necessary
- Roof frame: Clean and lubricate
- Front axle: Check dust seals on ball joints and tie rod ends; check tie rods
- Headlights: Adjust
- Rear spoiler: Lubricate (New Beetle only)
- Airbag system: Visual check every 12 months regardless of mileage (kilometers)
- Road test: Check kickdown, braking, steering, heating and ventilation, air conditioning, power accessories and electrical systems
- Timing belt: Replace **(TDI engine only)**
- 12V starter and auxiliary battery: check **(where applicable)**
- Tires: Check tread depth, adjust tire pressure if necessary.
- Tire pressure monitoring system sensors: Check battery charge, replace wheel electronics and aluminum valve if necessary **(where applicable)**.

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Service at 105,000 miles (168,000 km) - Models with a 1.8T or V6 engine ONLY

- Engine: Change oil and oil filter
- Timing belt and timing belt tensioning roller: Replace **(Passat 2.8L V6 5-valve engines only)**
- Timing belt and timing belt tensioning roller: Replace **(Passat, Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 1.8T engine only)**

Next Service:	
Date:	
Miles/km:.....	
whichever occurs first	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years

Brake fluid replacement record

The brake fluid must be replaced every 2 years regardless of mileage (kilometers).

The first brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement:	

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

A brake fluid replacement was performed on:	
Next Brake Fluid Replacement: Date:	Today's date and Volkswagen Dealer stamp

Afterword

It has always been Volkswagen's policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

All rights reserved.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Text and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without consent of Volkswagen AG.

Printed in Germany

© 2004 Volkswagen AG

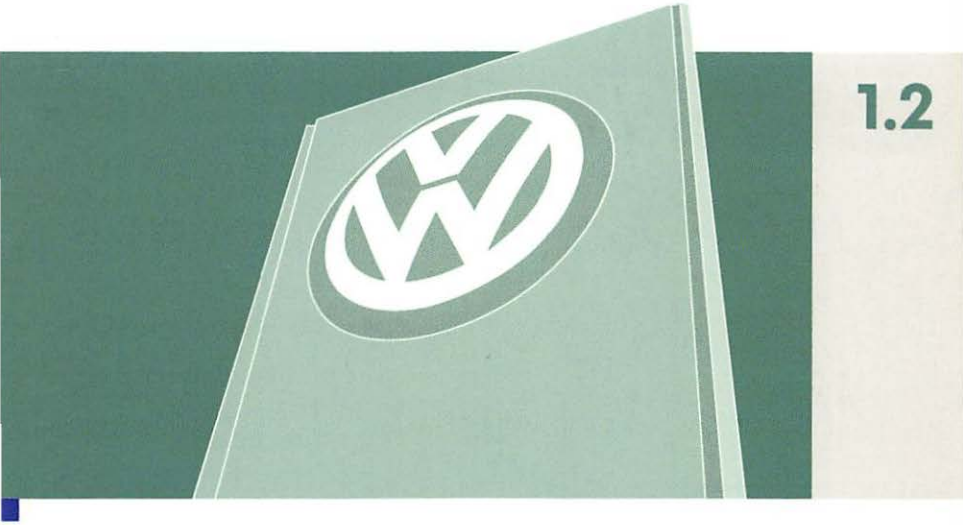
For the sake of environment

Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

1.1 Maintenance | Passat, Golf
Print status: 09.2005
Art.-Nr.: 262.554.MAI.21 | englisch Nordamerika 10.2005

1.2 USA Warranty

Touareg, Golf, Jetta, New Beetle
Model year 2006



Dear Owner,

This booklet contains the warranties applicable to your new Volkswagen. Please read these warranties carefully to determine your warranty rights and obligations.

Your Limited New Vehicle Warranty includes virtually bumper to bumper coverage for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first and limited powertrain coverage for 5 years or 60,000 miles, whichever occurs first. Your vehicle is also warranted against corrosion perforation for a period of 12 years irrespective of mileage.

In addition, your vehicle is covered by emissions warranties mandated by Federal law. If you are a resident of California, Massachusetts, Vermont, or Maine and have purchased a California emissions equipped vehicle, you may also have rights under California mandated emissions warranties. Please consult these warranties whenever a repair to your emission control system is required to determine whether it is covered by warranty. Your satisfaction in understanding the warranties that apply to your Volkswagen is important to us. Any questions concerning warranty coverage should be directed to:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you have a concern or you are not satisfied with the service that you receive from your dealer, we suggest that you discuss it with the Service Manager at your dealership. If it is not resolved through your dealership, you may call or write to the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a mediation and arbitration service for the resolution of disputes arising under this Limited New Vehicle Warranty. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

Council of Better Business Bureaus, Inc.
4200 Wilson Boulevard
Arlington, VA 22203-1804

Notice of Address Change
Notice of Used Car Purchase

The "National Traffic & Motor Vehicle Safety Act of 1966" requires manufacturers to be in a position to contact vehicle owners if a correction of a product defect becomes necessary. If you change your address or buy a used Volkswagen, complete one of the postcards in the middle of this booklet. You need not use this card if you purchased your Volkswagen through an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Table of contents

Limited New Vehicle Warranty .. 2

What is covered 2
What is not covered 4

Limited Powertrain Warranty 7

What is covered 7
What is not covered 8

Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation 10

What is covered 10
What is not covered 11

24 Hour Roadside Assistance 13

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program 13

Federal Emissions Warranties ... 14

General 14
Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty 15
Federal Emissions Performance Warranty 16

California Emissions Warranties . 20

California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement: 20
CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT 20
California Emissions Control System Defect Warranties 22
For 3 years / 50,000 miles 22

Customer CARE 28

Dealer assistance 28
When to notify the manufacturer 28
Repairs not covered by warranty 29

BBB AUTO LINE 30

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services 30

Service Publications 31

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center 31

Tire Manufacturers 32

List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles 32

Limited New Vehicle Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The New Vehicle Warranty period is **4 years or 50,000 miles**, whichever occurs first.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship except wheel alignment, tire balance, and the repair or replacement of tires. The repair or replacement of wear and tear items, **such as** manual transmission clutch friction material, brake pads worn below manufacturer specifications, light bulbs (excluding Halogen headlights, instrument panel bulbs, and Xenon headlights, unless damaged by outside influence), seat covers, carpeting and replacement of rubber wiper blade inserts, replaced for wear and tear, are covered up to one year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

Batteries are covered 100% parts and labor for 4 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, for defects in material or workmanship.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material and workmanship, are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited New Vehicle Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with **a new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

Emergency repairs

If an emergency repair was performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility, keep all receipts, repair orders, and parts removed from your Volkswagen.

You will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer.

A statement of the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer, together with the paid receipts, repair orders, and replaced parts must be submitted to your authorized Volkswagen dealer in order to be considered for reimbursement. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services

If you are not satisfied with the warranty service you receive, you may wish to follow the steps set forth ⇒ page 30.

Volkswagen of America, Inc., provides a **mediation** and **arbitration** service for the resolution of warranty and other product related disputes. This service is called BBB AUTO LINE and is conducted through local offices of the Better Business Bureau. If you wish to use this service, you may call the following toll-free number:

1 (800) 955-5100

We encourage you to use BBB AUTO LINE before you decide to seek remedies in a court of law.

In some states you may be required to use BBB AUTO LINE before you can assert your rights in a court of law.

The BBB AUTO LINE service is free of charge and permits you to present your case without an attorney. Additional information on BBB AUTO LINE can be found ⇒ page 30. ◀

What is not covered

Tires

Tires are not covered by this warranty, but are separately warranted by the tire manufacturer. To assist you in obtaining related Warranty information, a list of tire manufacturers and addresses is provided at the end of this booklet. Verify with the tire manufacturer what is covered under their warranty. ◀

Maintenance services and mechanical adjustments

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants, fluids, or air conditioner refrigerant charge, unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component.

Mechanical adjustments not associated with a defect in material or workmanship are not covered after the first year or 12,000 miles, whichever occurs first (i.e. headlight adjustment). This warranty does not cover wheel alignment or tire balancing. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems; or
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations; or
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions due to failure to follow recommended maintenance and use requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet.

Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of Service or Repair Orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, floodwater, windstorms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Glass

This warranty does not cover glass breakage, unless due to a defect in manufacturer's material or workmanship. ◀

Odometer tampering

These warranties do not cover repairs on a Volkswagen on which the odometer has been altered or on which the actual mileage cannot readily be determined.

If the speedometer unit is replaced, a "Speedometer Replacement Record" must be filled out by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging[1].

This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state. ◀

[1] Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you. This warranty gives you specific legal rights and you may also have other rights, which vary from state to state.

Other terms

This warranty is issued by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (VWoA). This warranty does not apply to Volkswagen vehicles or parts and accessories not imported or distributed by Volkswagen.

This warranty, the Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation, the Limited Powertrain Warranty and the Emissions Warranties are the only express warranties made in connection with the sale of this Volkswagen. Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties.

Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so, the above limitation may not apply to you.

Volkswagen of America, Inc. reserves the right to make improvements or change the design of any Volkswagen model at anytime with no obligation to make similar changes on vehicles previously sold.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Limited Powertrain Warranty

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for **5 years or 60,000 miles** whichever occurs first, from the date the vehicle was first placed in service.

This warranty does not apply to vehicles used for commercial purposes such as taxi, limousine and rental vehicles.

If a commercial vehicle is sold to a subsequent retail owner, this warranty still does not apply.

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you. ◀

Coverage

The Limited Powertrain Warranty covers any repair to correct a manufacturer's defect in material or workmanship for the following Volkswagen parts and components:

Engine

Cylinder block and all internal parts, cylinder head and all internal parts, valve train, spur belt, flywheel, oil pump, water pump, manifolds, all related seals and gaskets.

Transmission

Case and all internal parts, torque converter, all related seals and gaskets.

Drivetrain

Differential and all internal parts, drive shafts and constant velocity (CV) joints. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected only under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company car", on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

The Limited Powertrain Warranty is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the Warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part. ◀

What is not covered

Maintenance services

This warranty does not cover the cost of parts and labor involved in any scheduled maintenance service. Scheduled maintenance services are described in your Volkswagen Maintenance Booklet.

This warranty does not cover the replacement of filters, oil, lubricants or fluids unless their replacement is a necessary part of warranty service on a covered component. ◀

Damage or malfunction due to misuse, negligence, alteration, accident or fire

This warranty does not cover:

- damage or malfunctions which are the result of improper repair of the vehicle, installation of any non Genuine Volkswagen parts that will alter the vehicle performance specifications from those set by the vehicle manufacturer, modifications to the vehicle (including the engine management system), accessories such as alarm systems, remote starters, roof racks or communications equipment, defects or failures resulting from the use of new parts not sold or approved by Volkswagen, or used parts, or the resultant damage to associated parts or systems;
- damage or malfunctions which were caused by the alteration of the vehicle, in particular any major or structural alterations such as the conversion of the vehicle to a convertible or the modification of the roof to accommodate a glass roof structure or other similar structural alterations;
- damage or malfunctions caused by intentional or unintentional misfueling, collision or modifications of the vehicle, including, but not limited to the installation of engine management components not approved by Volkswagen;
- damage or malfunctions resulting from the use of the vehicle in competitive events or caused by accident or fire; or
- damage or malfunctions resulting from continued operation of the vehicle after a warning light, gauge reading or other warnings indicate a mechanical or operational problem; or
- damage or malfunctions due to suspension modifications, such as the installation of aftermarket springs, shock absorbers, or lowering kits.

This warranty does not cover vehicles severely damaged and / or declared to be a total loss by an insurer or vehicles substantially re-assembled from or repaired with parts obtained from another used vehicle. ◀

Wear and tear items

This warranty does not cover the replacement of any powertrain components that wear as a result of normal use or deterioration. ◀

Damage or malfunctions due to lack of maintenance

This warranty does not cover damage or malfunctions which are due to failure to follow recommended maintenance requirements as set forth in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual and the Maintenance Booklet. Your dealer will deny warranty coverage unless you present to the dealer proof in the form of service or repair orders that all scheduled maintenance was performed in a timely manner. ◀

Damage caused by the environment

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, tree sap, stones, flood water, windstorm or other similar occurrences. ◀

Other expenses

This warranty does not cover any incidental or consequential damage, including loss of value of the vehicle, lost profits or earnings, or out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging[2)].

The "Other Terms" Presented in The Limited New Vehicle Warranty Also Apply to This Warranty. ◀

[2)] Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damage, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation

What is covered

Warranty period

The coverage under this warranty lasts for 12 **years without mileage limitation.**

Any implied warranty, including any implied warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the period of this written warranty. Some states do not allow limitations on how long an implied warranty lasts, so this limitation may not apply to you.

Neither Volkswagen nor the manufacturer assumes, or authorizes any person to assume, any other obligation or liability on its behalf. ◀

Coverage

This warranty covers any repair or replacement of body sheet metal panels that have been **perforated** by rust. ◀

Where to go for warranty service

This warranty will be honored by any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, or Canada.

If your Volkswagen is brought to an authorized Volkswagen dealer outside the United States, including its territories, or Canada, this warranty will not apply. Defects in material or workmanship will be corrected under the terms of the warranty for new Volkswagen vehicles in effect in that country. ◀

When the warranty period begins

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to either the original purchaser or the original lessee; or if the vehicle is first placed in service as a "demonstrator" or "company" car, on the date such vehicle is first placed in service.

This Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation is automatically transferred without cost if the ownership of the vehicle changes within the warranty period. ◀

Free-of-charge repair

Repairs under this warranty are made free of charge. The authorized Volkswagen dealer will repair the defective part or replace it with a **new or remanufactured** genuine Volkswagen part.

Tips

Your Volkswagen is corrosion protected at the factory. You do not need to purchase rust-proofing when you buy your Volkswagen in order to keep this warranty in effect. ◀

What is not covered

Surface corrosion without perforation

Repairs are covered under this warranty only if there is rust-through condition in the body sheet metal not caused by outside influences. ◀

Perforation of sheet metal due to accident, lack of care, or failure to repair or modifications to the paint/painted surface

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the failure to promptly repair paint damage, damaged undercoating, or surface corrosion.

It does not cover damage due to failure to wash or otherwise regularly care for the vehicle as described in the Volkswagen Owner's Manual.

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from unrepaired collision damage or improper collision repair. ◀

Special exclusion for any aluminum portions that may be part of your Volkswagen vehicle

This warranty does not cover corrosion perforation due to failure to perform body repairs in accordance with Volkswagen's specified repair procedures, including use of **non-aluminum alloy parts.**

It does not cover corrosion perforation resulting from the use of any inferior rustproofing agent or method.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealership will do its best to match your vehicles original finish, but this warranty does not cover the cost of painting the entire vehicle solely for paint matching. ◀

Environmental damage

This warranty does not cover damage caused by airborne industrial pollutants (e.g. acid rain), bird droppings, stones, flood water, wind storms, tree sap or other similar occurrences. ◀

Corrosion perforation because of failure to rustproof when collision damage is repaired

Body parts that have been repaired or newly installed after a collision must be treated with a rustproofing agent that is compatible with Volkswagen's own factory corrosion protection. If you fail to have your vehicle treated in this way after a collision, Volkswagen will not be responsible for the repair of any resulting rust-through.

Tips

The "Other Terms" presented in the Limited New Vehicle Warranty also apply to this warranty. ◀

24 Hour Roadside Assistance

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance program is your assurance that help will be there should your Volkswagen have a mechanical breakdown under normal[3] driving conditions. Whether this happens thousands of miles from home (anywhere in the U.S. or Canada), or in your own driveway, you only have to call one toll-free number and help will be on the way.

1 (800) 411–6688

To identify yourself as a member, simply quote your Vehicle Identification Number (VIN). This number can be found on your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance membership card, or you can find it on the driver's side of the dashboard visible through the windshield. 24 Hour Roadside Assistance is available to you for the **first four years of your new vehicle ownership.**

The Volkswagen 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Program includes the following emergency roadside services: emergency towing, battery jump start, flat tire change, emergency fuel service, lock-out service and extrication/winch service.

Other services and benefits include: trip routing services and trip interruption benefits throughout the U.S. and Canada.

Please refer to your 24 Hour Roadside Assistance Owner's Guide for specific details on the services provided. ◀

[3] Coverage does not include service to any vehicle willfully driven into non-regularly travelled areas such as unused roads, open fields, construction sites, beaches, mud-filled driveways/laneways/concession roads, vacant lots, or any other area that is inaccessible or hazardous for the Service Operator's vehicle to reach.

Federal Emissions Warranties

General

The Emissions Warranties set out on the following pages are warranties which the manufacturer is required by law to furnish to you at the time you take delivery of your new vehicle. These coverages may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

The warranties required by federal laws apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen) for sale in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The warranties required by the State of California law apply to all new Volkswagen vehicles imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale and registration in the State of California.

The Commonwealth of Massachusetts and the States of Vermont and Maine have adopted warranty requirements that are identical to the California warranties.

The owner of a vehicle certified for sale and registered in California, Massachusetts, Vermont or Maine may, therefore, have warranty rights under both Federal and State mandated emissions warranties. The state of New York has adopted emissions warranty requirements identical to California mandated emissions warranties ONLY for vehicles equipped to meet California's Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV) emissions requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood.

The owner of a new Volkswagen vehicle imported and distributed by Volkswagen for sale in states other than California, Massachusetts, Vermont, Maine or New York (as set forth in the above paragraph) has rights only under the Federal Emissions Warranty.

Please read these warranties carefully. If you have any questions concerning the applicability of each warranty to your vehicle or want to know whether a particular repair will be performed free of charge pursuant to these warranties, please write to or telephone:

Customer CARE
Volkswagen of America, Inc.
3800 Hamlin Road
Auburn Hills, MI 48326
Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987 ◀

Federal Emissions Control System Defect Warranty

For 2 Years or 24,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen), the authorized United States importer of Volkswagen vehicles, warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform at the time of sale with all applicable regulations of the United States Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations for 2 years after the date of first use or delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee or until the vehicle has been driven 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to EPA emission standards. The following parts or systems listed, if defective, could cause the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations:

- Evaporative Emission Control System: including fuel tank, filler cap, filler neck and leak detection pump
- Exhaust System: including manifolds, turbochargers, catalytic converters, down pipes and particulate traps
- EGR System: including valves, pipes and coolers
- Fuel Injection System: including control modules, sensors, switches, valves and fuel lines
- Intake System: including camshaft adjuster units, sensors, manifold, pipes and control valves
- Ignition System: including coils and sensors
- OBD System: including Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) and Data Link Connector
- PCV System: including control valves and pipes
- Secondary Air Injection System: including air pump and control valves
- Emission-related hoses, gaskets, clamps and other accessories used with the above components

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with EPA regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge. ◀

For 8 Years or 80,000 miles

If the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, your Volkswagen dealer will repair or replace free of charge the following major emission control components only:

- Catalytic Converter
- Engine Electronic Control Module
- On Board Diagnostic Device ◀

Federal Emissions Performance Warranty

For 2 years or 24,000 miles and 8 years or 80,000 miles

Volkswagen of America, Inc., (Volkswagen) warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee of a **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle and any subsequent purchaser or lessee of the vehicle that if the following conditions are met, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada will remedy any nonconformity, as determined below, free of charge, under the following conditions:

- the vehicle fails to conform at any time during 24 months or 24,000 miles, whichever occurs first, to applicable emission inspection standards as determined by an EPA Approved State Inspection and Maintenance Test (I/M), or
- if the vehicle has been in use for more than 24 months or 24,000 miles, but less than 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first, the vehicle fails an I/M Test resulting from a malfunction of a catalytic converter, engine electronic control module or on- board diagnostic device (OBD), and
- the failure of the I/M Test requires the vehicle owner to bear any penalty or other sanction, including the denial of the right to use the vehicle under local, state or federal law, and
- the vehicle has been maintained and operated in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions for proper maintenance and use. ◀

Performance Warranty claim approval

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed an I/M Test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim.

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim.

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure.

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or workmanship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance.

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely ▶

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT 107 PONTIAC, MI

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC.
ATTENTION: RECALL
P.O. BOX 217022
AUBURN HILLS, MI 48321-7022

NOTICE OF ADDRESS CHANGE/USED CAR PURCHASE

Complete Vehicle Identification Number

Last Name

First Name

Initial

Number

Street

Apt. No.

City

State

Zip Code

Please **PRINT** and give complete information

ADDR CHG VWUS

NO POSTAGE
NECESSARY
IF MAILED
IN THE
UNITED STATES

BUSINESS REPLY MAIL

FIRST CLASS MAIL PERMIT 107 PONTIAC, MI

POSTAGE WILL BE PAID BY ADDRESSEE

VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC.
ATTENTION: RECALL
P.O. BOX 217022
AUBURN HILLS, MI 48321-7022

NOTICE OF ADDRESS CHANGE/USED CAR PURCHASE

Complete Vehicle Identification Number

Last Name

First Name

Initial

Number

Street

Apt. No.

City

State

Zip Code

Please **PRINT** and give complete information

ADDR CHG VWUS

manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or

- the use of an uncertified part or to noncompliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use, which is not related to the I/M Test failure ◀

Additional Information About Your Federal Emissions Warranties

Warranty period

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original retail purchaser or original lessee, and any subsequent purchaser or lessee or, if the vehicle is first placed in service as a demonstrator or company demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀

Proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. Time and mileage intervals, at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary from model to model.

Volkswagen recommends you keep a record of scheduled maintenance by having your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by the authorized Volkswagen dealer or other service facility that performed the maintenance. If you perform the maintenance yourself, keep all documentation as proof you have performed the maintenance at the approximate time or mileage intervals recommended, that you have used proper parts, and that you were able to perform the maintenance properly.

Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the instruction for proper maintenance may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle according to the instructions or failure to keep a record of maintenance.

Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen Parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effectiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure. ◀

EPA certified replacement parts

Maintenance, repair, or replacement of emission control devices and systems may be performed by any automotive service and repair establishment or qualified individual using Environmental Protection Agency (EPA) certified replacement parts. ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses, which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. See "Emergency Repairs" for further details. ◀

Parts not scheduled for inspection or replacements

Any part, which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance booklet, is covered by this warranty for the full warranty period. ◀

Scheduled part inspection or replacement

A part scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is covered for the duration of these warranties.

A part installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next scheduled replacement interval or for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Damage to non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀

Emergency repairs

Emergency repairs performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed, and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer. The maximum reimbursement allowable is an amount equal to the cost if your authorized Volkswagen dealer had completed the repair(s). Reimbursement will be considered when you submit the following items to your authorized Volkswagen dealer:

- A statement explaining the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer,
- Paid receipt(s),
- Repair order(s), and
- Part(s) removed from your Volkswagen. ◀

Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, including loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Tips

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this booklet under the title "Customer CARE".

- You may obtain further information regarding the Emissions Performance Warranty or report violation of the terms of the Emissions Performance Warranty by contacting: Manager, Certification and Compliance Division (6405J), Warranty Claims, Environmental Protection Agency, Ariel Rios Building, 1200 Pennsylvania Avenue, N.W., Washington, DC 20460 ◀

California Emissions Warranties

California law requires us to provide you with the following Emissions Warranty Statement:

CALIFORNIA EMISSION CONTROL WARRANTY STATEMENT

Your warranty rights and obligations

The California Air Resources Board is pleased to explain the emission control system warranty on your **model year 2006** vehicle. In California, new motor vehicles must be designed, built and equipped to meet the State's stringent anti-smog standards. Volkswagen must warrant the emission control system on your vehicle for the periods of time listed below provided there has been no abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of your vehicle.

Your emission control system may include parts such as the carburetor or fuel-injection system, the ignition system, catalytic converter, and engine computer. Also included may be hoses, belts, connectors and other emission-related assemblies.

Where a warrantable condition exits, Volkswagen will repair your vehicle at no cost to you including diagnosis, parts and labor.

Manufacturer's warranty coverage:

For 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

If your vehicle fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test , all necessary repairs and adjustments will be made by Volkswagen to ensure that your vehicle passes the inspection. This is your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY.

If any emission-related part on your vehicle is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your short-term Emission Control System DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first

If an emission-related part listed in this warranty booklet specially noted with coverage for 7 years or 70,000 miles is defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen. This is your long-term Emission Control System DEFECTS WARRANTY.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV)** requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an Inspection and Maintenance Test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Owner's warranty responsibilities:

As the vehicle owner, you are responsible for the performance of the required maintenance listed in your owner's Maintenance booklet. Volkswagen recommends that you retain all receipts covering maintenance on your vehicle, but Volkswagen cannot deny warranty solely for the lack of receipts or for your failure to ensure the performance of all scheduled maintenance. ▶

You are responsible for presenting your vehicle to a Volkswagen dealer as soon as a problem exists. The warranty repairs should be completed in a reasonable amount of time, not to exceed 30 days.

As the vehicle owner, you should also be aware that Volkswagen may deny you warranty coverage if your vehicle or a part has failed due to abuse, neglect, improper maintenance or unapproved modifications.

IF YOU HAVE ANY QUESTIONS REGARDING YOUR WARRANTY RIGHTS AND RESPONSIBILITIES, YOU SHOULD CONTACT VOLKSWAGEN OF AMERICA, INC., CUSTOMER CARE AT 1 (800) 822-8987, OR THE CALIFORNIA AIR RESOURCES BOARD AT P.O. BOX 8001, EL MONTE, CA 91734–2302. ◀

California Emissions Control System Defect Warranties

For 3 years / 50,000 miles

General

Volkswagen of America, Inc. (Volkswagen), warrants to the original retail purchaser or original lessee and any subsequent purchaser or lessee that every **model year 2006** Volkswagen vehicle imported by Volkswagen and certified for sale and registered in California:

- was designed, built and equipped so as to conform with all applicable requirements of the California Air Resources Board (CARB) and
- is free from defects in material and workmanship which cause the vehicle to fail to conform with CARB requirements, including any defect which would cause the vehicle's on-board malfunction indicator to illuminate, for 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

A warranted part is any part installed on a motor vehicle or motor vehicle engine by the vehicle or engine manufacturer, or installed in a warranty repair, which affects any regulated emission from a motor vehicle or engine which is subject to California emission standards.

The obligation of Volkswagen under this warranty is limited, however, to the following: If within this period a defect in material or workmanship causes the vehicle to fail to conform with California regulations and the vehicle is brought to the workshop of any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada the dealer will make repairs as may be required by these regulations free of charge.

These coverage's may also be included in the Volkswagen 4 years / 50,000 miles Limited New Vehicle Warranty. ◀

For 7 years / 70,000 Miles Covering Certain Emission System Parts

The following emissions control system parts marked with "yes" are covered for 7 years or 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first:

	Jetta, Passat 2.0T FSI	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.5L	Touareg VR6	Touareg 4.2L
Camshaft adjuster unit	no	no	yes	yes
Camshaft adjuster control housing	no	no	no	yes
Fuel tank	yes	yes	yes	yes
Turbocharger	yes	no	no	no
Intake manifold	no	no	yes	yes
Engine control module[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Exhaust manifold	yes	no	yes	no

	Jetta, Passat 2.0T FSI	Golf, Jetta, New Beetle 2.5L	Touareg VR6	Touareg 4.2L
Catalytic converter[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Transmission control module	yes (Jetta only)	no	no	no
Malfunction indicator lamp (MIL) (covered only when equipped with Driver Information Display)[a)]	yes	yes	yes	yes
Passenger compartment auxiliary heater	no	no	yes	yes
Throttle valve control unit	no	no	no	yes

a) Also covered by the Federal Emissions Warranty for 8 years or 80,000 miles, whichever occurs first.

California Emissions Performance Warranty

California maintains a mandatory emissions Inspection and Maintenance program (I/M) requiring motor vehicles to be tested at regular intervals. If your vehicle fails to pass an I/M test performed by a Licensed I/M station pursuant to the California Inspection and Maintenance Program within 3 years or 50,000 miles, whichever occurs first, any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada will perform free of charge any repairs necessary for the vehicle to pass the smog test.

After the 3 year / 50,000 miles performance warranty has expired, an I/M test failure due to a defect in a part which is warranted for 7 years / 70,000 miles, whichever occurs first, is covered. These repairs include diagnosis, replacement, repair, and adjustments.

For 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first

Some Volkswagen models may be specially equipped to meet California **Partial Zero Emission Vehicle (P-ZEV)** requirements, as identified on the Vehicle Emission Control Information Label located on the hood. For these vehicles, if your Volkswagen fails an I/M test, OR if any emission-related part is found to be defective, the part will be repaired or replaced by Volkswagen for 15 years or 150,000 miles, whichever occurs first, from the time of delivery of the vehicle to the original retail purchaser or original lessee. This represents your Emission Control System PERFORMANCE WARRANTY and DEFECTS WARRANTY.

Performance Warranty claim approval

You may raise a claim under this warranty immediately after your vehicle has failed a California I/M test if, as a result of that failure, you are required by law to repair the vehicle to avoid imposition of a penalty or cancellation of your right to use the vehicle. You need not actually suffer the loss or lose the right to use your vehicle or pay for the repair before presenting your claim.

Claims may be presented only by bringing your vehicle to any authorized Volkswagen dealer in the United States, including its territories, and Canada. The dealer will honor or deny your claim within a reasonable time, not to exceed thirty (30) days, from the time at which your vehicle is presented for repair or within any time period specified by local, state or federal law, whichever is shorter, except when a delay is caused by events not attributable to Volkswagen or the dealer. If the dealer denies your claim, you will be notified in writing of the reasons for rejecting the claim. If you do not receive notice of denial of your claim within the above time period, Volkswagen is required by law to honor the claim.

Under certain circumstances, your claim may be denied because you have failed to comply with instructions for scheduled maintenance contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. In determining whether you have complied with the instructions for scheduled maintenance and proper use, Volkswagen may require you to furnish proof of compliance only with those maintenance instructions which Volkswagen has reason to believe were not performed and which could be the cause of the I/M Test failure.

Volkswagen may deny an emission performance warranty claim on the basis that a non-EPA certified replacement part was used in the maintenance or repair of the vehicle if Volkswagen can prove that the non-certified part is either defective in materials or workmanship, or not equivalent from an emission standpoint to the original part, and you are not able to offer information that the part is either not defective or equivalent to the original part with respect to its emission performance.

Volkswagen will not deny a claim relating to:

- warranty work or pre-delivery service performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, or
- work performed in an emergency to rectify an unsafe condition attributable to Volkswagen, provided you have taken steps in a timely manner to put the vehicle back into a conforming condition, or
- the use of an uncertified part or to noncompliance with the instructions for proper maintenance and use, which is not related to the I/M Test failure ◀

Additional Information About Your California Emissions Warranties

Warranty period

The warranty period begins on the date the vehicle is delivered to the original retail purchaser or original lessee, and any subsequent purchaser or lessee or, if the vehicle is first placed in service as a demonstrator or company car prior to delivery, on the date it is first placed in service. ◀

Proper maintenance and use

Instructions for proper maintenance are contained in your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet. Time and mileage intervals at which maintenance is to be performed, may vary from model to model.

Volkswagen recommends you keep a record of scheduled maintenance performed by having your Volkswagen Maintenance booklet validated at the approximate time or mileage intervals by an authorized Volkswagen dealer, and that you provide these records to the new owner whenever you sell the vehicle.

Failure to maintain your vehicle according to the instruction for proper maintenance may cause the vehicle to exceed applicable emissions standards and could result in denial of warranty coverage. However, Volkswagen will not deny a warranty claim solely on the basis of your failure to maintain the vehicle according to the instructions or failure to keep a record of maintenance.

Instructions for proper use of the vehicle are contained in your Volkswagen Owner's Manual. ◀

Use of Genuine Volkswagen Parts

Volkswagen recommends that Genuine Volkswagen parts be used as replacement parts for the maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control systems. Use of replacement parts which are not equivalent to Genuine Volkswagen parts in emission performance and durability may impair the effectiveness of emission control systems. Although use of parts other than Genuine Volkswagen parts does not invalidate these warranties, Volkswagen assumes no liability under these warranties for failure of such parts and damage to other parts caused by such failure ◀

Maintenance and repairs performed by independent service shops

Without invalidating these warranties, you may choose to have maintenance, repair or replacement of emission control components performed by any automotive service establishment or individual qualified to perform such services. However, the cost of such services is not covered by these warranties except in emergencies. If the independent service establishment finds a warrantable defect, you may deliver the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer and have the defect corrected free of charge. Volkswagen will not be liable for any expenses which you have incurred at the independent service establishment, except for emergency repairs. See "Emergency Repairs" for further details. ◀

Parts not scheduled for inspection or replacement

Any part, which is not scheduled for inspection or replacement at maintenance intervals specified in the Volkswagen Maintenance booklet, is covered by this warranty for the full warranty period. Any such parts repaired or replaced under warranty are warranted for the remaining warranty period. ◀

Scheduled part inspection or replacement

A part scheduled only for inspection in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is covered for the duration of these warranties.

A part installed in accordance with Volkswagen's instructions or required scheduled maintenance is warranted until the next scheduled replacement interval for the duration of these warranties. ◀

Damage to non-warranty parts

If failure of a warranted part causes damage to a part not covered by warranty, the non-warranted part will also be replaced free of charge. ◀

Emergency repairs

Emergency repairs performed by a non-Volkswagen service facility will be reimbursed if the repair work was needed and correctly performed, and it was impossible or unreasonable under the circumstances to tow or drive your Volkswagen to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer. The maximum reimbursement allowable is an amount equal to the cost if your authorized Volkswagen dealer had completed the repair(s). Reimbursement will be considered when you submit the following items to your authorized Volkswagen dealer:

- A statement explaining the circumstances that prevented you from getting to an authorized Volkswagen dealer,
- Paid receipt(s),
- Repair order(s), and
- Part(s) removed from your Volkswagen. ◀

Damage caused by tampering, use of improper fuel, abuse, neglect and improper maintenance

These warranties do not cover any damage to the vehicle caused by tampering with emission controls, use of fuel containing lead, or fuel not meeting the specifications set forth in the Owner's Manual, and abuse, neglect or improper maintenance of the vehicle. Diagnosis and repair of such damage are at the expense of the owner. ◀

Implied warranties

Any implied warranty, including any warranty of merchantability or warranty of fitness for a particular purpose, is limited in duration to the stated period of these written warranties. ◀

Incidental and consequential damages

These warranties do not cover any incidental or consequential damages, such as loss of resale value, lost profits or earnings, and out-of-pocket expenses for substitute transportation or lodging.

Some states do not allow the exclusion or limitation of incidental or consequential damages, so this limitation or exclusion may not apply to you.

Tips

In the event you have not received the services promised in these warranties, please follow the procedures described in this booklet under the title "Customer CARE". ◀

Customer CARE

Dealer assistance

If you have questions about the service you have received, we suggest that you first discuss them with the service personnel at your authorized Volkswagen dealer. You may want to speak to the Service Manager or directly to the owner of the dealership.

It is their business to be concerned about your satisfaction and goodwill. Since they are closest to the situation, they are in the best position to quickly resolve any concerns you may have. ◀

When to notify the manufacturer

Your satisfaction with our product is very important to us, and we would like to make certain that we have had the opportunity to work with you and your dealer to resolve your concerns.

If your concerns are not resolved to your satisfaction by the dealer, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc., immediately by calling our toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 822-8987

If you prefer to write, please use the following address:

Volkswagen Customer CARE Center
3499 West Hamlin Road
Rochester Hills, MI 48309

You can also contact us using our Internet address:

www.vw.com.

Simply click on "Contact Volkswagen of America, Inc."

When you call or write, please provide the following information:

- **Your name, address and telephone number**
- **Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)**
- **Vehicle type and mileage**
- **Dealer's name and location**
- **Nature of complaint or problem**
- **Copies of repair orders (retain originals for your records) or pertinent documents if you are writing to us**

A Customer CARE Representative will gather and carefully review all facts relating to your request for assistance. After this review is completed, the Customer CARE Representative will inform you of any assistance that the company will be able to provide.

Please note that as part of our continuing effort to maintain the highest quality of service to our Customers, supervisors will occasionally monitor the quality of telephone calls between our Customers and Representatives. We hope you understand our interest in providing the best possible service. ◀

Repairs not covered by warranty

In some circumstances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer financial assistance toward repairs or expenses not covered by Volkswagen of America, Inc.'s Limited New Vehicle Warranties.

In certain instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may pay for such repairs in accordance with the terms of service action campaigns it will conduct from time to time. In the event of a service action, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will notify you by mail and request that you bring your vehicle to your nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer for repair free of charge.

If you have not recently changed your address and Volkswagen of America, Inc. has your current address on file, you will receive notification automatically. If you are concerned that you may not have received notice concerning a particular service action, please check with your dealer to determine whether your vehicle is eligible for any repair free of charge.

In other instances, Volkswagen of America, Inc. may offer assistance with a repair beyond warranty on a case-by-case basis. If you believe that your vehicle needs a repair not covered by warranty which Volkswagen of America, Inc. should pay for in part or in whole, please discuss the request with your dealer. If you are not satisfied with your dealer's decision, please contact Volkswagen of America, Inc. Customer CARE by telephone or in writing. Your request should provide the vehicle identification number, the mileage, maintenance history and an explanation of why you believe that the repair should be performed free of charge. Your request should be accompanied by all available maintenance and repair records which you have retained. A Customer CARE Representative will review your request and advise you of our decision. ◀

BBB AUTO LINE

BBB AUTO LINE dispute resolution services

If your dealer or Customer CARE Representative does not resolve your product concern to your satisfaction or if you do not wish to present your concern to either of them, you may take advantage of the mediation and arbitration services of the Better Business Bureau. This program is called BBB AUTO LINE and is available to you free of charge, on a nationwide basis as long as your vehicle has been driven less than 24,000 miles and has not been in use for more than 2 years. Not every claim is eligible; there are some age and mileage limitations, so please check with your local Better Business Bureau ("BBB") regarding your claim.

The BBB AUTO LINE program has two parts. The first part is mediation. Mediation means that the BBB staff will facilitate negotiations between the parties in an effort to bring your claim to a mutually acceptable resolution. You do not have to participate in mediation if you would rather proceed immediately to arbitration. Arbitration is the other part of BBB AUTO LINE. Arbitration is a process by which an impartial person makes a decision on your claim. The arbitrators are not connected with the automobile industry and serve on a voluntary basis.

If you do not agree with the mediated resolution and/or have opted to arbitrate, an arbitration hearing will be scheduled. You may attend the hearing in person, be represented by an attorney, bring witnesses, and give supporting evidence. Instead of appearing personally, you may request a written or even a telephone arbitration hearing.

If you wish to use BBB AUTO LINE, please call the following toll-free number:

Tel.: 1 (800) 955-5100

When you call the local office of the "BBB", its staff will need the following information:

- **Your name, address and telephone number**
- **Make, model and Vehicle Identification Number of your vehicle (VIN)**
- **Delivery date and current mileage**
- **Nature of complaint or problem**

The "BBB" will follow-up on your complaint; and if it cannot be mediated, they will arrange an arbitration hearing.

A decision will be made by the arbitrator within 3 days of the hearing (typically a decision is made 40 days from the date you filed your claim with "BBB").

You then have the opportunity to accept or reject the decision. If you accept the decision, Volkswagen of America, Inc. will be bound by the decision and fulfill its obligation within the time specified by the arbitrator.

If you reject the decision:

1 - You are free to pursue other legal remedies available under state and federal law.

2 - The manufacturer will not have to comply with any part of the decision.

California residents

Additional information relating to your rights to arbitrate warranty claims under the BBB AUTO LINE Arbitration Program is provided in the Owner Information about Consumer Protection Laws booklet which is presented to you by your dealer when you take delivery of your new vehicle. ◀

Service Publications

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

Updated service information you can obtain

Volkswagen monitors product performance in the field and regularly sends dealers the latest service information about Volkswagen vehicles. Now you too, can get these bulletins.

Bulletins cover a wide variety of subjects: the proper use and care of your car, costly repairs, inexpensive repairs or adjustments which, if done early, may avoid costly future repairs. Some bulletins describe repairs about new or unexpected conditions. Others describe improved repair procedures or parts improvements. All of this information can also help a qualified technician better service your vehicle.

Most bulletins apply to conditions affecting a small number of vehicles. Your dealer or a qualified technician may have to determine if a specific bulletin applies to your vehicle. You can order Volkswagen bulletins, Volkswagen repair information and Volkswagen Owner's Literature 24 hours / 7 days a week on the Internet from the Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center at:

www.vw.ddsltd.com

Or if you prefer, you can contact our literature distribution service at:

Telephone: 1 (800) 544-8021
Fax: 1 (800) 572–1438 ◀

What you will also find on the website

- A list of Volkswagen bulletins for 1985 and later model years, covering all North American specification Volkswagen models.
- Ordering and pricing information on how to buy specific bulletins.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Repair Manuals on paper format, CD ROM or DVD.
- Ordering and price information for Volkswagen Electrical Wiring Diagrams.
- Owner's Manuals
- Maintenance Booklets
- Warranty Manuals
- Sound System Manuals

⚠ WARNING

These bulletins are intended for qualified technicians. They are not meant for the CASUAL do-it-yourselfer. Qualified technicians have the equipment, tools, safety instructions, and know-how to do a job properly and safely. Improperly performed repairs or maintenance can adversely affect the safety of your vehicle, possibly leading to accident or injury. They may also impair the economy, durability or reliability of your vehicle and may void the warranty of your car. If you are not sure that you can perform a job properly and safely, you should not risk trying to do so. ◀

Tire Manufacturers

List of tire manufacturers for new Volkswagen vehicles

The Magnuson-Moss Warranty Federal Trade Commission Improvement Act of 1975 and regulations issued pursuant to the act require that a tire warranty pamphlet be placed in every new vehicle prior to sale.

To assist you in obtaining the related warranty information, the following list of tire manufacturers and addresses is being provided.

Tire Manufacturers

Dunlop Tire Corp.
1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
Tel.: 1 (800) 548–4714

Bridgestone/Firestone Inc.
1 Bridgestone Park
Nashville, TN 37214
Tel.: 1 (800) 356-4644

Goodyear Tire & Rubber Co.
1144 East Market Street
Akron, OH 44316
Tel.: 1 (800) 321-2136

Continental General
1800 Continental Blvd.
Charlotte, NC 28273
Tel.: 1 (800) 847–3349

Michelin Tire Corp.
P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602-9001
Tel.: 1 (800) 887–0662

Pirelli Tires North America
300 George Street, 5th Floor
New Haven, CT 06511
Tel.: 1 (800) 747-3554

Uniroyal Goodrich Tire Co.
P.O. Box 19001
Greenville, SC 29602-9001
Tel.: 1 (800) 521-9796 ◀

Afterword

It has always been Volkswagen's policy to continuously improve its products. Volkswagen, therefore, reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications, and to make additions or improvements to its products without incurring any obligation to install them on products previously manufactured.

All rights reserved.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without the written consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc. Specifications are subject to change without notice.

Text and specifications in this manual are based on information and knowledge available at the time of printing.

May not be reproduced or translated in whole or in part without consent of Volkswagen of America, Inc.

Printed in Germany

© 2005 Volkswagen AG

For the sake of environment

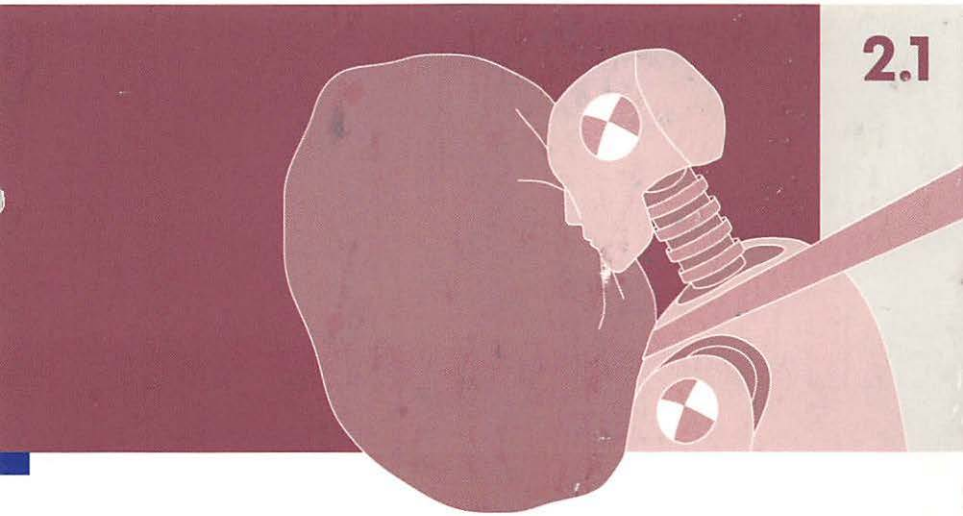
Printed on environmentally friendly paper (bleached without chlorine, recyclable).

1.2 USA Warranty | Touareg, Golf, Jetta, New Beetle
Print status: 05.2005
| Art.-Nr.: 261.555.WAT.23 | Ausgabe: englisch Nordamerika 05.2005

2.1 Safety first

Golf GTI

Model year 2006



About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to USA models only."

You will find any **Supplements** in the Owner's Literature immediately after the *Alphabetical Index* booklet.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Text with this symbol contains important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Text with this symbol draws your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Text with this symbol contains information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Safe driving 2

General notes 2
Proper occupant seating positions 4
Pedal area 9
Stowing luggage 10
Reporting safety defects 12

Safety belts 13

General notes 13
Why safety belts? 15
Safety belts 19
Safety belt pretensioners 26

Airbag system 28

Important things to know 28
Front airbag system the basics 32
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System . 40
Side airbags 46
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags 50

Child safety 53

Child Seats 53
Installing child restraint with a safety belt . 63
Additional Information 68
Lower anchorages 71
Installing a CRS using the "LATCH" system 72
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 73

Alphabetical index 75

Safe driving

General notes

Dear Volkswagen Driver

Please remember – safety first!

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and warnings which you should read and heed for your own safety, the safety of your passengers and others.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that you follow the suggestions and heed the WARNINGS in this Booklet.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

It's in your interest and in the interest of all your passengers.

- **Additional important information that you need to know for your own safety and the safety of your passengers and others is in the other Booklets of your Owner's Literature.**
- **This Owner's Literature must always remain with your Volkswagen whenever you lend or sell your vehicle so that this important information will always be available to the driver and passengers.** ◀

Safety equipment

The safety features are part of the occupant restraint system and work together to help reduce the risk of injury in accident situations.

Your safety and the safety of your passengers shouldn't be left to chance. Advances in technology have made a variety of features available to help reduce the risk of injury in a collision. The following is a listing of just a few of the safety features in your Volkswagen:

- sophisticated safety belts for all seating positions,
- safety belt force limiters for the front seats seating positions,
- safety belt pretensioners for the front seating positions and for the outboard rear seating positions in combination with optional rear side airbags,
- safety belt height adjustment for the front seats,
- front airbags system,
- side airbags for the front seats, optional for the outboard rear seats (four doors vehicle)
- Side Curtain Protection ™ airbags,
- LATCH anchorages for child restraints
- head restraints for each seating position, and
- adjustable steering column.

These individual safety features, can work together as a system to help protect you and your passengers in a wide range of collisions. These features can't work as a system if they are not always correctly adjusted and correctly used!

This Booklet provides important information about why these features are important, how they work to help protect you and your passengers and how they must be adjusted and used to get the greatest benefit and reduce the likelihood of injury. The Booklet also contains important WARNINGS that you and your passengers must always read and heed in order to help reduce the risk of personal injury.

Safety is everybody's responsibility! ◀

Important things to do before driving

Safety is everybody's job. Vehicle and occupant safety always depends on the informed and careful driver.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving always:

- Make sure that all lights and signals are operating correctly.
- Make sure that the tire pressure is correct.
- Make sure that all windows are clean and afford good visibility to the outside.
- Secure all luggage and other items carefully ⇒ page 10.
- Make sure that nothing can interfere with the pedals.
- Adjust front seat, head restraint and mirrors correctly for your height.
- Instruct passengers to adjust the head restraints according to their height.
- Make sure to use the right child restraint correctly to protect children ⇒ page 53.
- Sit properly in your seat and make sure that your passengers do the same ⇒ page 4.
- Fasten your safety belt and wear it properly. Also instruct your passengers to fasten their safety belts properly ⇒ page 13. ◀

What impairs driving safety?

Safe driving is directly related to the condition of the vehicle, the driver as well as the driver's ability to concentrate on the road without being distracted.

The driver is responsible for the safety of the vehicle and all of its occupants. If your ability to drive is impaired, safety risks for everybody in the vehicle increase and you also become a hazard to everyone else on the road ⇒ ⚠. Therefore:

- Never let yourself be distracted by passengers or by using the Infotainment system or a cellular telephone.
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired (by medications, alcohol, drugs, etc.).
- Observe all traffic laws, rules of the road and speed limits and plain common sense.
- Always adjust your speed to road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take frequent breaks on long trips. Don't drive for more than two hours at a stretch.
- Do not drive when you are tired, under pressure or when you are stressed.

⚠ WARNING

Impaired driving safety increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used. ◀

Proper occupant seating positions

Proper seating position for the driver

The proper driver seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

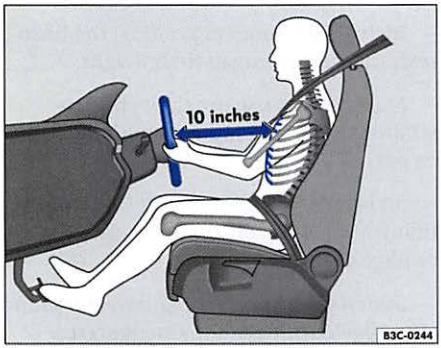


Fig. 1 There must be a distance of at least 10 inches between the driver and the steering wheel.

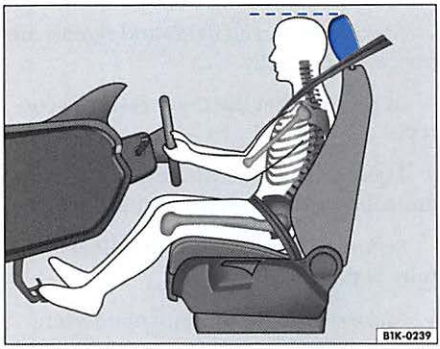


Fig. 2 Correct head restraint position for driver

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the driver to the following position:

– Adjust the driver's seat so that you can easily push the pedals all the way to the floor while keeping your knee(s) slightly bent ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position so that your back comes in full contact with it when you drive.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that there is a distance of at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the steering wheel and your breast bone ⇒ fig. 1. If not possible, see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop about adaptive equipment.

– Adjust the steering wheel so that the steering wheel and airbag cover points at your chest and not at your face.

– Grasp the top of the steering wheel with your elbow(s) slightly bent.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ fig. 2.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒ page 13.

– Always keep both feet in the footwell so that you are in control of the vehicle at all times.

For detailed information on how to adjust the driver seat ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Drivers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.

- Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.
- Pointing the steering wheel toward your face decreases the ability of the supplemental driver's airbag to protect you in a collision.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of your body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly and make sure that all passengers are properly restrained.
- Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.
- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇒ page 53. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know". ◀

Proper seating position for the front passenger

The proper front passenger seating position is important for safe, relaxed driving.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, we recommend that you adjust the seat for the front passenger to the following position:

– Move the front passenger seat back as far as possible. There must be a minimum of 10 inches (25 cm) between the breastbone and the instrument panel ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the angle of the seatback so that it is in an upright position and your back comes in full contact with it whenever the vehicle is moving.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but not lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ page 7.

– Keep both feet flat on the floor in the footwell in front of the front passenger seat.

– Fasten and wear safety belts correctly ⇒ page 13.

For detailed information on how to adjust the front passenger seat ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Front seat passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.
- Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.

- Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.
- Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
- Before driving, always adjust the front passenger seat and head restraint properly.
- Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag

⚠ WARNING (continued)

system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.

- Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.
- Children must always ride in child seats ⇒ page 53. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know". ◀

Proper seating positions for passengers in rear seats

Rear seat passengers must sit upright with both feet on the floor consistent with their physical size and be properly restrained whenever the vehicle is in use.

To reduce the risk of injury caused by an incorrect seating position in the event of a sudden braking maneuver or an accident, your passengers on the rear bench seat must always observe the following:

– Make sure that the seatbacks are securely latched in the upright position.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible but no lower than eye level ⇒ page 7. If a passenger is sitting in the rear center seating position, this compact head restraint is not height adjustable, but it must always been raised whenever the center rear seating position is occupied. ⇒ ⓘ in "Safety belt extender" on page 23

– Keep both feet flat in the footwell in front of the rear seat.

– Fasten and wear safety belts properly ⇒ page 13.

– Make sure that children are always properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their size and age ⇒ page 53.

⚠ WARNING

Passengers who are improperly seated on the rear seat can be seriously injured in a crash.

- Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.
- Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!
- Always adjust the head restraint properly so that it can give maximum protection. ◀

Proper adjustment of head restraints for outboard seating positions

Correctly adjusted head restraints are an important part of your vehicle's occupant restraint system and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accident situations.

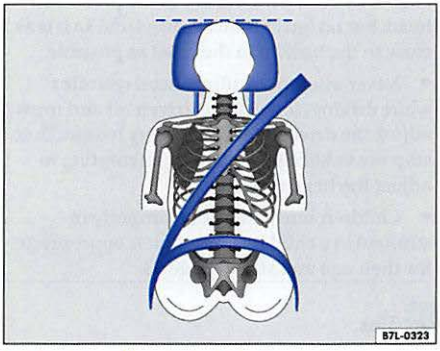


Fig. 3 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the front

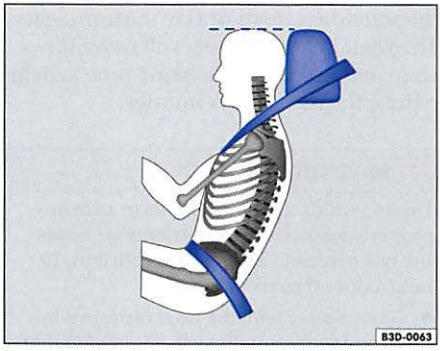


Fig. 4 Correctly adjusted head restraint viewed from the side

The head restraints must be correctly adjusted to be able to provide the best protection.

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge of the restraint is level with the top of your head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ fig. 3 and ⇒ fig. 4.

Adjusting head restraints ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**
- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Each head restraint must be adjusted according to occupants' size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.**
- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".**

Tips

The center head restraint on the rear seat **cannot** be adjusted for height on the Golf GTI. ◀

Active head restraints for the front seats

During a rear end collision the passengers in the vehicle are pressed against the seat backrest. The resulting pressure that the body exerts against the backrest activates the active head restraints in the front seats. The front head restraints will move forward and upward at the same time to help reduce the risk of neck injuries.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- **Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted. Remember that the rear center head restraint is not height adjustable and that it must be raised up all the way whenever the center rear seat is occupied.**
- **Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.**
- **Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Each head restraint must be adjusted according to occupants' size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.

- **Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.**
- **Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒ page 53.**

Tips

The active front head restraints can also activate when a passenger pushes up against the backrest with enough force (for example if you let yourself just fall into the seat abruptly) or if the head restraint is pushed from behind. This is normal and will not damage the head restraint. It will go back to its original position right away. ◀

Examples of improper seating positions

The occupant restraint system can only reduce the risk of injury if vehicle occupants are properly seated.

Improper seating positions can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are properly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the proper seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never allow anyone to assume an improper seating position when the vehicle is being used ⇒ ⚠.

The following lists only some of the positions that will increase the risk of serious injury and death. Our hope is that these examples will help make you more aware of seating positions that are dangerous.

Therefore, whenever the vehicle is moving:

- never stand up in the vehicle
- never stand on the seats
- never kneel on the seats
- never ride with the seatback reclined
- never lie down on the rear seat ▶

- never lean up against the instrument panel
- never sit on the edge of the seat
- never sit sideways
- never lean out the window
- never put your feet out the window
- never put your feet on the instrument panel
- never rest your feet on the seat cushion or back of the seat
- never ride in the footwell
- never sit on the front or rear center armrest
- never ride in the cargo area.

⚠ WARNING

Improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants stay in a proper seating position and are properly restrained whenever the vehicle is being used.** ◀

Pedal area

Pedals

The pedals must always be free to move and must never be interfered with by a floor mat or any other object.

Make sure that all pedals move freely without interference and that nothing prevents them from returning to their original positions.

Only use floor mats that leave the pedal area free and can be secured with floor mat fasteners.

If a brake circuit fails, increased brake pedal travel is required to bring the vehicle to a full stop.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious injury.

- **Never place any objects in the driver's footwell. An object could get into the pedal area and interfere with pedal function. In case of sudden braking or an accident, you would not be able to brake or accelerate!**
- **Always make sure that nothing can fall or move into the driver's footwell.** ◀

Floor mats on the driver side

Always use floor mats that can be securely attached to the floor mat fasteners and do not interfere with the free movement of the pedals.

– Make sure that the floor mats are properly secured and cannot move and interfere with the pedals ⇒ ⚠.

Use only floor mats that leave the pedal area unobstructed and that are firmly secured so that they cannot slip out of position. Properly securing the floor mats will prevent them from sliding into positions that could interfere with the pedals or impair safe operation of your vehicle in other ways.

You can obtain suitable floor mats from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

⚠ WARNING

Pedals that cannot move freely can result in a loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always make sure that floor mats are properly secured.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings in the vehicle that cannot be properly secured in place to prevent them from slipping and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.
- Never place or install floor mats or other floor coverings on top of already installed floor mats. Additional floor mats and other coverings will reduce the size of the pedal area and interfere with the pedals.
- Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning.
- Always make sure that objects cannot fall into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. Objects can become trapped under the brake pedal and accelerator pedal causing a loss of vehicle control. ◀

Stowing luggage

Loading the luggage compartment

All luggage and other objects must be properly stowed and secured in the luggage compartment.

Loose items in the luggage compartment can shift suddenly changing vehicle handling characteristics. Loose items can also increase the risk of serious personal injury in a sudden vehicle maneuver or in a collision.

– Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment.

– Always place and properly secure heavy items as far forward as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Stow heavy luggage as low as possible in the luggage compartment.

– Secure luggage using the tie-downs provided ⇒ page 12 .

– Make sure that the rear seat back is securely latched in place.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can fly through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.
- Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.

⚠ WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles. To help reduce the risk of a loss of control leading to serious personal injury:

- Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:
  - Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.
  - Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.
- Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating specified on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight standards can cause the vehicle to slide and handle differently. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Please observe information on safe driving ⇒ page 2.

⚠ WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid or tailgate closed while driving.

- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid or tailgate cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid or tailgate open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:
  - Close all windows,
  - Close the power roof[1],
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the doors, the power roof[1], all windows and rear lid or tailgate are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- After closing the rear lid or tailgate, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid or tailgate left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and close the rear lid or tailgate becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Note

Make sure that the heating wires in the rear window cannot be scraped and damaged by items in the vehicle.

Tips

Air circulation helps to reduce window fogging. Do not cover the ventilation slots in front of the rear side windows because this can prevent stale air from escaping the vehicle. ◀

[1] Where applicable

Tie-downs

The luggage compartment is equipped with four tie-downs to secure luggage and other items.

Use the tie-downs to secure your cargo properly ⇒ page 10, "Loading the luggage compartment".

In a collision, the laws of physics mean that even smaller items that are loose in the vehicle will become heavy missiles that can cause serious injury. Items in the vehicle possess energy which vary with vehicle speed and the weight of the item. The vehicle speed is the most significant factor.

For example, in a frontal collision at a speed of 30 mph (48 km/h), the forces acting on a 10 lbs. (4,5 kg) object are about 20 times the normal weight of the item. This means that the weight of the item would suddenly be about 200 lbs. (90 kg). You can imagine the injuries that a 200 lbs. (90 kg) item flying freely through the passenger compartment could cause in a collision like this.

⚠ WARNING

Weak, damaged or improper straps used to secure items to tie-downs can fail during hard braking or in a collision and cause serious personal injury.

- **Always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from shifting or flying forward as dangerous missiles.**
- **When the rear seat backrest is not securely latched in upright position or folded down, always use suitable mounting straps and properly secure items to the tie-downs in the luggage compartment to help prevent items from flying forward as dangerous missiles into the passenger compartment.**
- **Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down.** ◀

Reporting safety defects

Applicable to U.S. only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, injury, or death, you should inform the NHTSA immediately. You should also notify Volkswagen of America, Inc. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

Address of NHTSA

Tel.: 1-888-DASH-2-DOT (1-888-327-4236)

From 8:00 AM to 10:00 PM EST, Monday through Friday

Or have a look at:

http://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/ivoq/

and print out the web form and fax it to (202) 366-7882

Or mail it to:

U.S. Department of Transportation
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Office of Defects Investigation
NSA-10.01, 400 7th Street, SW
Washington, D.C. 20590 ◀

Safety belts

General notes

Always wear safety belts!

Wearing safety belts correctly saves lives!

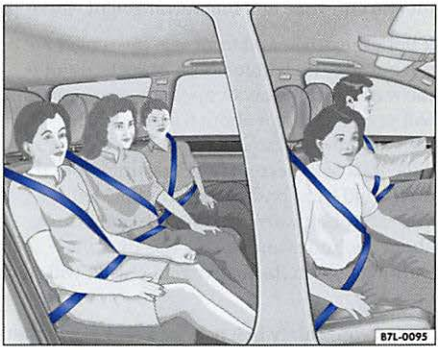


Fig. 5 Illustration of principle: occupants wearing safety belts

This Booklet explains why safety belts are necessary, how they work and how to adjust and wear them correctly.

– Read all the information that follows and heed all of the instructions and WARNINGS in this booklet.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **Safety belts are the single most effective means available to reduce the risk of serious injury and death in automobile accidents. For your protection and that of your passengers, always correctly wear safety belts when the vehicle is moving ⇒ fig. 5.**
- **Pregnant women, injured, or physically impaired persons must also use safety belts. Like all vehicle occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts. The best way to protect a fetus is to protect the mother throughout the entire pregnancy. ◀**

Number of seats

Your vehicle has a total of five seating positions: two in the front and three in the rear. Each seating position has a safety belt.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt. It is especially dangerous to place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.**
- **Never let more people ride in the vehicle than there are safety belts available.**
- **Be sure everyone riding in the vehicle is properly restrained with a separate safety belt or child restraint. ◀**

Safety belt warning light

The warning light will remind you and front seat passenger to fasten your safety belt properly before driving off.

Fig. 6 Safety belt warning light

Before driving off, always:

– Fasten your safety belt and make sure you are wearing it properly.

– Make sure that your passengers also buckle up and properly wear their safety belts.

– Protect your children with a child restraint system appropriate for the size and age of the children.

The warning light in the instrument cluster lights up when the ignition is switched on as a reminder to fasten the safety belts. In addition, you will hear a warning sound and see the following message displayed: **Please fasten seatbelt!** is displayed.

The warning light / display and the warning sound will go out/stop when the driver and front passenger correctly fastens the safety belt.

After the ignition is switched on, the warning tone will come on for about 6 seconds along with a warning light in the instrument cluster if the driver or front seat passenger has not fastened their safety belt. As soon as the driver and front seat passenger have fastened their safety belts, the warning tone and the warning light will stop.

If both the driver and front seat passenger have not buckled-up within about 24 seconds after the warning tone has stopped, the warning tone will sound again for about 6 seconds. The warning tone will sound repeatedly for about 6 seconds at 24 second intervals until both the driver and front passenger have buckled-up. The safety belt warning system is active for about 5 minutes and during this time the warning light in the instrument cluster will stay on.

Fasten your safety belt now and make sure that your passengers also properly put on their safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not pay attention to the warning lights which have come on, including the warning messages appearing in the display, this could lead to personal injury.

Note

If the safety belt extender is left attached to the safety belt buckle, the safety belt warning system will sense that the safety belt for that seat is being used and the warning tone will not sound even though the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used. ◀

Why safety belts?

Frontal collisions and the laws of physics

Frontal crashes subject people riding in vehicles to very strong forces.

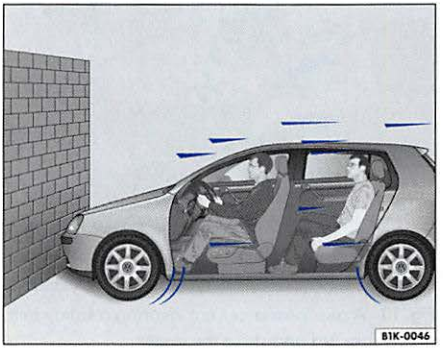


Fig. 7 Unbelted occupants in a vehicle heading for a wall.

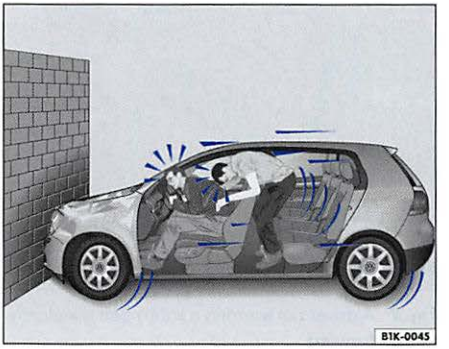


Fig. 8 The vehicle crashes into the wall.

The physical principles are simple. Both the vehicle and the passengers possess energy which varies with vehicle speed and body weight. Engineers call this energy "kinetic energy."

The higher the speed of the vehicle and the greater the vehicle's weight, the more energy has to be "absorbed" in the crash.

Vehicle speed is the most significant factor. If the speed doubles from 15 to 30 mph (25 to 50 km/h), the energy increases 4 times!

Because the passengers of the vehicle are not using safety belts ⇒ fig. 7, they will keep moving at the same speed the vehicle was moving just before the crash, until something stops them here, the wall ⇒ fig. 8.

The same principles apply to people sitting in a vehicle that is involved in a frontal collision. Even at city speeds of 20 to 30 mph (30 to 50 km/h), the forces acting on the body can reach one ton (2,000 lbs. or 1,000 kg) or more. At greater speeds, these forces are even higher.

People who do not use safety belts are also not attached to their vehicle. In a frontal collision they will also keep moving forward at the speed their vehicle was traveling just before the crash. Of course the laws of physics don't just apply to frontal collisions, they determine what happens in all kinds of accidents and collisions. ◀

What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts?

In crashes unbelted occupants cannot stop themselves from flying forward and being injured or killed. Always wear your safety belts.

Fig. 9 A driver not wearing a safety belt is violently thrown forward

Fig. 10 A rear passenger not wearing a safety belt will fly forward and strike the driver

Unbelted occupants are not able to resist the tremendous forces of impact by holding tight or bracing themselves. Without the benefit of safety restraint systems, the unrestrained occupant will slam violently into the steering wheel, instrument panel, windshield, or whatever else is in the way ⇒ fig. 9. This impact with the vehicle interior has all the energy they had just before the crash.

Never rely on airbags alone for protection. Even when they deploy, airbags provide only additional protection. Airbags are not supposed to deploy in all kinds of accidents. Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, all vehicle occupants, including the driver, must wear safety belts correctly in order to minimize the risk of severe injury or death in a crash, regardless of whether a seating position has an airbag or not.

Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and that your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. Unbelted occupants can also be thrown out of the vehicle where even more severe or fatal injuries can occur.

It is also important for the rear passengers to wear safety belts correctly. Unbelted passengers in the rear seats endanger not only themselves but also the driver and other passengers ⇒ fig. 10. In a frontal collision they will be thrown forward violently, where they can hit and injure the driver and/or front seat passenger. ◀

Safety belts protect

People think it's possible to use the hands to brace the body in a minor collision. It's simply not true!

Fig. 11 Driver is correctly restrained in a sudden braking maneuver.

Safety belts used properly can make a big difference. Safety belts help to keep passengers in their seats, gradually reduce energy levels applied to the body in a collision, and help prevent the uncontrolled movement that can cause serious injuries. In addition, safety belts reduce the danger of being thrown out of the vehicle.

Safety belts attach passengers to the car and give them the benefit of being slowed down more gently or "softly" through the "give" in the safety belts, crumple zones and other safety features engineered into today's vehicles. By "absorbing" the kinetic energy over a longer period of time, the forces on the body become more "tolerable" and less likely to cause injury.

Although these examples are based on a frontal collision, safety belts can also substantially reduce the risk of injury in other kinds of crashes. So, whether you're on a long trip or just going to the corner store, always buckle up and make sure others do, too. Accident statistics show that vehicle occupants properly wearing safety belts have a lower risk of being injured and a much better chance of surviving a collision. Properly using safety belts also greatly increases the ability of the supplemental airbags to do their job in a collision. For this reason, wearing a safety belt is legally required in most countries including much of the United States and Canada.

Although your Volkswagen is equipped with airbags, you still have to wear the safety belts provided. Front airbags, for example, are activated only in some frontal collisions. The front airbags are not activated in all frontal collisions, in side and rear collisions, in rollovers or in cases where there is not enough deceleration through impact to the front of the vehicle. The same goes for the other airbag systems in your Volkswagen. So, always wear your safety belt and make sure everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained! ◀

Important safety instructions about safety belts

Safety belts must always be correctly positioned across the strongest bones of your body.

– Always wear safety belts as illustrated and described in this Booklet.

– Make sure that your safety belts are always ready for use and are not damaged.

⚠ WARNING

Not wearing safety belts or wearing them improperly increases the risk of serious personal

⚠ WARNING (continued)

injury and death. Safety belts can work only when used correctly.

- **Always fasten your safety belts correctly before driving off and make sure all passengers are correctly restrained.**
- **For maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the body.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never strap more than one person, including small children, into any belt.
- Never place a safety belt over a child sitting on your lap.
- Always keep feet in the footwell in front of the seat while the vehicle is being driven.
- Never let any person ride with feet on the instrument panel or sticking out the window or on the seat.
- Never remove a safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.
- Never wear belts twisted.
- Never wear belts over rigid or breakable objects in or on your clothing, such as eye glasses, pens, keys, etc., as these may cause injury.
- Never allow safety belts to become damaged by being caught in door or seat hardware.
- Never wear the shoulder part of the belt under your arm or otherwise out of position.
- Several layers of heavy clothing may interfere with correct positioning of belts and reduce the overall effectiveness of the system.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always keep belt buckles free of anything that may prevent the buckle from latching securely.
- Never use comfort clips or devices that create slack in the shoulder belt. However, special clips may be required for the correct use of some child restraint systems.
- Torn or frayed safety belts can tear and damaged belt hardware can break in an accident. Inspect belts regularly. If webbing, bindings, buckles, or retractors are damaged, have belts replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- Safety belts that have been worn and loaded in an accident must be replaced with the correct replacement safety belt by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. Replacement may be necessary even if damage cannot be clearly seen. Anchorages that were loaded must also be inspected.
- Never remove, modify, disassemble, or try to repair the safety belts yourself.
- Always keep the belts clean. Dirty belts may not work correctly and can impair the function of the inertia reel ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Cleaning and Protection." ◀

Safety belts

Fastening safety belts

Safety first – everybody buckle up!

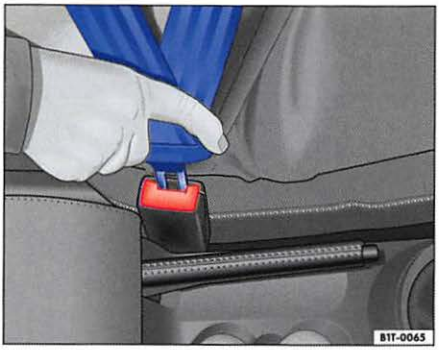


Fig. 12 Belt buckle and tongue for the driver's seat

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇒ page 21.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ page 4.

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in an upright position and securely latched in place before using the safety belt ⇒ ⚠.

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒ ⚠.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle for your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ page 19, fig. 12.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

Automatic safety belt retractors

Every safety belt is equipped with an automatic belt retractor on the shoulder belt.

The automatic safety belt retractor locks the belt when the belt is pulled out fast, during hard braking and in a collision. The belt may also lock when you drive up or down a steep hill or through a sharp curve. During normal driving the belt lets you move freely.

Belt pretensioner

The retractors for the driver, front passenger, and rear outboard seating positions are equipped with a belt pretensioner that helps to tighten the safety belt and remove slack when the pretensioner is activated. The function of the pretensioner is monitored by a warning light ⇒ page 40.

Switchable locking feature

Every safety belt except for the one on the driver seat is equipped with a switchable locking feature that must be used when the safety belt is used to install a child seat. Be sure to read the important information about this feature ⇒ page 63.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.**
- **Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used ⇒ booklet 3.1. If the backrest is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.**
- **Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.**
- **A passenger who is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.**
- **Always lock the safety belt retractor mechanism when you secure a child seat in the ve-** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

hicle ⇒ page 63, "Installing child restraint with a safety belt". ◀

Safety belt position

Correct belt position is the key to getting maximum protection from safety belts.

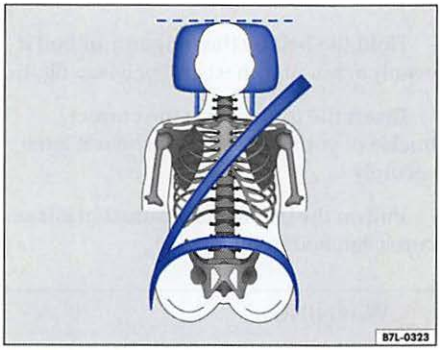


Fig. 13 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the front

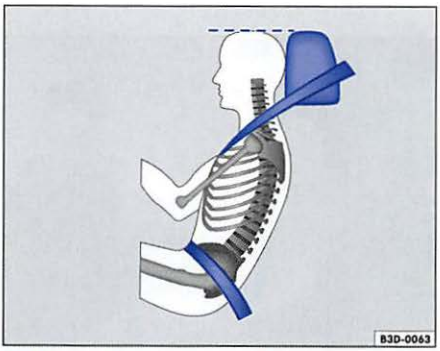


Fig. 14 Head restraint and safety belt position as seen from the side

Standard features on your vehicle help you adjust the position of the safety belt to match your body size.

- belt height adjustment for the front seats and the outer seating positions on the rear seats,
- front seat height adjustment.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **The shoulder belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned over the middle of the occupant's shoulder and never across the neck or throat.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The safety belt must lie flat and snug on the occupant's upper body ⇒ fig. 13.**
- **The lap belt portion of the safety belt must be positioned as low as possible across pelvis and never over the abdomen. Make sure the belt lies flat and snug ⇒ fig. 14. Pull on the belt to tighten if necessary.**
- **A loose-fitting safety belt can cause serious injuries by shifting its position on your body from the strong bones to more vulnerable, soft tissue and cause serious injury.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ page 17.** ◀

Pregnant women must also be correctly restrained

The best way to protect the fetus is to make sure that expectant mothers always wear safety belts correctly throughout the pregnancy.

Fig. 15 Safety belt position during pregnancy

To provide maximum protection, safety belts must always be positioned correctly on the wearer's body ⇒ page 21.

– Adjust the front seat and head restraint correctly ⇒ page 4.

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in upright position and securely latched in place before using the belt.

– Hold the belt by the tongue and pull it evenly across the chest and pelvis ⇒ fig. 15.

– Insert the tongue into the correct buckle of your seat until you hear it latch securely ⇒ ⚠.

– Pull on the belt to make sure that it is securely latched in the buckle.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **Expectant mothers must always wear the lap portion of the safety belt as low as possible across the pelvis and below the rounding of the abdomen.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ page 17, "Important safety instructions about safety belts".** ◀

Safety belt extender

A safety belt extender is available if a safety belt is too short for the driver or a passenger.

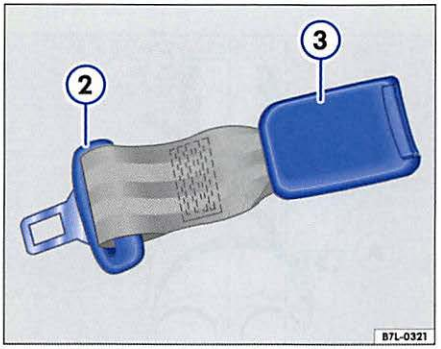


Fig. 16 Safety belt extender

If a safety belt is too short to correctly fit you or one of your passengers, even when the safety belt is pulled out all the way, you can use a safety belt extender ⇒ fig. 16. Never use the safety belt extender for any other purpose including the attachment of a child restraint.

The extender adds about 8 inches (200 mm) to the safety belt. When it is not required, always remove the extender and stow it safely. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance if an extender is required.

How to fasten the safety belt extender properly ⇒ page 24, "Fastening the safety belt extender".

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the safety belt extender increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **Using a safety belt extender when not needed can increase the risk of injury, especially in a collision. Only use when the safety belt is not long enough when it is worn low and snug, and in the correct seating position. Remove and stow safely when not needed.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender if you can fasten the safety belt without it.**
- **Never use more than one extender with a safety belt. The use of more than one extender can change the way the safety belt passes over the body and can cause serious injury.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave the safety belt extender attached to the vehicle safety belt latch when it is not needed and being used because the airbag control module will not receive the correct signal from the safety belt latch and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from working properly.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint.**
- **Never use a safety belt extender from another automobile manufacturer or automotive parts store on your Volkswagen.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender you obtained for your vehicle for any other vehicle, regardless of make, model or model year.**
- **A driver or passenger who is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured by striking the interior of the passenger compartment or by the safety belt itself which can be displaced from stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ page 17, "Important safety instructions about safety belts".**

Note

Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal the airbag control unit that the front passenger seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily and front airbag to deploy later in collisions that would normally trigger the front airbag earlier in the collision to help protect an unrestrained front seat occupant. A pretensioner that has deployed can not be repaired. The entire safety belt must be replaced.

Note

If the safety belt extender is left attached to the safety belt buckle, the safety belt warning system ▶

will sense that the safety belt for that seat is being used and the warning tone will not sound even though the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used. ◀

Fastening the safety belt extender

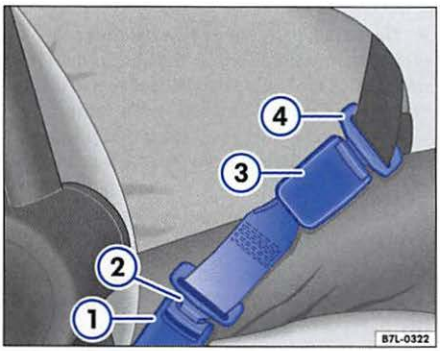


Fig. 17 Attached safety belt extender to the vehicle's safety belt

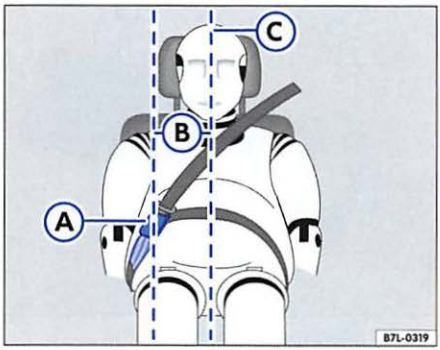


Fig. 18 Measurements

Before fastening the safety belt extender always adjust the front seat and head restraints correctly.

– Insert the metal tongue of the extender into the respective safety belt buckle ⇒ fig. 17 ①.

– Grasp the belt tongue of the safety belt ④ and pull the belt in a continuous slow motion across your chest and lap.

– Insert the safety belt tongue ④ into the buckle of the extender ③ and push down until it is securely locked with an audible click.

– Make sure the safety belt or the extender is not twisted.

– Pull belt to make sure it is properly latched.

① Safety belt buckle ⇒ fig. 17
② Tongue of extender ⇒ fig. 17
③ Buckle of extender ⇒ fig. 17
④ Vehicle safety belt ⇒ fig. 17

Ⓐ Front edge of buckle ⇒ fig. 18
Ⓑ Distance of buckle and body centerline, (less than 6 inches (15 cm) ⇒ fig. 18
Ⓒ Body centerline ⇒ fig. 18

⚠ WARNING

Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body. Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- **Never use the extender unless it is physically required in order to wear the vehicles safety belt.**
- **Never use the extender if the distance Ⓑ between the front edge of the extender buckle Ⓐ and the occupant's body centerline Ⓒ to be less than 6 inches (15 cm).**
- **Always make sure the safety belt tongue is inserted into the buckle for the seating position that belongs to the seat where the extender is being used.**
- **Attaching the safety belt to the buckle for another seat could reduce safety belt effectiveness and cause injury.** ◀

Unfastening safety belts

Unbuckle the safety belt with the red release button only after the vehicle has stopped.

Fig. 19 Releasing the tongue from the buckle

– Push the red release button on the buckle ⇒ fig. 19. The belt tongue will spring out of the buckle ⇒ ⚠.

– Let the belt wind up on the retractor as you guide the belt tongue to its stowed position.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> **Never unfasten safety belt while the vehicle is moving. Doing so will increase your risk of being injured or killed.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with manual safety belt height adjustment

Adjusting safety belt height

Use the safety belt height adjustment to change belt position on the shoulder.

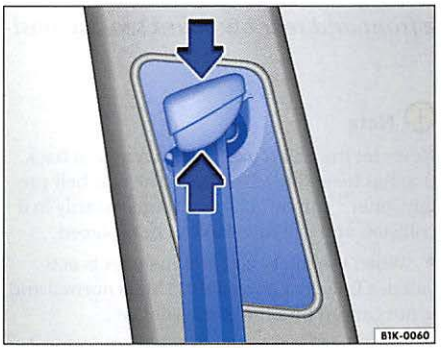


Fig. 20 Location of manual belt height adjuster

The safety belt height adjustment for the front seating positions can be used to adjust the height of the shoulder portion of the safety belt so that it is positioned correctly.

– Keep the strap guide squeezed in the direction indicated by the arrows ⇒ fig. 20.

– Push the strap guide upwards or downwards until you have correctly adjusted the safety belt to fit the body position ⇒ page 21.

– Release the strap guide.

– Now tug on the safety belt to make sure the strap guide is securely fastened.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ page 17.** ◀

Improperly worn safety belts

Incorrectly positioned safety belts can cause severe injuries.

Wearing safety belts improperly can cause serious injury or death. Safety belts can only work when they are correctly positioned on the body. Improper seating positions reduce the effectiveness of safety belts and will even increase the risk of injury and death by moving the safety belt to critical areas of the body. Improper seating positions also increase the risk of serious injury and death when an airbag deploys and strikes an occupant who is not in the correct seating position. A driver is responsible for the safety of all vehicle occupants and especially for children. Therefore:

– Never permit anyone to assume an incorrect sitting position in the vehicle while traveling ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly worn safety belts increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Always make sure that all vehicle occupants are correctly restrained and stay in a correct seating position whenever the vehicle is being used.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ page 17.** ◀

Safety belt pretensioners

How safety belt pretensioners work

In a frontal collision, the safety belts for the front and rear outboard seating positions are tightened up automatically.

The retractors for the driver and front passenger positions (rear outboard seating positions only in combination with optional side airbags for the outside rear seating positions) are equipped with belt pretensioners. Sensors activate the belt pretensioners in frontal collisions when deceleration is high enough. This tightens the belt and takes up belt slack. Taking up the slack helps to reduce forward occupant movement during a collision.

The belt pretensioner can only be activated once.

The belt pretensioner can be activated in a frontal, side or rear-end collision. It will not activate in a rollover in which the side airbags do not deploy.

Note

Never let the belt remain over a rear seat back that has been folded forward. The rear belt pretensioner[2)] can be activated unnecessarily in a collision and will then have to be replaced.

- When the safety belt pretensioner is activated, a fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle.
- Applicable safety requirements must be observed when the vehicle or components of the system are scrapped. A qualified dealership is familiar with these regulations and will be pleased to pass on the information to you.
- Be sure to observe all safety, environmental and other regulations if the vehicle or individual parts of the system, particularly the safety belt or airbag, are to be disposed. We recommend you ▶

2) Where applicable

have your authorized Volkswagen perform this service for you. ◀

Service and disposal of belt pretensioners

The belt pretensioners are parts of the safety belt and installed at the outboard seating positions on your vehicle. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing of belt pretensioners can damage the safety belt system and prevent that system from working correctly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing a belt pretensioner

⚠ WARNING (continued)

from activating when needed or activating unexpectedly:

- **The belt pretensioner system can be activated only once. If belt pretensioners have been activated, the system must be replaced.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the safety belt system.**
- **Safety belt systems including belt pretensioners cannot be repaired. Special procedures are required for removal, installation and disposal of this system.**
- **For any work on the safety belt system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop who has a Volkswagen approved repair manual, training and special equipment necessary.** ◀

Airbag system

Important things to know

Importance of wearing safety belts and sitting properly.

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. For airbags to do their job, occupants must always properly wear their safety belts and be in a proper seating position.

For your safety and the safety of your passengers, before driving always:

– Adjust the driver's seat and steering wheel properly ⇒ page 4.

– Adjust the front passenger seat properly ⇒ page 5.

– Wear your safety belts properly ⇒ page 13.

– Always properly use the correct child restraint to protect children ⇒ page 53.

In a collision airbags must inflate within the blink of an eye and with considerable force. The supplemental airbags can cause injuries if the driver or the front seat passenger are not seated properly. Therefore in order to help the airbag to do its job, it is important, both as a driver and as a passenger to sit properly at all times.

By keeping room between your body and the steering wheel and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate fully and completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions ⇒ page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions". For details on the operation of the seat adjustment controls ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment.", chapter "Front seats"

It's especially important that children be properly restrained ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

There is a lot that the driver and the passengers can and must do to help the individual safety features installed in your Volkswagen work together as a system.

Proper seating position is important so that the front airbag on the driver side can do its job. If you have a physical impairment or condition that prevents you from sitting properly on the driver seat with the safety belt properly fastened and reaching the pedals, special modifications to your vehicle may be necessary.

Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop, or call the Volkswagen Customer CARE Center at 1-800-822-8987.

When the airbag system deploys, a gas generator will fill the airbags, break open the padded covers, and inflate between the steering wheel and the driver and between the instrument panel and the front passenger. The airbags will deflate immediately after deployment so that the front occupants can see through the windshield again without interruption.

All of this takes place in the blink of an eye, so fast that many people don't even realize that the airbags have deployed. The airbags also inflate with a great deal of force and nothing should be in their way when they deploy. Front airbags in combination with properly worn safety belts slow down and limit the occupant's forward movement. Together they help to prevent the driver and front seat passenger from hitting parts of the inside the vehicle while reducing the forces acting on the occupant during the crash. In this way they help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and upper body in the crash. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body.

Both front airbags will not inflate in all frontal collisions. The triggering of the airbag system depends on the vehicle deceleration rate caused by the collision and registered by the electronic control unit. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the colli- ▶

sion. Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of whether an airbag should inflate or not.

It is not possible to define a range of vehicle speeds that will cover every possible kind and angle of impact that will always trigger the airbags, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the object that the car hits, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. The front airbags will also not inflate in side or rear collisions, or in rollovers.

Always remember: Airbags will deploy only once, and only in certain kinds of collisions. Your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those situations in which airbags are not supposed to deploy, or when they have already deployed; for example, when your vehicle strikes or is struck by another after the first collision.

This is just one of the reasons why an airbag is a supplementary restraint and is not a substitute for a safety belt. The airbag system works most effectively when used with the safety belts. Therefore, always properly wear your safety belts ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts".

⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to the steering wheel or instrument panel will decrease the effectiveness of the airbags and will increase the risk of personal injury in a collision.

- **Never sit closer than 10 inches (25 cm) to the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **If you cannot sit more than 10 inches (25 cm) from the steering wheel, investigate whether adaptive equipment may be available to help you reach the pedals and increase your seating distance from the steering wheel.**
- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates.**
- **To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly ⇒ page 19, "Safety belts".**
- **Always make certain that children age 12 or younger always ride in the rear seat. If children are not properly restrained, they may be severely injured or killed when an airbag inflates.**
- **Never let children ride unrestrained or improperly restrained in the vehicle.**
- **Adjust the front seats properly.**
- **Never ride with the backrest reclined.**
- **Always sit as far as possible from the steering wheel or the instrument panel ⇒ page 4.**
- **Always sit upright with your back against the backrest of your seat.**
- **Never place your feet on the instrument panel or on the seat. Always keep both feet on the floor in front of the seat to help prevent serious injuries to the legs and hips if the airbag inflates.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury when an airbag inflates.**

⚠ WARNING

Airbags that have deployed in a crash must be replaced.

- **Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.**
- **Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.** ◀

Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know

– Be sure to read the important information and head the WARNINGS for important details about children and Advanced Airbags ⇒ page 53.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially those 12 years and younger, always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a child in a rearward-facing seat.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to comply with the requirements of United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

As your vehicle has been certified, the Standard requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off ("suppressed") if an infant up to about one year of age restrained in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified has been installed on the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ page 55.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in the instrument panel tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if the total weight on the front passenger seat is that of a typical 1 year-old infant restrained in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in FMVSS 208,
- will go off if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat ⇒ page 40, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System"
- can stay on if the total weight on the seat is more than the typical 1 year-old infant restrained in one of the child restraints listed in FMVSS 208 but less than weight of a small adult.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off.

If the total weight on the front passenger seat is more than that of a typical 1 year-old infant restrained in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in FMVSS 208, the front airbag on the passenger side can deploy (the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on) even if the weight is less than the weight of a small adult. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the electronic control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory.

For example, the airbag may deploy if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old infant is on the front passenger seat restrained in one of the child seats listed in FMVSS 208 ⇒ page 55 or
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag is turned off, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** lights up in the instrument cluster and stays on.

The front airbag on the passenger side will deploy if the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on even if a small adult or teenager, or a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat is on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions".

As your vehicle has been certified, if the front passenger airbag deploys, the Federal Standard requires the airbag to meet the "low risk" deployment criteria for 3 and 6 year-old children (as defined in thes standard) to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in ▶

the electronic control unit ⇒ page 41, "PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light".

Always remember, a child seat or infant carrier installed on the front seat may be struck and knocked out of position by the rapidly inflating passenger's airbag in a frontal collision. The airbag could greatly reduce the effectiveness of the child restraint and even seriously injure the child during inflation.

For this reason, and because the back seat is the safest place for children when properly restrained according to their age and size we strongly recommend that children always sit in the back seat ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

⚠ WARNING

A infant in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat on the rear seat and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**
  - **Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
  - **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**
  - **Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.**
  - **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
  - **Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.**
  - **Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ page 40, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop immediately.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always carefully follow instructions from child restraint manufacturers when installing child restraints. ◀

Front airbag system the basics

Description of front airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

Fig. 21 Location of driver airbag: in steering wheel

Fig. 22 Location of front passenger's airbag: in the instrument panel

Your vehicle is equipped with a dual stage front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured. Your vehicle is also equipped with side airbags for the driver and front seat passenger (optional for the outboard rear seats). The safety belts for the front and rear outboard seats have "pretensioners" that help to take slack out of the belt system. The pretensioners are also activated by the electronic control unit for the airbag system.

The front and outboard rear seats safety belts also have load limiters to help reduce the forces applied to the body in a crash.

The airbag for the driver is in the steering wheel hub ⇒ fig. 21 and the airbag for the front passenger is in the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 22. The general location of the airbags is marked "AIRBAG."

There is a lot you need to know about the airbags in your vehicle. We urge you to read the detailed information about airbags, safety belts and child safety in this and the other booklets that make up the owner's literature. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ WARNING

Never rely on airbags alone for protection.

- **Even when they deploy, airbags provide only supplemental protection.**
- **Airbag work most effectively when used with properly worn safety belts.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Therefore, always wear your safety belts and make sure that everybody in your vehicle is properly restrained.

⚠ WARNING

A person on the front passenger seat, especially infants and small children, will receive serious injuries and can even be killed by being too close to the airbag when it inflates.

- Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front passenger airbag if an infant or a small child in one of the child restraints used to certify the Advanced Airbag System is on the front passenger seat nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment under these special conditions is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- The Advanced Airbag System can deploy in accordance with the "low risk" option for 3 and 3 year-old children under the U.S. Federal Standard if a child that is heavier than the combined weight of a typical one-year old infant restrained in one of the forward facing or rearward facing child seats with which your vehicle was certified is on the front passenger seat and the other conditions for airbag deployment are met.
- Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position.
- For their own safety, all children, especially 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back properly restrained for their age and size. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with advanced front airbag system

Advanced front airbag system

Your vehicle is equipped with a front Advanced Airbag System in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The front Advanced Airbag System supplements the safety belts to provide additional protection for the driver's and front passenger's heads and upper bodies in frontal crashes. The airbags inflate only in frontal impacts when the vehicle deceleration is high enough.

The front Advanced Airbag System for the front seat occupants is not a substitute for your safety belts. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you, if you are sitting upright, wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is why you and your passengers must always be properly restrained, not just because the law requires you to be.

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low risk" requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children (as defined in the standard) on the passenger side and very small adults on the driver side. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower decelerations as defined in the electronic control unit. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to help reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the front airbag that can occur in these collisions, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates.

For "low risk" deployment to occur, the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light must be off ⇒ page 40, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".

When a person is detected on the front passenger seat, weighing more than the total weight of an infant that is about 1 year old, restrained in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints (listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified), the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light may or may not come on. When the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is off, the front airbag on the passenger side may or may not deploy depending on the nature ▶

of the collision as registered by the electronic control unit.

For example, the airbag may deploy in the low risk mode if:

- a small child that is heavier than a typical 1 year-old infant in one of the child restraints with which the Advanced Airbag System was certified ⇒ page 55.
- a child who has outgrown child restraints is on the front passenger seat.
- a small adult or teenager is on the front passenger seat.
- a passenger who is not sitting upright with their back against a non-reclined backrest with their feet on the vehicle floor in front of the seat (⇒ page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions") is on the front passenger seat.

In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants 12 months old and younger who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard ⇒ page 55, "Child restraints and Advanced Airbags".

"Suppression" requires the front airbag on the passenger side to be turned off if the total weight registered on the front passenger seat is less than a infant up to about one year of age is restrained on the front passenger seat in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing infant restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ page 55

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when the electronic control unit detects a total weight on the front passenger seat that requires the front airbag to be turned off. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not come on and stay on, the front airbag on the passenger side has not been turned off by the control unit and can deploy if the control unit senses an impact that meets the conditions stored in its memory ⇒ page 40, "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System".

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with Advanced Airbags, the safest place for children is properly restrained on the back seat. Please be sure to read the important information in the sections that follow and be sure to heed all of the WARNINGS.

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒ page 28.**

⚠ WARNING

An infant or child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **Although the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle is designed to turn off the front airbag when a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, nobody can absolutely guarantee that deployment is impossible in all conceivable situations that may happen during the useful life of your vehicle.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child restraints in the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seri- ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

ously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System. If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:

- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
- Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
- Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
- Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
- Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
- Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
- Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

Advanced Airbag System components

The front passenger seat in your vehicle has a lot of very important parts of the Advanced Airbag System in it. These parts include the weight-sensing mat, sensors, wiring, brackets, and more. The function of the system in the front passenger seat is checked by the electronic control unit when the ignition is on. The control unit monitors the Advanced Airbag System and turns the airbag indicator light on when a malfunction in the system components is detected. The function of the airbag indicator light is described in greater detail below. Because the front passenger seat contains important parts of the Advanced Airbag System, you must take care to prevent it from being damaged. Damage to the seat may prevent the Advanced Airbag for the front passenger seat from doing its job in a crash.

The front Advanced Airbag System consists of the following:

- Crash sensors in the front of the vehicle that measure vehicle acceleration/deceleration to provide information to the Advanced Airbag System about the severity of the crash.
- An electronic control unit, with integrated crash sensors for front and side impacts. The control unit "decides" whether to fire just one or both stages of the front airbags based on the information received from the crash sensors. The control unit also "decides" whether the safety belt pretensioners should be activated.
- A dual-stage Advanced Airbag with gas generator for the driver inside the steering wheel hub.
- A dual-stage Advanced Airbag and gas generator inside the instrument panel for the front passenger.
- A weight-sensing mat under the upholstery padding of the front passenger seat cushion that measures the total weight on the seat. The information registered is sent continuously to the electronic control unit to regulate deployment of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side.
- An airbag monitoring system and indicator light in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 40. ▶

- The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light in the center of the instrument panel (⇒ page 41, fig. 25) that tells you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off.
- A sensor inside the safety belt latch for the front seat passenger to measure the tension on the safety belt. The tension on the safety belt and the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat help the control unit "decide" whether the front airbag for the front passenger seat should be turned off or not ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know".
- A sensor in the safety belt latch for the driver and for the front seat passenger that senses whether that safety belt is latched or not and transmits this information to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Damage to the front passenger seat can prevent the front airbag from working properly.

- **Improper repair or disassembly of the front passenger and driver seat will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.**
- **Repairs to the front passenger seat must be performed by qualified and properly trained workshop personnel.**
- **Never remove the front passenger or driver seat from the vehicle.**
- **Never remove the upholstery from the front passenger seat.**
- **Never disassemble or remove parts from the seat or disconnect wires from it.**
- **Never carry sharp objects in your pockets or place them on the seat. If the weight-sensing mat in the passenger seat is punctured it cannot work properly.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never carry things on your lap or carry objects on the passenger seat. Such items can increase the weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and send the wrong information to the airbag control unit.**
- **Never store items under the front passenger seat. Parts of the Advanced Airbag System under the passenger seat could be damaged, preventing them and the airbag system from working properly.**
- **Never place seat covers or replacement upholstery on the front seats that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen.**
- **Seat covers can prevent the Advanced Airbag System from recognizing child restraints or occupants on the front passenger seat and prevent the side airbag in the seat backrest from deploying properly.**
- **Never use cushions, pillows, blankets or similar items on the front passenger seat. The additional padding will prevent the weight-sensing mat in the seat from accurately registering the child restraint or person on the seat and prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly.**
- **If you must use a child restraint on the front passenger seat and the child restraint manufacturer's instructions require the use of a towel, foam cushion or something else to properly position the child restraint, make certain that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever the child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install child restraint in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.** ◀

How the Advanced Airbag System components work together

The front Advanced Airbag System and the side airbags supplement the protection offered by the front three point safety belts with pretensioners and load limiters and the adjustable head restraints to help reduce the risk of injury in a wide range of accident and crash situations. Be sure to read the important information about safety and heed the WARNINGS in this booklet.

Deployment of the Advanced Airbag System and the activation of the safety belt pretensioners depends on the deceleration measured by the crash sensors and registered by the electronic control unit. Crash severity depends on speed and deceleration as well as the mass and stiffness of the vehicle or object involved in the crash.

On the driver side

On the driver side, when the electronic control unit registers a low severity crash, the Advanced Airbag System will take the use of the driver safety belt into account. If the safety belt is being used, the airbag may not deploy. If the driver's safety belt is not being used, the first stage deploys, followed by the second stage at a later time in the crash sequence.

If the electronic control unit registers a crash of higher severity, both stages of the driver airbag will deploy almost at the same time, regardless of whether the safety belts are being used or not.

On the passenger side

On the passenger side, in low severity impacts as registered by the electronic control unit, the Advanced Airbag System will take the use of the passenger safety belt into account. If the safety belt is being used, the airbag may not deploy. If the safety belt is not being used, the first stage will deploy followed by the second stage at a later time in the crash sequence.

If the electronic control unit registers a crash of higher severity, both stages deploy almost at the same time, regardless of whether the safety belt is being used or not.

On the passenger side, regardless of safety belt use, the airbag will be turned off if the weight on the passenger seat is less than the amount programmed in the electronic control unit. The front airbag on the passenger side will also be turned off if the combined weight of an infant of about one year of age in one of the child seats that was used to certify the Advanced Airbag System under Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 has been registered on the seat. The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know".

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury when an airbag inflates, always wear safety belts properly.

- **If you are unrestrained, leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way, your risk of injury is much higher.**
- **You will also receive serious injuries and could even be killed if you are up against the airbag or too close to it when it inflates even with an Advanced Airbag ⇒ page 28.**

⚠ WARNING

An airbag that has deployed cannot provide protection and must be replaced.

- **Always turn off the ignition after an airbag has deployed.**
- **Always stay a safe distance from a deployed passenger airbag.**
- **Never try to repair or change the airbag system or cut a deployed airbag from the steering wheel or instrument panel.**
- **An airbag that has deployed cannot provide protection and must be replaced.**
- **Replace deployed airbags only with original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.** ◀

More important things to know about front airbags

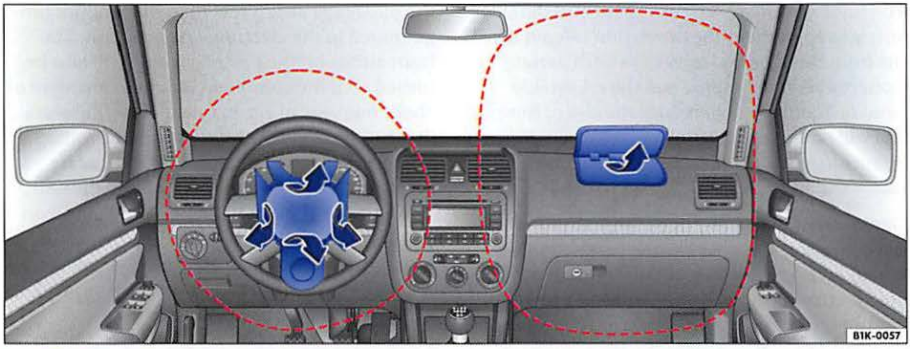


Fig. 23 Front airbag deployment zone

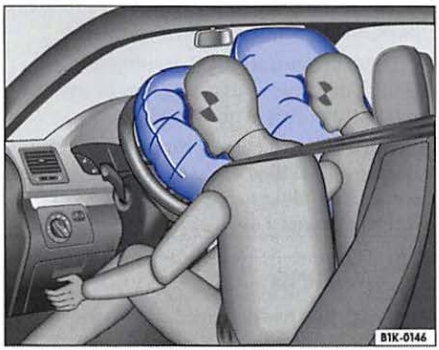


Fig. 24 Inflated front airbags

The areas outlined in red (dotted lines) ⇒ fig. 23 indicate the airbag deployment zone. Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked in red (dotted lines) ⇒ ⚠.

Safety belts are important to help keep front seat occupants in the proper seated position so that airbags can unfold properly and provide supplemental protection in a frontal collision.

The front airbags are designed to provide additional protection for the chest and face of the driver and the front seat passenger when:

- safety belts are worn properly,
- the seats have been positioned so that the occupant is properly seated as far as possible from the airbag,
- and the head restraints have been properly adjusted.

Because airbags inflate in the blink of an eye with great force, things you have on your lap or have placed on the seat could become dangerous projectiles, and be pushed into you if the airbag inflates.

When an airbag deploys, fine dust is released. This is normal and is not caused by a fire in the vehicle. This dust is made up mostly of a powder used to lubricate the airbags as they deploy. It could irritate skin.

It is important to remember that while the supplemental airbag system is designed to reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example swelling, bruising and minor abrasions, can also happen when airbags inflate. Airbags do not protect the arms or the lower parts of the body. Front airbags only supplement the three point safety belts in some frontal collisions in which the vehicle deceleration is high enough to deploy the airbags.

Front airbags will not deploy:

- if the ignition is switched off when a crash occurs,
- in side collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers,
- when the crash deceleration measured by the airbag system is less than the minimum threshold needed for airbag deployment as registered by the electronic control unit. ▶

The front passenger airbag will also not deploy:

- when the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- when the weight on the front passenger seat as sensed by the Advanced Airbag System indicates that the front airbag on the passenger side has to be turned off by the electronic control unit (the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on).

⚠ WARNING

Sitting in the wrong position can increase the risk of serious injury in crashes.

- **To reduce the risk of injury when the airbags inflate, the driver and passengers must always sit in an upright position, must not lean against or place any part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.**
- **Occupants who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye ⇒ page 28.**

⚠ WARNING

An infant or child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

Objects between you and the airbag will increase the risk of injury in a crash by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never hold things in your hands or on your lap when the vehicle is in use.**
- **Never transport items on or in the area of the front passenger seat. Objects could move into the area of the front airbags during braking or other sudden maneuver and become dangerous projectiles that can cause serious personal injury if the airbags inflate.**
- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests or between those areas ⇒ page 38, fig. 23 and yourself. These objects could cause injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.**
- **Never recline the front passenger's seat to transport objects. Items can also move into the area of the side airbag or the front airbag during braking or in a sudden maneuver. Objects near the airbags can become projectiles and cause injury, particularly when the seat is reclined.**
- **Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat that will cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to sense that the seat is occupied or is occupied by a person that is heavier than the occupant actually on the seat. The weight of the object could cause the passenger side airbag to be turned on when it should be off or could cause the airbag to function in a way that is different from the way it would have worked without the added weight.**
- **Always make sure that nothing is on the front passenger seat when the backrest is folded forward. Even light objects could be pushed into the seat cushion and cause the weight-sensing mat in the seat to register enough weight to turn the airbag on.**
- **Always make sure that the status signaled by the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light is correct for the way that the front passenger seat is being used.** ▶

⚠ WARNING

The fine dust created when airbags deploy can cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing conditions.

- To reduce the risk of breathing problems, those with asthma or other respiratory conditions should get fresh air right away by getting out of the vehicle or opening windows or doors.
- If you are in a collision in which airbags deploy, wash your hands and face with mild soap and water before eating.
- Be careful not to get the dust into your eyes, or into any cuts or scratches.
- If the residue should get into your eyes, flush them with water. ◀

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

Airbag monitoring indicator light

Two separate indicators monitor the function the Advanced Airbag System: the airbag monitoring indicator light and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF *light.*

The Advanced Airbag System (including the electronic control unit, sensor circuits and system wiring) is monitored continuously to make sure that it is functioning properly whenever the ignition is on. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag monitoring indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics) and the text AIRBAG/BELT TENSIONER appears in the instrument cluster.

The system must be inspected when the indicator light :

- does not come on when the ignition is switched on,
- does not go out a few seconds after you have switched on the ignition, or
- comes on while driving.

If an airbag system malfunction is detected, the indicator light will come on and stay on to catch the driver's attention and serve as a constant reminder to have the system inspected immediately. If a malfunction occurs that turns the front airbag on the passenger side off, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on.

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light

Fig. 25 Section from the instrument panel: PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is located in the center of the instrument panel ⇒ fig. 25.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will come on and stay on to tell you when the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side has been turned off by the electronic control unit.

If the bulb for the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light burns out, the airbag monitoring indicator light will come on and signal a malfunction in the Advanced Airbag system. Although the burned out bulb will not change the way the front airbag on the passenger side works, it will no longer be possible to use the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light to verify that the airbag on/off status is correct for the occupant on the front passenger seat. Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will blink for up to as long as 9 seconds when:

- the ignition is switched on and
- there is a change in the weight measured by the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat that determines whether the Advanced Airbag on the passenger side can deploy or will be turned off.

After the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stops blinking, always make sure that the airbag status (on or off) as shown by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light is proper for the size, age, and weight of the occupant on the front passenger seat. Always make sure that the safety belt for the front passenger seat is properly fastened.

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will show the correct status of the front Advanced Airbag on the passenger side a few seconds after the ignition has been switched on and:

- will stay on if the front passenger seat is not occupied,
- will stay on if the combined weight of an infant up to about one year of age in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified, is registered by the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat. For a listing of the child restraints that were used to certify your vehicle's compliance with the US Safety Standard ⇒ page 55.
- will go out if the front passenger seat is occupied by an adult as registered by the weight-sensing mat.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on if the ignition is on and

- a car bed has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a rearward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat, or
- a forward-facing child restraint has been installed on the front passenger seat,
- and if the weight registered on the front passenger seat is equal to or less than the combined weight of a typical 1 year-old infant restrained in one of the rearward-facing or forward-facing child restraints listed in Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208 with which the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle was certified.

If the front passenger seat is not occupied, the front passenger airbag will not deploy, and the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light will stay on. Never install a rearward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat, the safest place for a child in any kind of child restraint is at one of the seating positions on the rear seat ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know" and ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on when one of the conditions listed above is met, be sure to check the light regularly to make certain that the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light stays on continuously whenever the ignition is on. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light does not appear and not stay on all the time, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and

- reactivate the system by turning the ignition off and then turning it on again;
- remove and reinstall the child restraint. Make sure that the child restraint is properly installed and that the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been correctly routed around the child restraint as described in the child restraint manufacturer's instructions;
- make sure that the convertible locking feature on the safety belt for the front passenger seat has been activated and that the safety belt has been pulled tight. The belt must not be loose or have loops of slack so that the sensor below the safety belt latch on the seat can do its job ⇒ page 63.
- make sure that things that may increase the weight of the child and child seat are not being transported on the front passenger seat;
- make sure that the safety belt tension sensor is not blocked. Shake the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat back and forth,
- make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed.
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light still does not come on ...

If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light still does not come on and does not stay on continuously (when the ignition is switched on),

- take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions. Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop immediately.
- move the child to a rear seat position and make sure that the child is properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for its size and age.

The PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light should NOT come on

The **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light should NOT come on when the ignition is on and an adult is sitting in a proper seating position on the front passenger seat. If the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light comes on and stays on under these circumstances, make sure that:

- the adult on the front passenger seat is properly seated on the center of the seat cushion with his or her back up against the backrest and the backrest is not reclined ⇒ page 4, "Proper occupant seating positions",
- the adult is not taking weight off the seat by holding on to the passenger assist handle above the front passenger door or supporting their weight on the armrest or holding onto the assist handle on the instrument panel,
- the safety belt is being properly worn and that there is not a lot of slack in the safety belt webbing,
- accessory seat covers or cushions or other things that may cause an incorrect reading or impression on the weight-sensing mat under the upholstery of the seat have been removed from the front passenger seat,

⚠ WARNING

If the status of the Advanced Airbag system has been changed while the vehicle is moving, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light blinks for about 5 seconds to catch the driver's attention. In this case always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the steps described above. ◀

Important safety instructions on monitoring the Advanced Airbag System

⚠ WARNING

An airbag system that is not functioning properly cannot provide supplemental protection in a frontal crash.

- If the airbag indicator light comes on, it means that there may be something wrong with the Advanced Airbag System. It is possible that the airbag will inflate when it is not supposed to, or will not inflate when it should.
- Have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

If the front airbag inflates, a child without a child restraint, or a child in a forward-facing child restraint that has not been properly installed, or a child in any rearward-facing child seat will be seriously injured and can be killed.

- Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag System, make certain that all children, especially 12 years and younger, always ride on the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.
- Always install forward or rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System.
- If you must install a rearward- facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-sensing mat in the seat and register more a weight than is actually on the seat. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
  - Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
  - Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not go off when an adult is sitting on the front passenger seat after taking the steps described above, make sure the adult is properly seated and restrained at one of the rear seating positions.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop before transporting anyone on the front passenger seat.**

Tips

- If the weight-sensing mat in the front passenger seat detects an empty seat, the front airbag on the passenger side will be turned off, and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will stay on.
- If the optional safety belt extender is left in the buckle for the front safety belt, or the front passenger safety belt itself is buckled and the front passenger seat is not occupied, the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light will come on. ◀

Repair, care and disposal of the airbags

Parts of the airbag system are installed at many different places on your Volkswagen. Installing, removing, servicing or repairing a part in an area of the vehicle can damage a part of an airbag system and prevent that system from working properly in a collision.

There are some important things you have to know to make sure that the effectiveness of the system will not be impaired and that discarded components do not cause injury or pollute the environment.

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly:

- **Never cover, obstruct, or change the steering wheel horn pad or airbag cover or the instrument panel or modify them in any way.**
- **Never attach any objects such as cup holders or telephone mountings to the surfaces covering the airbag units.**
- **For cleaning the horn pad or instrument panel, use only a soft, dry cloth or one moistened with plain water. Solvents or cleaners could damage the airbag cover or change the stiffness or strength of the material so that the airbag cannot deploy and protect properly.**
- **Never repair, adjust, or change any parts of the airbag system.**
- **All work on the steering wheel, instrument panel, front seats or electrical system (in-**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

cluding the installation of audio equipment, cellular telephones and CB radios, etc.) must be performed by a qualified technician who has the training and special equipment necessary.

- **For any work on the airbag system, we strongly recommend that you see your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Never modify the front bumper or parts of the vehicle body.**
- **Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:**
  - **Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen.**
  - **Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.**
  - **Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **The airbag system can be activated only once. After an airbag has inflated, it must be replaced.**
- **Use only original equipment airbags approved by Volkswagen and installed by a trained technician who has the necessary tools and diagnostic equipment to properly** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

replace any airbag in your vehicle and assure system effectiveness in a crash.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never permit salvaged or recycled airbags to be installed in your vehicle.** ◀

Other things that can affect Advanced Airbag performance

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the Advanced Airbag System performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by VOLKSWAGEN, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers etc. can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the electronic control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

The Advanced Airbag System will not work the way it should if the optional safety belt extender is not removed from the safety belt latch when the seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used. Leaving the extender attached to the safety belt buckle when the front seat is occupied and the safety belt is not being used will signal the airbag control unit that the front seat is occupied and that the safety belt is being used. The electronic control unit for the airbag system will then receive incorrect information that will cause the safety belt pretensioner to deploy unnecessarily and the front airbag to deploy later in collisions that would normally trigger the front airbag earlier in the collision to help protect an unrestrained front seat occupant. A pretensioner that has deployed can not be repaired. The entire safety belt must be replaced. For that reason, always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely ⇒ page 23. In addition, the safety belt extender must never be used to secure child restraints to the front passenger seat.

The sensors in the safety belt buckle for the driver and front passenger seat tell the electronic control module if the safety belt is latched or not. If the safety belt is being used, the front airbag will deploy at a slightly higher rate of vehicle deceleration than if the safety belt is not being used. Therefore, in a particular collision, it is possible that an airbag will not deploy at a seating position where the safety belt is being used but will inflate at the position where the safety belt is not being used. It is important that nothing interfere with the safety belt buckles so that the sensors can send the correct information about safety belt use to the electronic control unit.

⚠ WARNING

Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change Advanced Airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.

- **Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle.**
- **Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.**

⚠ WARNING

Leaving the optional safety belt extender attached to the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat when the safety belt is not being used will prevent the Advanced Airbag System from functioning properly and can increase the risk of serious personal injury in a collision.

- **Always remove the safety belt extender when it is not needed and stow it safely when it is not being used with the safety belt.**
- **Never use the safety belt extender to secure a child restraint at any seating position.**

⚠ WARNING

Items stored between the safety belt buckle and the center console can cause the sensors ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

in the buckle to send the wrong information to the airbag control unit and prevent the Advanced Airbag system from working properly.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always make sure that nothing can interfere with the safety belt buckles and that they are not obstructed. ◀

Side airbags

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

Description of side airbags

The side airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained front seat occupants.

Fig. 26 Side airbag in driver seat

The side airbags are in the backrest padding in the front seats ⇒ fig. 26. Your vehicle may also be equipped with optional side airbags for the rear outside positions.The general location is identified by the word "AIRBAG" in the upper region of the backrests.

The side airbag system basically consists of:

- the electronic control module with integrated sensors, pressure sensors in the front doors and rear side impact sensors (only four doors vehicle),
- the two side airbags located in the sides of the front backrests airbags
- optional side airbags for the outboard rear seats (only four doors vehicle),
- the airbag warning light in the instrument cluster.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The side airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury to the driver's and front passenger's and the rear outboard[3] passenger's upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The airbag inflates only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the side airbags will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc.
⇒ page 48, "Important safety instructions for the side airbag system".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in a side collision so that the side airbags can provide protection when they inflate. Safety belts also help to keep rear seat passengers in position so that optional rear seat ▶

[3] Where applicable

side airbags[3)] can provide protection in a side collision in which the side airbag inflates.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts".

It is important to remember that while the supplemental side airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags. Remember too, side airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of accidents your safety belts are always there to offer protection.

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation. In some collisions, both front and side airbags may inflate. Remember too, that airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions – your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed.

The side airbag system will not inflate:

- if the ignition is switched off,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front airbags, Side Curtain Protection™ airbags and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the correct seating position ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts".**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. The side airbag system may not work properly even when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

How supplemental side airbags work

Side airbags for the front passengers and optional side airbags for the outboard rear seats inflate in the blink of an eye and can help reduce the risk of upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

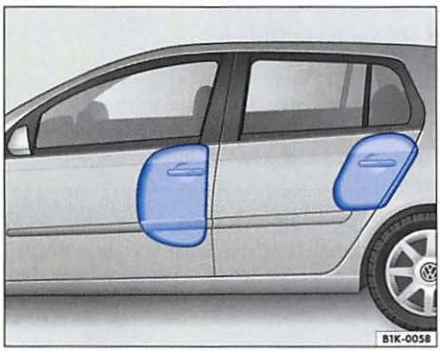


Fig. 27 Inflated side airbag on left side of vehicle

Supplemental side airbags inflate between the occupant and the door panel on the side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collision ⇒ fig. 27.

When the system is triggered, the airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through a seam on the side of the seatback identified by the "AIRBAG" label. It inflates between the side trim panel and the passenger. In order to help provide this additional protection, the side airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The supplemental side airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental side airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

Although they are not a soft pillow, they can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with side airbags

Important safety instructions for the side airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

The side airbags installed for the front seating positions and the rear outboard positions[4] have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.

⚠ WARNING

An inflating side airbag can cause serious or fatal injury. Improperly wearing safety belts

⚠ WARNING (continued)

and improper seating positions increases the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **To help reduce the risk of injury when the supplemental side airbag inflates,**
  - **Always sit in an upright position and do not lean against the area where the supplemental side airbag is located.**
  - **Never let a child or anyone else rest their head against the side trim panel in the area** ▶

[4] Where applicable

⚠ WARNING (continued)

where the supplemental side airbag inflates.

– Always make sure that safety belts are worn correctly,

– Never let anyone sitting in the front seat put their hand out of the window.

- Always make sure that the side airbag can inflate without interference:

– Never install seat covers or replacement upholstery over the front seatbacks that have not been specifically approved by Volkswagen.

– Never use additional seat cushions that cover the areas where the side airbags inflate.

– Damage to the original seat covers or to the seam in the area of the side airbag module must always be repaired immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

- Objects between you and the airbag can increase the risk of injury in a collision by interfering with the way the airbag unfolds or by being pushed into you as the airbag inflates.

– Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, or even large, bulky objects) on the doors, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the seat backrests.

– Accessories or other objects can become dangerous missiles and cause injury if the supplemental side airbag inflates.

– Never carry any objects or pets in the deployment space between them and the airbags or allow children or other passengers to travel in this position.

- Always use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may interfere with side airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

- Always prevent the side airbags from being damaged by heavy objects knocking against or hitting the sides of the seatbacks.

- The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

- Always have work involving the side airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.

- Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way. ◀

Side Curtain Protection™ airbags

Applies to vehicles: with side curtain protection airbags

Description of Side Curtain Protection™ airbags

The airbag system can provide supplemental protection to properly restrained occupants.

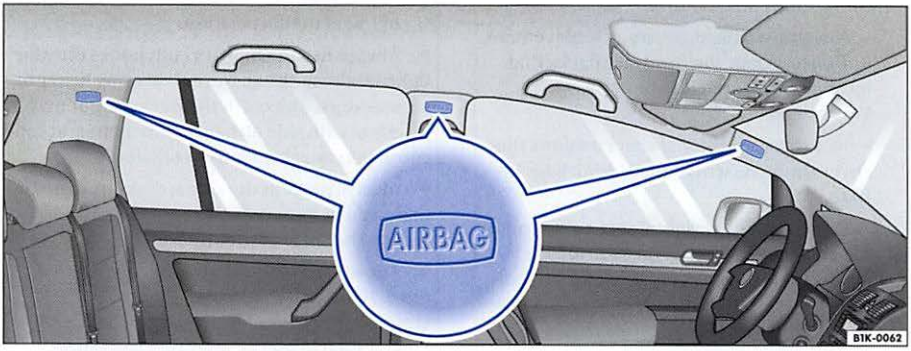


Fig. 28 The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags located above the windows on the sides.

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags are in the header area on both sides of the vehicle ⇒ fig. 28. The general location is identified by the word "AIRBAG".

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system airbag system supplements the safety belts and can help to reduce the risk of injury for occupants' heads and upper torso on the side of the vehicle that is struck in a side collision. The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag inflates only in side impacts and only when the vehicle acceleration registered by the control unit is high enough. If this rate is below the reference value programmed into the control unit, the Side Curtain Protection™ will not be triggered, even though the car may be badly damaged as a result of the collision. It is not possible to define an airbag triggering range that will cover every possible angle of impact, since the circumstances will vary considerably between one collision and another. Important factors include, for example, the nature (hard or soft) of the impacting object, the angle of impact, vehicle speed, etc. ⇒ page 51, "How Side Curtain Protection™ airbags work".

Aside from their normal safety function, safety belts work to help keep the driver or front passenger in position in the event of a collision so that the Side Curtain Protection™ airbags can provide protection.

The airbag system is not a substitute for your safety belt. Rather, it is part of the overall occupant restraint system in your vehicle. Always remember that the airbag system can only help to protect you if you are wearing your safety belt and wearing it properly. This is another reason why you should always wear your safety belts, not just because the law requires you to do so ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts".

Vehicle damage, repair costs or even the lack of vehicle damage is not necessarily an indication of proper airbag operation. It is important to remember that while the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system is designed to help reduce the likelihood of serious injuries, other injuries, for example, swelling, bruising, and minor abrasions can also be associated with these airbags. Remember too, these airbags will deploy only once and only in certain kinds of collisions your safety belts are always there to offer protection in those accidents in which airbags are not supposed to deploy or when they have already deployed. ▶

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system basically consists of:

- the electronic control module with integrated sensors, pressure sensors in the front doors and rear side impact sensors.
- the Side Curtain Protection™ airbags above the front and rear side windows.
- the airbag indicator light in the instrument panel.

The airbag system is monitored electronically to make certain that it is functioning properly at all times. Each time you turn on the ignition, the airbag system indicator light will come on for a few seconds (self diagnostics).

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system is not activated:

- if the ignition is switched off,
- in side collisions when the acceleration measured by the sensor is too low,
- in front-end collisions,
- in rear-end collisions,
- in rollovers.

In some types of accidents the front, Side Curtain Protection™ and side airbags may be triggered together.

⚠ WARNING

- **Safety belts and the airbag system will only provide protection when occupants are in the proper seating position ⇒ page 4.**
- **If the airbag indicator light comes on when the vehicle is being used, have the system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag may not work properly even when the vehicle acceleration in a side collision is high enough to activate the airbag. ◀**

Applies to vehicles: with side curtain protection airbags

How Side Curtain Protection™ airbags work

Side Curtain Protection™ airbags can work together with side airbags to help reduce the risk of head and upper torso injuries for occupants who are properly restrained.

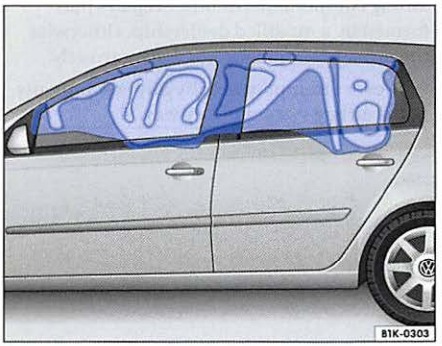


Fig. 29 Inflated Side Curtain Protection™ airbags on the left side

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags inflate between the occupant and the side window on that side of the vehicle that is struck in certain side collisions ⇒ fig. 29.

When the system is triggered, the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag is filled with propellant gas and breaks through the header above the front and rear side windows and center door pillar and deploys downwards. In order to help provide this additional protection, the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag must inflate within the blink of an eye at very high speed and with great force. The Side Curtain Protection™ airbag could injure you if your seating position is not proper or upright or if items are located in the area where the supplemental Side Curtain Protection™ airbag inflates. This applies especially to children ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

Although they are not a soft pillow, Side Curtain Protection™ can "cushion" the impact and in this way they can help to reduce the risk of injury to the head and the upper part of the body.

A fine dust may develop when the airbag deploys. This is quite normal and does not mean there is a fire in the vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with side curtain protection airbags

Important safety instructions on the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag system

Airbags are only supplemental restraints. Always properly wear safety belts and ride in a proper seating position.

There is a lot that you and your passengers must know and do to help the safety belts and airbags do their job to provide supplemental protection.

The Side Curtain Protection™ airbags installed for the front seating and outboard rear seating positions have been designed and certified to help reduce the risk of injury that can be caused by airbags when they inflate, particularly when the occupant sitting next to it is not seated properly.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly wearing safety belts and improper seating positions increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Never let occupants place any parts of their bodies in the area from which the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag inflates.**
- **Always make sure that the Side Curtain Protection™ airbag can inflate without interference.**
- **Use the built-in coat hooks only for lightweight clothing. Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets that may**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

interfere with airbag deployment and can cause personal injury in a collision.

- **Never use hangers to hang clothes on the hooks.**
- **Only use factory-installed sun shades or, in the case of shades installed after the vehicle leaves the factory, use only genuine Volkswagen sun shades ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications."**
- **Always sit in proper seating position and wear safety belts while traveling so that the Side Curtain Protection™ airbags can help provide protection.**
- **The airbag system can only be triggered once. If the airbag has been triggered, the system must be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Always have work involving the curtain airbag system, removal and installation of the airbag components, or other repairs performed by a qualified dealership. Otherwise the airbag system may not work correctly.**
- **Never attempt to modify any components of the airbag system in any way.** ◀

Child safety

Child Seats

Introduction

The rear seat is generally the safest place in a collision.

The physical principles of what happens when your vehicle is in an accident apply also to children ⇒ page 15, "Why safety belts?". But unlike adults and teenagers, their muscles and bones are not fully developed. In many respects children are at greater risk of serious injury in accidents than are adults.

Because children's bodies are not fully developed, they must use restraint systems especially designed for their size, weight, and body structure. Many countries and all states of the United States and provinces of Canada have laws requiring the use of approved child restraint systems for infants and small children.

In a frontal crash at a speed of 20-35 mph (30-56 km/h) the forces acting on a 13-pound (6 kg) infant will be more than 20 times the weight of the child. This means the weight of the child would suddenly be more than 260 pounds (120 kg). Under these conditions, only an appropriate child restraint properly used can reduce the risk of serious injury. Child restraints, like adult safety belts, must be used properly to be effective. Used improperly, they can increase the risk of serious injury in an accident.

Consult the child seat manufacturer's instructions to be sure the seat is right for your child's size ⇒ page 56, "Important safety instructions for using child seats". Please be sure to read and heed all of the important information and WARNINGS about child safety, Advanced Airbags, and the installation of child restraints in this booklet.

There is a lot you need to know about the Advanced Airbags in your vehicle and how they work when infants and children in child restraints are on the front passenger seat. Because of the large amount of important information, we cannot repeat it all here. We urge you to read the detailed information in this booklet about airbags and the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle and the very important information about transporting children on the front passenger seat. Please be sure to heed the WARNINGS they are extremely important for your safety and the safety of your passengers, especially infants and small children.

⚠ WARNING

- **Accident statistics have shown that children are generally safer in the rear seat area than in the front seating position. Always restrain any child age 12 and under in the rear.**
- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child could be injured by striking the interior or by being ejected from the vehicle during a sudden maneuver or impact. An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is also at greater risk of injury or death through contact with an inflating airbag.**
- **A suitable child restraint properly installed and used at one of the rear seating positions provides the highest degree of protection for infants and small children in most accident situations**

⚠ WARNING

Children on the front seat of any car even with Advanced Airbags can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates.

- **A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.

- Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If you have, in exceptional circumstances, decided to install a rearward-facing child seat on the front passenger seat and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on whenever the ignition is on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected immediately by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.

- If in exceptional circumstances you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger seat:
  - Always make sure that the forward-facing child seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or infant carrier.
  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always set the safety belt upper anchorage to the highest adjustment position.
  - Always move the passenger seat to the highest position in the up and down adjustment range and move it back to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front seat from being moved all the way back to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on. ◀

Advanced front airbag system and children

Your vehicle is equipped with a dual-stage front "Advanced Airbag System" in compliance with United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS) 208 as applicable at the time your vehicle was manufactured.

The Advanced Airbag system in your vehicle has been certified to meet the "low-risk" requirements for 3 and 6 year-old children (as defined in the standard) on the passenger side and small adults on the driver side. "Low risk" deployment occurs in those crashes that take place at lower declarations as defined in the electronic control unit. The low risk deployment criteria are intended to reduce the risk of injury through interaction with the airbag that can occur in these collisions, for example, by being too close to the steering wheel and instrument panel when the airbag inflates. In addition, the system has been certified to comply with the "suppression" requirements of the Safety Standard, to turn off the front airbag for infants up to 12 months who are restrained on the front passenger seat in child restraints that are listed in the Standard.

Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size. The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It can be a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat. ◀

Advanced Airbags and the weight-sensing mat in the front seat

The Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle detects the presence of an infant or child in a child restraint on the front passenger seat using the weight-sensing mat in the seat cushion and the sensor below the safety belt latch on the front passenger seat that measures the tension on the safety belt.

The weight-sensing mat measures total weight of the child and the child seat and a child blanket on the front passenger seat. The weight on the front passenger seat is related to the design of the child restraint and its "footprint," the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint as it sits on the seat. The weight of a child restraint and its "footprint" vary for different kinds of child restraints and for the different models of the same kind of child restraint offered by child restraint manufacturers.

The weight ranges for the individual types, makes and models of child restraints that the NHTSA has specified in the Safety Standard together with the weight ranges of typical infants and typical 1 year-old child have been stored in the control unit of the Advanced Airbag System. When a child restraint is being used on the front passenger seat with a typical 1 year-old infant, the Advanced Airbag System compares the weight measured by the weight-sensing mat with the information stored in the electronic control unit.

The electronic control unit also registers the tension on the front passenger safety belt. The tension on the safety belt for the front passenger seat will be different for an adult who is properly using the safety belt as compared to the tension on the belt when it is used to attach a child restraint to the seat. The sensor below the latch for the safety belt for the front seat passenger measures the tension on the belt. The input from this sensor is then used with the weight to "decide," whether there is a child restraint with a typical 1 year-old child on the front passenger seat and whether or not the airbag must be turned off. ◀

Child restraints and Advanced Airbags

Regardless of the child restraint that you use, make sure that it has been certified to meet United States Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards and has been certified by its manufacturer for use with an airbag. Always be sure that the child restraint is properly installed at one of the rear seating positions. If in exceptional circumstances you must use it on the front passenger seat, carefully read all of the information on child safety and Advanced Airbags and heed all of the applicable WARNINGS. Make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, that the front passenger airbag is turned off and that the airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light.

Many types and models of child restraints have been available over the years, new models are introduced regularly incorporating new and improved designs and older models are taken out of production. Child restraints are not standardized. Child restraints of the same type typically have different weights and sizes and different "footprints," the size and shape of the bottom of the child restraint that sits on the seat, when they are installed on a vehicle seat. These differences make it virtually impossible to certify compliance with the requirements for advanced airbags with each and every child restraint that has ever been sold in the past or will be sold over the course of the useful life of your vehicle.

For this reason, the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration has published a list of specific type, makes and models of child restraints that must be used to certify compliance of the Advanced Airbag System in your vehicle with the suppression requirements of Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 208. These child restraints are:

A. Car beds, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

- Cosco Dream Ride 02-719 ▶

B. Rear facing child restraint systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

(When the restraint system comes equipped with a removable base, compliance has to be certified with or without the base).

- Britax Handle with Care 191
- Century Assura 4553
- Century Smart Fit 4543
- Cosco Arriva 02727
- Evenflo Discovery Adjust Right 212
- Evenflo First Choice 204
- Graco Infant 8457

C. Forward-facing convertible child restraint systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

- Britax Roundabout 161
- Britax Expressway ISOFIX
- Century Encore 4612
- Century STE 1000 4416
- Cosco Olympian 02803
- Cosco Touriva 02519
- Evenflo Horizon V 425
- Evenflo Medallion 254
- Safety 1st Comfort Ride 22-400

D. Forward-facing toddler/belt positioning booster systems, manufactured on or after September 1, 2004:

- Britax Roadster 9004
- Century Next Step 4920
- Cosco High Back Booster 02-442
- Evenflo Right Fit 245

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.**
- **Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer immediately.** ◀

Important safety instructions for using child seats

Correct use of child seats substantially reduces the risk of injury in an accident!

Fig. 30 Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.

As the driver, you are responsible for the safety of everybody in the vehicle, especially children:

– All children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

– Always use the right child seat for each child and always use it properly ⇒ page 53.

– Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions on how to route the safety belt properly through the child seat.

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child seat from moving ⇒ page 63. ▶

– Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about one inch (2.5 cm).

If you must install a child restrained on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances, be sure to read and heed the important information and WARNIGNS in the section of this booklet ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know" as well as the additional information under ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

There are also additional adjustments that must be made in order to be able to properly install a child restrained on the front seat:

- Set the safety belt upper anchorage for the front passenger seat to the highest adjustment position if the available safety belt length is sufficient to properly install the child restraint ⇒ ⚠.
- Move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the seat's up and down adjustment range.
- Move the front passenger seat to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint ⇒ ⚠.
- If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death.

- **All vehicle occupants and especially children must always be restrained properly whenever riding in a vehicle.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child can be injured or killed by being thrown against the inside of the vehicle or by being ejected from it during a sudden maneuver or impact.**
  - **An unrestrained or improperly restrained child is at much greater risk of injury or death by being struck by an inflating airbag.**
- **Commercially available child seats are required to comply with U.S. Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard (FMVSS 213).**
  - **When buying a child restraint, select one that fits your child and the vehicle.**
  - **Only use child restraint systems that fully contact the flat portion of the seat cushion. The child restraint must not tip or lean to either side. Volkswagen does not recommend using child seats that rest on legs or tube-like frames. They do not provide adequate contact with the seat.**
  - **Always heed all legal requirements pertaining to the installation and use of child seats and carefully follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the seat you are using.**
- **Never allow children under 4 ft 9 in (57 inches / 1.45 meters) to wear a normal safety belt. They must always be restrained by a proper child restraint system. Otherwise, they could sustain injuries to the abdomen and neck areas during sudden braking maneuvers or accidents.**
- **Never let more than one child occupy a child seat.**
- **Never let babies or older children ride in a vehicle while sitting on the lap of another passenger.**
  - **Holding a child in your arms is never a substitute for a child restraint system.**
  - **The strongest person could not hold the child with the forces that exist in an accident. The child will strike the interior of the vehicle and can also be struck by the passenger.**
  - **The child and the passenger can also injure each another in an accident.**
- **Never install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

killed when the passenger airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.
- Always install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.
- Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat can interfere with the airbag when it inflates and cause serious injury to the child. Always install forward-facing child seats on the rear seat.
- If exceptional circumstances require the use of a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat, the child's safety and well-being require that the following special precautions be taken:
  - Make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.
  - Always move the front passenger seat into the rearmost position of the passenger seat's fore and aft adjustment range, and as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the child restraint.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Always make sure that the backrest is in the upright position.
- Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.
- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒ page 28, "Airbag system" and ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

⚠ WARNING

To reduce the risk of serious injury, make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on whenever a child restraint is installed on the front passenger seat and the ignition is switched on.

- Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on.
- Have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop immediately. ◀

Infant seats

Babies and infants up to at least one year old that weigh at least 20 - 22 lbs. (9 - 10 kg) must sit in rearward-facing child restraints that support the back, neck and head in a collision.

Fig. 31 Rearward-facing infant seat properly installed on the rear seat

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child seat from moving ⇒ page 63.

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

Infants up to about one year (up to 22 lbs. or 10 kg) are best protected in special infant carriers and child seats designed for their age group. Many experts believe that infants and small children should ride only in special restraints in which the child faces the back of the vehicle. These infant seats support the baby's back, neck and head in a collision. These child seats can be used safely only on the rear seat of your Volkswagen ⇒ fig. 31.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- **Never install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat – even with an Advanced Airbag System. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the inflating airbag hits the child seat or infant carrier with great force and smashes the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**
- **Never install a rearward-facing child restraint in the forward-facing direction. These restraints are designed for the special needs of infants and very small children and cannot protect them properly if the seat is forward-facing.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒ page 28, "Airbag system" and ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".** ◀

Convertible child seats

Properly used convertible child seats can help protect toddlers and children over age 1 and up to about age 4 who weigh between at least 20 and up to approximately 40 lbs. (9 and 18 kg) in a crash.

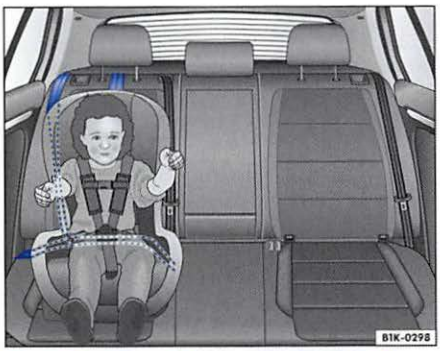


Fig. 32 Smaller child in a properly installed forward-facing LATCH child restraint

– When using the vehicle safety belt to install a child seat, you must first activate the switchable locking feature on the safety belt to prevent the child seat from moving ⇒ page 63.

– Push the child seat down with your full weight to get the safety belt really tight so that the seat cannot move forward or sideways more than about one inch (2.5 cm).

– Fasten the safety belt that is part of the child restraint system securely and pull it tight so that you can only slip one finger underneath the shoulder belt portion at the child's chest.

– Attach the tether strap (⇒ page 69) to the tether anchorage for the seating position where the child restraint is being installed ⇒ page 68.

– If a strap or tether is being used to tie the child seat to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.

A toddler or child is usually too large for an infant restraint, if it is more than one year old and weighs more than 22 lbs. (10 kg).

Toddlers and children between one and about four years old and weigh between 22 lbs. (10 kg) and 40 lbs. (18 kg) must always be properly restrained in a child seat certified for their size and weight ⇒ fig. 32.

The airbag on the passenger side makes the front seat a potentially dangerous place for a child to ride. The front seat is not the safest place for a child in a forward-facing child seat. It is a very dangerous place for an infant or a larger child in a rearward-facing seat.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a child seat, using the wrong child seat or improperly installing a child restraint increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation.

- **Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates – even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child seats on the rear seat.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒ page 28, "Airbag system" and ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:
  - Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.
  - Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.
  - Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.
  - Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.
  - Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.
  - Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.
- Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.
- If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

Booster seats and safety belts

Properly used booster seats can help protect children who weigh more than 40 lbs. (18 kg) who are 4 to at least 8 years old and are less than 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1,45 meters) tall in a collision.

Fig. 33 Child properly restrained in a booster seat on the rear seat

The vehicle's safety belts alone will not fit most children until they are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1,45 meters) tall. Booster seats raise these children up so that the safety belt will pass properly over the strong parts of their bodies and the safety belt can help protect them in a collision.

– Do not use the switchable locking feature when using the vehicles safety belt to restrain a child on a booster seat.

– Always position the shoulder portion of the safety belt midway over the child's shoulder. If you must transport an older child in a booster seat on the front passenger seat, you can use the safety belt height adjustment to help adjust the shoulder portion properly.

– Always make sure that the shoulder portion never rests against or across the child's neck.

– Always make sure that the child can wear the lap belt portion low across the thighs or pelvis and never over the stomach or abdomen.

Children up to at least 8 years old (over 40 lbs. or 18 kg) are best protected in child safety seats designed for their age and weight ⇒ page 62, fig. 33. Experts say that the skeletal structure, particularly the pelvis, of these children is not fully developed, and they should not use the vehicle safety belts without a suitable child restraint.

Children who are at least 4 ft. 9 in. (57 inches / 1,45 meters) tall can generally use the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. Never use the lap belt portion of the vehicle's safety belt alone to restrain any child, regardless of how big the child is. Always remember that children do not have the pronounced pelvic structure required for the proper function of lap belt portion of the vehicle's three point lap and shoulder belts. The child's safety absolutely requires that a lap belt portion of the safety belt be fastened snugly and as low as possible around the pelvis. Never let the lap belt portion of the safety belt pass over the child's stomach or abdomen.

It is usually best to put these children in appropriate booster seats. Be sure the booster seat meets all applicable safety standards.

Booster seats raise the seating position of the child and reposition both the lap and shoulder parts of the safety belt so that they pass across the child's body in the right places. The routing of the belt over the child's body is very important for the child's protection, whether or not a booster seat is used. Children age 12 and under should always ride in the rear seat.

In a collision, airbags must inflate within a blink of an eye and with considerable force. In order to do its job, the airbag needs room to inflate so that it will be there to protect the occupant as the occupant moves forward into the airbag.

A vehicle occupant who is out of position and too close to the airbag gets in the way of an inflating airbag. When an occupant is too close, he or she will be struck violently and will receive serious or possibly even fatal injury. ▶

In order for the airbag to offer protection, it is important that all vehicle occupants, especially any children, who must be in the front seat because of exceptional circumstances, be properly restrained and as far away from the airbag as possible. By keeping room between the child's body and the front of the passenger compartment, the airbag can inflate completely and provide supplemental protection in certain frontal collisions.

⚠ WARNING

Not using a booster seat, using the booster seat improperly, incorrectly installing a booster seat or using the vehicle safety belt improperly increases the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision or other emergency situation. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- **Always make sure to position the shoulder portion of the three-point belt over the middle of child's shoulder.**
- **Never let the shoulder portion of the belt rest against or across the neck, face, chin, or throat of the child.**
- **Always make sure the lap belt portion of the three-point belt is worn snug and passes as low as possible across the child's pelvis. Never let the belt pass over the soft abdomen.**
- **Failure to properly route safety belts over a child's body will cause severe injuries in an accident or other emergency situation ⇒ page 13.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Children on the front seat of any car, even with Advanced Airbags, can be seriously injured or even killed when an airbag inflates. A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates.**
- **Never let a child stand or kneel on any seat, for example the front seat.**
- **Never let a child ride in the cargo area of your vehicle.**
- **Always remember that a child leaning forward, sitting sideways or out of position in any way during a collision can be struck by a deploying airbag. This will result in serious personal injury or death.**
- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light must come on and stay on, whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, perform the checks described ⇒ page 40.**
- **Take the child restraint off the front passenger seat and install it properly at one of the rear seat positions if the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not stay on whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts", ⇒ page 28, "Airbag system" and ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".** ◀

Installing child restraint with a safety belt

Important things to know

Safety belts for the rear seats and the front passenger seat can be locked with the switchable locking feature to properly secure child seats.

The retractors for the rear seat safety belts and the front passenger safety belt have a switchable locking feature for child restraints in addition to the emergency locking feature.

If you need to install a child seat at one of these seating positions, you must first route the safety belt as directed by the manufacturer of the child seat that you are using and then activate the convertible locking feature. ▶

Whenever a child restraint is installed with a safety belt, the safety belt must be locked so that belt webbing cannot unreel. The switchable locking feature lets you lock the belt so that a child restraint can be properly installed and, for example, so that it can't tip to the side when the vehicle goes around a corner.

Always remember: Even though your vehicle is equipped with an Advanced Airbag system, all children, especially those 12 years and younger, should always ride in the back seat properly restrained for their age and size.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- **Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.**
- **Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.**
- **Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used to secure a child restraint ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Rear seat."**
- **If the backrest is not securely latched, the child and the child restraint will be thrown forward together with the backrest and will strike parts of the vehicle interior. The child can be seriously injured or killed.**
- **Never install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the front passenger seat. A child will be seriously injured and can be killed when the passenger airbag inflates.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always install rearward-facing child seats or infant carriers on the rear seat.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Forward-facing child seats or infant carriers installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious injury to the child.**
- **It is safer to install a forward-facing child seat on the rear seat.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 53. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know".**

⚠ WARNING

Rearward-facing child restraints:

- **A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates even with an Advanced Airbag System.**
- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **Always be especially careful if you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.**
- **A tight tether strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed child restraint can interfere with the airbag as it deploys and seriously injure or even kill the child – even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **If, in exceptional circumstances, you must install a forward-facing child restraint on the front passenger's seat:**
  - **Forward-facing child seats installed on the front passenger's seat may interfere with the deployment of the airbag and cause serious personal injury to the child.**
  - **Always make sure the forward-facing seat has been designed and certified by its manufacturer for use on a front seat with a passenger front and side airbag.**
  - **Always carefully follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the child seat or carrier.**
  - **Never put the forward-facing child restraint up against or very near the instrument panel.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - **Always move the passenger seat into its rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint. The backrest must be adjusted to an upright position.**
  - **Always make sure that nothing prevents the front passenger's seat from being moved to the rearmost position in its fore and aft adjustment range.**
  - **Never place additional items on the seat that can increase the total weight registered by the weight-sensing mat and can cause injury in a crash.**
- **Make sure that the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light comes on and stays on all the time whenever the ignition is switched on.**
- **If the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the forward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.** ◀

Activating the switchable locking feature

Use the switchable locking feature to properly secure a child restraint.

Always carefully follow the child seat manufacturer's instructions when installing a child restraint in your vehicle. Before attempting to install a child restraint on the front passenger seat, be sure to follow the special instructions and heed the WARNINGS below. To activate the switchable locking feature:

– Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat ⇒ ⚠.

– Set the safety belt upper anchorage for the front passenger seat to the highest adjustment position if the available safety belt length is sufficient to properly install the child restraining ⇒ ⚠.

– Move the front passenger seat to the highest position in the seat's up and down adjustment range.

– Move the front passenger seat to the rearmost position in the seat's fore and aft adjustment range, as far away from the airbag as possible before installing the forward-facing child restraint.

– Place the child restraint on a seat, preferably on the rear seat ⇒ ⚠.

– Route the safety belt around or through the child restraint using the proper path for the safety belt as specified by the child restraint manufacturer.

– Insert the belt tongue into the buckle for that seating position. ▶

– Make sure that the red release button is facing away from the child restraint so that it can be unbuckled quickly.

– Remove all slack from the lap belt portion of the safety belt and hold it tightly against the child restraint.

– Push the child restraint down with your full weight to make sure that the child restraint will be properly installed with the safety belt really tight.

– Slowly pull the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt **all the way out** of the retractor.

– While keeping your weight on the child restraint, guide the shoulder belt portion of the safety belt back into the retractor until the belt lies flat and is tightened against the child restraint.

– You should hear a "clicking" noise as the belt winds back into the inertia reel of the safety belt retractor. Test the switchable locking feature by pulling on the belt. You should no longer be able to pull the belt out of the retractor. The switchable locking feature is now active.

– Pull on the belt to make sure the safety belt is properly fastened and tight.

– Check the child seat for proper installation by pulling on the child restraint at the place where it goes into the child restraint. The child seat should not move forward or sideways by more than about one inch (2.5 cm).

– After checking to make sure that the child restraint is properly installed make certain that the child restraint is correctly recognized by the weight-sensing mat inside the front passenger seat, so that the front passenger airbag status is always correctly signaled by the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light. Please be sure to read the additional important information and heed the WARNINGS about the Advanced Airbag System and the function of the **PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF** light in this booklet.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong child restraint or an improperly installed child restraint can cause serious personal injury or death in an accident.

- **Always make sure that the safety belt retractor is locked when installing a child seat. An unlocked safety belt retractor cannot hold the child seat in place during normal driving or in a crash.**
- **Always buckle the child seat firmly in place even if a child is not sitting in it. A loose child seat can fly around during a sudden stop or in a collision.**
- **Always make sure the seat backrest to which the child restraint is installed is in an upright position and securely latched into place and cannot fold forward. Otherwise, the seat back with the child seat attached to it could fly forward in the event of a collision or other emergency situation.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 53. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 30, "Child restraints on the front seat some important things to know".◀**

Deactivating the switchable locking feature

The switchable locking feature for child restraints will be deactivated automatically when the belt is wound all the way back into the retractor.

– Press the red button on the safety belt buckle. The belt tongue will pop out of the buckle ⇒ ⚠.

– Guide the safety belt back by hand so that it rolls easily onto the retractor and the trim around the retractor will not be damaged.

Always let the safety belt retract completely into its stowed position. The safety belt can now be used as an ordinary safety belt without the switchable locking feature for child restraints.

If the switchable locking feature should be activated inadvertently, the safety belt must be unfastened and guided completely back into its stowed position to deactivate this feature. If the switchable locking feature is not deactivated, the safety belt will gradually become tighter and uncomfortable to wear.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly installed child seats increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in a collision.

- **Never unfasten the safety belt to deactivate the switchable locking feature for child restraints while the vehicle is moving. You would not be restrained and could be seriously injured in an accident.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 53. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ page 30.** ◀

Additional Information

Child Restraint Systems (CRS) information

To provide a simpler and more practicable way to attach the Child Restraint Systems (CRS) on the vehicle seat, U.S.Â Federal regulations require lower anchorages in vehicles and devices on new CRSs to attach to the vehicle anchorages.

CRS manufacturers offer two kinds of lower anchorages on their child seats

They could come with:

- hook-on or push-on connectors attached to adjustable straps, or
- rigid latches on bars that extend out the back of the CRS and are released with release buttons at the bottom of the CRS.

In addition to the LATCH[5] lower anchorages, both of these child restraint systems use tether straps to help keep the CRS firmly in place. ◀

Tether anchors

Volkswagen vehicles have tether anchors as standard equipment.

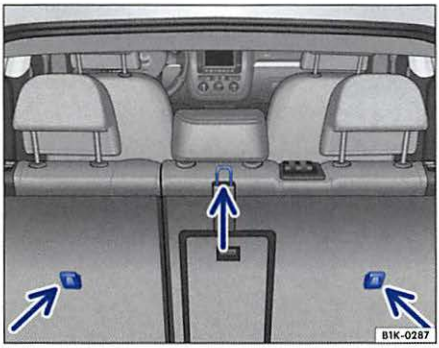


Fig. 34 Tether anchors for the rear seating positions on the backrest

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury and death in a crash.

- **Improper use of child restraint anchors (tether anchors) ⇒ fig. 34 -arrows- can lead to injury in a collision. The anchors are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never mount two child restraint systems on one LATCH lower anchor point.**
- **Never attach two child restraint systems to one tether strap or tether anchorage.**
- **Always follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the child restraint you intend to install in your Volkswagen.**
- **Never use child restraint tether anchorages to secure safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.**
- **Never attach a tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether anchors.**
- **If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.**
- **The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.** ◀

[5] L ower A nchor and T ether for Ch ildren

Tether strap

A tether is a straight or V-shaped strap that attaches the top part of a CRS to special anchorage points in the vehicle.

The purpose of the tether is to reduce the forward movement of the CRS in a crash, in order to help reduce the risk of head injury that could be caused by striking the vehicle interior.

Forward facing CRSs manufactured after September 1, 1999, are required by U.S. federal regulations to comply with child head movement performance requirements. These new performance requirements make a tether necessary on most new child seats.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in a collision.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never attach a child seat tether strap to a tie-down hook in the luggage compartment.**
- **Never secure or attach any luggage or other items to the LATCH lower anchorages or to the tether.**
- **If a tether or other strap is used to attach a child restraint to the front passenger seat, make sure that it is not so tight, that it causes the weight-sensing mat to measure more weight than is actually on the seat.**
- **The heavier weight registered can make the system work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.** ◀

Using tethers on rearward-facing CRSs

Currently, few rearward-facing CRSs come with a tether. Please read and heed the CRS manufacturer's instructions carefully to determine how to properly install the tether.

⚠ WARNING

A child in a rearward-facing child seat installed on the front passenger seat will be seriously injured and can be killed if the front airbag inflates even with an Advanced Airbag System.

- **The inflating airbag will hit the child seat or infant carrier with great force and will smash the child seat and child against the backrest, center armrest, door or roof.**
- **A tight tether or other strap on a rearward-facing child restraint attached to the front passenger seat can put too much pressure on the**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

weight-mat in the seat and register a heavier weight in the Advanced Airbag System. The heavier weight registered can make the Advanced Airbag System work as though an adult were on the seat and deploy the Advanced Airbag when it must be suppressed causing serious or even fatal injury to the child.

- **If you must install a rearward facing child seat on the front passenger seat because of exceptional circumstances and the PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light does not come on and stay on, immediately install the rearward-facing child seat in a rear seating position and have the airbag system inspected by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.** ◀

Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage

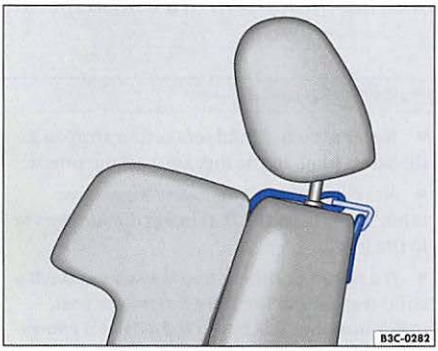


Fig. 35 Illustration of principle: Properly mounted tether strap

Installing the tether strap

– Release or deploy the tether strap on the child restraint according to the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

– Locate the tether anchor on top of the hat shelf.

– Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

– Pull on the tether strap hook so that the spring catch of the hook is engaged.

– Tighten the tether strap firmly following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions

Releasing the tether strap

– Loosen the tension following the child restraint manufacturer's instructions.

– Depress the spring catch on the hook and release it from the anchorage.

Adjusting head restraints ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage".

Note

If you leave the child restraint with the tether strap firmly installed for several days, this could leave a mark on the upholstery on the seat cushion and backrest in the area where the tether strap was installed. The upholstery would also be permanently stretched around the tether strap. This applies especially to leather seats. ◀

Lower anchorages

Description

The LATCH lower anchorages for the rear outboard seating positions are welded into the vehicle at the factory.

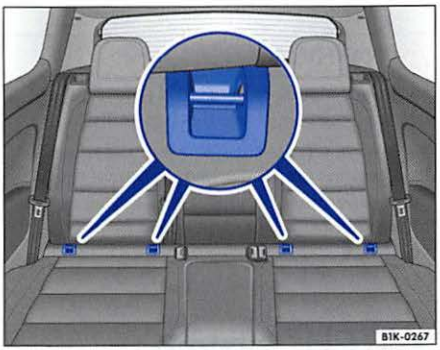


Fig. 36 Illustration of principle: Location of lower anchorages

The lower anchorage attachment points are located between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇒ fig. 36.

Lower anchorages secure the CRS in the seat without using the vehicle's safety belts. Anchorages provide a secure and easy-to-use attachment and minimize the possibility of improper CRS installation.

All CRSs manufactured after September 1, 2002, must have lower anchorage attachments for the LATCH system.

Remember that the lower anchorage points are only intended for installation and attachment of CRSs specifically certified for use with LATCH lower anchorages. CRSs that are not equipped with the lower anchorage attachments can still be installed according to the CRS manufacturer's instructions using vehicle safety belts.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of tether anchorages or lower anchorages can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always follow the CRS manufacturer's instructions for proper installation and use of child restraint systems.**
- **Never use the LATCH or tether anchorages to attach safety belts or other kinds of occupant restraints.**
- **CRS tether anchorages and the lower anchorages are only designed to secure a CRS that has been equipped to use these anchorages.**
- **Tether anchorages and the lower anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances can they be used safely for adult or child seat belts or harnesses, luggage or other items.**
- **Never mount more than one CRS to a single tether or to a lower anchorage point. Attaching two child restraints to a single anchorage point can cause the anchorage to fail and cause serious personal injury in an accident.**
- **Never use the tether anchorages and lower anchorages to install three child restraints in your Volkswagen.**
- **Never use the lower inboard anchorages from the left and right rear seating positions to install a CRS at the center seating position of the rear seat. The distance between the inboard anchors will not allow a CRS to be properly installed to be able to withstand the high forces that are generated in a crash.**
- **If you must install three child restraints on the rear seat of a Volkswagen with three seating positions in the rear, you must use the vehicle safety belt to install the child restraint in the center seating position.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS whenever using a child restrained in a vehicle is being used ⇒ page 13, "Safety belts",** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

⇒ page 28, "Airbag system" and ⇒ page 53, "Child safety". ◀

Mounting and releasing hook-on or push-on connectors of CRS that have connectors or other latches attached to adjustable straps

Mounting

– LATCH lower anchorage attachment points are on the vehicle body between the rear seatback and rear seat cushion ⇒ page 71, fig. 36.

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injuries in a collision.

- **Always refer to the CRSs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CRS and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle. ◀**

Installing a CRS using the "LATCH" system

Whenever you install a CRS always refer to the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

There are two possibilities to attach a LATCH-CRS to the lower anchorages for the outboard seating position:

Rigid connectors on bars that extend from the back of the CRS:

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

– Release or deploy the child restraint tether strap.

– Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

– Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

– Attach the connectors onto the LATCH lower anchorages.

– Make sure you hear the CRS click securely into place.

– Pull on both sides of the CRS once you've mounted it to make certain it is secure and properly attached.

Releasing

– Release the lower latch from the LATCH lower anchorages following the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

– Release the tether strap.

Hooks attached to adjustable straps (hook-on connectors)

– Make sure the seat back of the rear seat bench is in the upright position and securely latched in place.

– Press the hook-on connectors with the spring catch release onto the lower anchorage so that the connector locks into place.

– Pull on the connector to make sure that it is properly attached to the lower anchorage. ▶

– Attach both straps with hook-on connectors on the CRS securely to the lower anchorages.

– Pull straps tight following the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

– Release or deploy the child restraint tether strap.

– Guide the upper tether strap under the rear head restraint (raise the head restraint if necessary).

– Attach the tether strap anchorage hook into the opening of the tether anchorage.

– Pull on both of the adjustable straps on the CRS and pull also on the tether strap once you've mounted the CRS to make certain it's secure and properly attached.

Releasing

– Loosen the tension on the strap following the CRS manufacturer's instructions.

– Depress the spring catch on the hook.

– Hold the spring catch in the depressed position.

– Move the hook in direction of the vehicle floor so that there is enough space to release the connector from the lower anchorage.

– Release the tether strap

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the LATCH system can increase the risk of serious personal injury and death in an accident.

- **These anchors were developed solely for child seats using the "LATCH" system.**
- **Never attach other child seats, belts or other objects to these anchors.**
- **Always make sure that the you hear a click when latching the seat in place. If you do not hear a click the seat is not secure and could fly forward and hit the interior of the vehicle, or be ejected from the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper installation of child restraints will increase the risk of injury in an accident.

- **Always follow the CRSs manufacturer's instructions for proper installation of the CRS and proper use of tether straps as well as the lower anchorages or safety belts in your vehicle.**
- **Always read and heed the important information and WARNINGS about child safety and the installation of CRSs ⇒ page 53, "Child safety".** ◀

Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use?

There are a number of sources of additional information about CRS selection, installation and use:

NHTSA advises that the best child safety seat is the one that fits your child and fits in your vehicle, and that you will use correctly and consistently.

Try before you buy!

National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Tel.: (888) DASH-2-DOT
www.nhtsa.dot.gov

National SAFE KIDS Campaign
Tel.: (202) 662-0600
www.safekids.org

Safety BeltSafe U.S.A
Tel.: (800) 745-SAFE (English)
Tel.: (800) 747-SANO (Spanish)
www.carseat.org ▶

Volkswagen Sit Safe® Program
Program Professionals, Inc.
Tel.: (734) 324-7550
www.programprofessionals.org

Volkswagen Customer CARE
Tel.: (800) 822-8987 ◀

Alphabetical index

A

Acoustic signal 14
Activating the switchable locking feature 65
Address of NHTSA 12
Adjusting safety belt height 25
Advanced Airbag System 32
  Airbag deployment zone 38
  How the components work together 37
Advanced Airbag System components 35
Advanced front airbag system 33
Airbag deployment zone 38
Airbag system 28
  Care 44
  Components (front airbags) 35
  Components (side airbags) 46
  Components (side curtain protection™ airbag) 51
  Curtain airbags 50
  Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 30
  Disposal 44
  Front airbags 32
  How it works? 48, 51
  How many airbags does my vehicle have? 35, 46, 51
  Importance of sitting properly 28
  Importance of wearing safety belts 28
  Important things to know 28
  Indicator light 40
  Monitoring 40
  PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 41
  Repairs 44
  Side airbags 46
  When must the system be inspected? 40
  Where are my airbags located? 32, 46, 50
Auto Safety Hotline 12
Automatic belt retractor 19

B

Before driving 3
Belt pretensioner
  Disposal 27
  Service 27
Booster seats 62

C

Cargo area 10
Child restraint on the front seat 30
Child Restraint Systems (CRS) information 68
Child safety 53
Child seats 53
  Booster seats 62
  Convertible child seats 60
  Infant seats 59
  Lower anchorages 71
  Mounting and releasing lower anchorage connectors 72
  On the front passenger seat 30
  Safety instructions 56
  Tether anchors 68
  Tether strap 69
Convertible child seats 60
Curtain airbags 50
Customer CARE Center 28

D

Danger of fitting a child seat on the front passenger seat 30
Deactivating the switchable locking feature 67
Distance between driver and steering wheel 4
Driver
  See Seating position
Driving safety 3
Driving with children 53

E

Examples of improper seating positions 8
Extender for the safety belts 23

F

Fastening
  Booster seats 62
  Convertible child seats 60
  Infant seats 59

Safety belt extender 24
Safety belts 19
Floor mats 9
Front airbag system 32
Airbag deployment zone 38
The basics 32
Front airbags
Description 32
Frontal collisions and the laws of physics 15

H

Head restraints
Correct adjustment 7
Heavy clothing and safety belts 17
How many airbags does my vehicle have? 35, 46, 51

I

Importance of sitting properly 28
Importance of wearing safety belts 28
Important things to do before driving 3
Improper seating positions 8
Improperly worn safety belts 26
Indicator light
Airbag system 40
Indicator lights
Airbag system 41
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 41
Infant seats 59
Installing
Child restraint with a safety belt 63
CRS using the LATCH system 72
Installing the upper tether strap on the anchorage 70

L

Leather seats
Pressure marks 70
Lower anchorages 71
Luggage compartment 10

M

Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 40
Mounting and releasing the lower anchorage connectors 72

N

NHTSA 12
Number of seats 13

O

Occupant seating positions 4

P

PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF light 41
Start blinking 42
Passengers
See Seating position
Pedals 9
Physical principles of a frontal collision 15
Pregnant women
Special considerations when wearing a safety belt 22
Pressure marks 70
Proper adjustment of head restraints 7
Proper occupant seating positions 4
Proper safety belt position 21
Proper seating position
Driver 4
Front passenger 5
Occupants 4
Rear passengers 6

R

Repairs
Airbag system 44
Reporting safety defects 12
United States 12
Retractor 19

S

Safe driving 2
Safety belt extender 23
Safety belt height adjustment 25
Safety belt position 21
Adjusting safety belt height 25
Pregnant women 22
Safety belt pretensioners 26
Safety belt warning light 14

Safety belts 13, 19
Extender 23
How can I adjust the height of my safety belt? 25
How do you put on your safety belt correctly? 19
Improperly worn 26
Installing child restraint 63
Not worn 16
Safety belt position 21
Safety instructions 17
Special considerations for pregnant women 22
Switchable locking feature 65
Unfastening safety belts 25
Warning light 14
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? 16
Why assume the correct seating position? 28
Why safety belts protect? 17
Why wear safety belts? 15, 28
Safety belts protect 17
Safety equipment 2
Safety instructions
Belt pretensioners 27
Child restraint on the front seat 30
Child seats 56
Loading the luggage compartment 10
Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System 43
Proper seating position for passengers in rear seats 6
Proper seating position for the driver 4
Proper seating position for the front passenger 5
Safety belt extender 23
Safety belts 17
Side airbags 48
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags 52
Seating capacity 13
Seating position
Distance between driver and steering wheel 4
Driver 4
Front passenger 5
Improper seating positions 8
Occupants 4
Rear passengers 6
Seats
Number of seats 13
Side airbags 46
Description 46
How they work? 48
Safety instructions 48
Side Curtain Protection™ airbags
Description 50
How they work? 51
Safety instructions 52
Steering wheel
Distance to the driver 4
Switchable locking feature
Activating 65
Deactivating 67

T

Tether anchors 68
Tether strap 69
Tie-downs 12
Torn or frayed safety belts 17
Trunk 10

U

Unfastening
Safety belts 25
Upholstery
Pressure marks 70

V

Ventilation slits 11

W

Warning light
Safety belts 14
Warning lights
PASSENGER AIR BAG OFF 41
What happens if you do not wear your safety belt? 16
What happens if you wear your safety belt too loose? 21
What happens to occupants not wearing safety belts? 16
What impairs driving safety? 3

What you should know when driving with children? 53
When must a safety belt be replaced? 17
When must the airbag system be inspected? 40
Where are lower anchorages located? 71
Where are my airbags located?
Front airbags 32
Side airbags 46
Side curtain protection™ airbags 50
Where are tether anchors located? 68
Where can I get additional information about child restraints and their use? 73
Why safety belts protect? 17
Why should head restraints be correctly adjusted? 7

Afterword

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

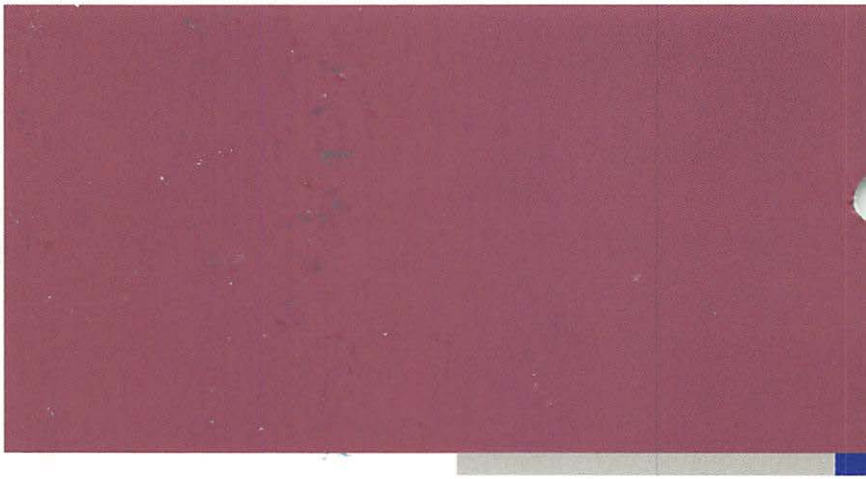
All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany

© Volkswagen AG

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

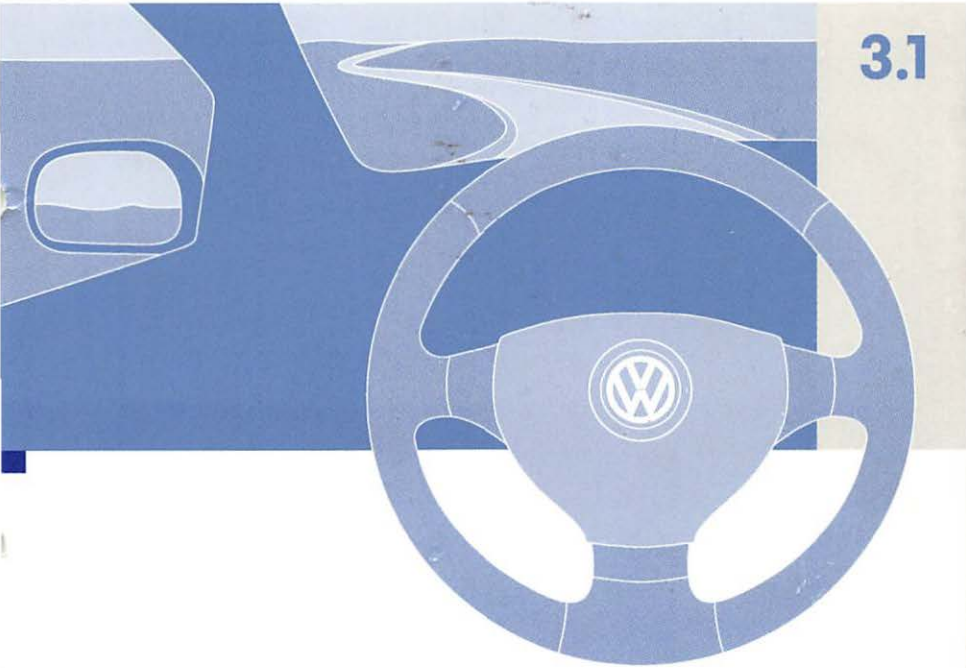


2.1 Safety first | Golf GTI
Print status: 04.2005
Art.-Nr.: 261.551.GGS.21 | englisch Nordamerika 10.2005

3.1 Controls and Equipment

Golf GTI

Model year 2006



About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions, and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

You will find any **Supplements** in the Owner's Literature immediately after the *Alphabetical Index* booklet.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to vehicles with Diesel engine".

® Registered trademarks are marked ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Text with this symbol contains important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Text with this symbol draws your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Text with this symbol contains information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Instrument panel 3

Overview 3
Warning lights 4
Instrument cluster 8
Display in the instrument cluster 11
Menus in the instrument cluster 13
Steering 24

Opening and closing 27

Key Set 27
Remote control key 28
Power locks 30
Doors 33
Anti-theft alarm system 34
Rear lid 35
Windows 38
Power roof 41

Lights and a clear view 43

Lights 43
Interior lights 47
Clear vision 49
Windshield wipers 49
Mirrors 52

Seats and storage 55

Why is seat adjustment so important? 55
Head restraints 56
Front seats 58
Rear seat 60
Storage 64
Cup holders 67
Electrical sockets 68
Luggage compartment 69
Roof rack 72

Air Conditioning system 75

Climatic 75
Climatronic 78

Driving 84

Ignition lock 84
Starting and stopping the engine 85
Manual transmission 87
Automatic transmission (Direct shift gearbox) 88
Parking brake 94
Cruise control system 96

Alphabetical index 99

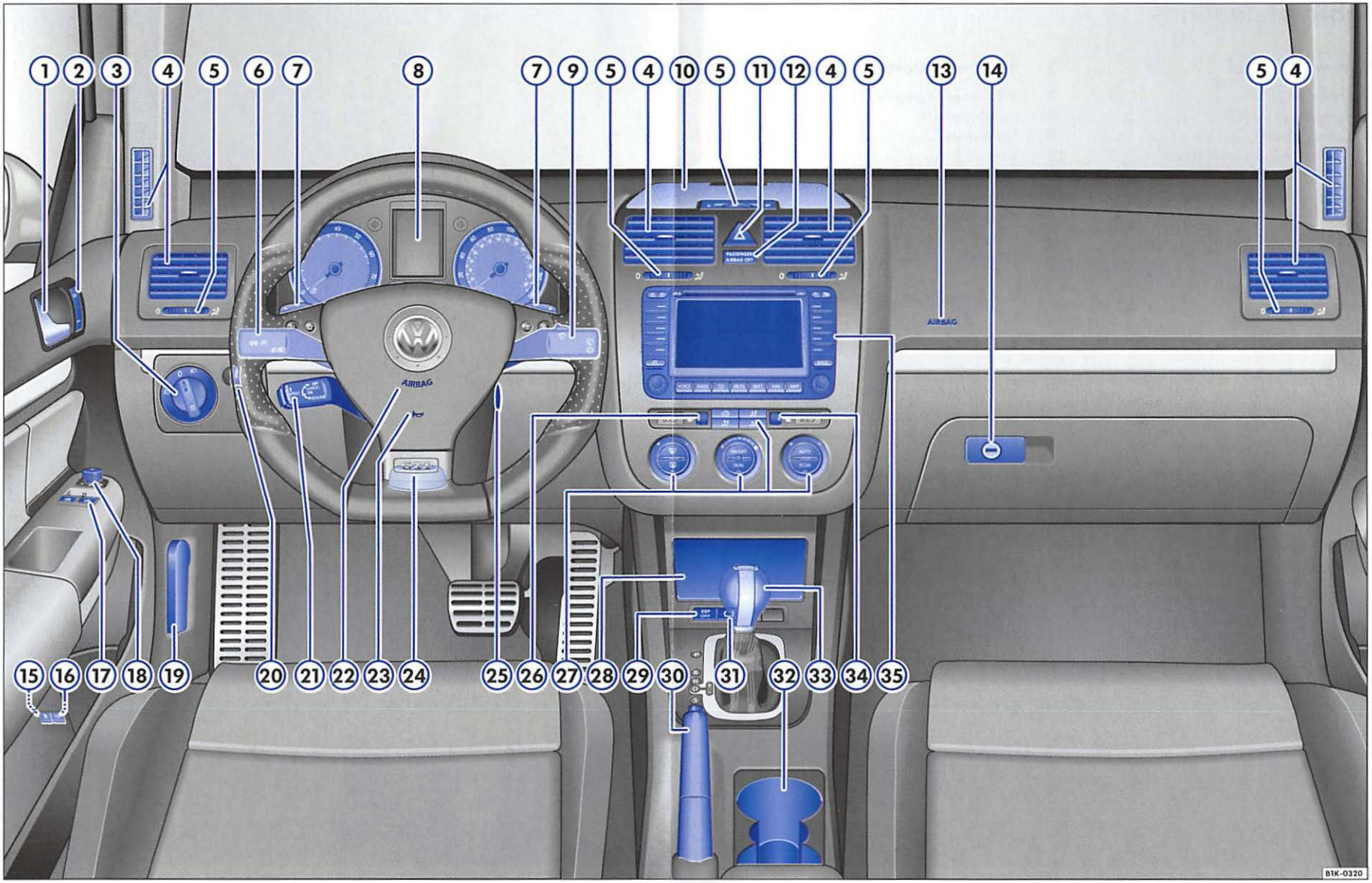


Fig. 1 Overview of instrument panel and driver's door trim

Instrument panel

Overview

General illustration

This overview will help you to familiarize yourself with the controls and displays quickly.

① Release handle
② Central locking button 32
③ Light switch 43
④ Air outlets
⑤ Thumb wheel for opening and closing the air vent
⑥ Turn signal and high beam lever .. 46
⑦ Paddle lever for shifting (automatic transmission) 91
⑧ Instrument cluster:
- Instruments 8
- Display 11
- Warning lights 4
⑨ Lever for Windshield wiper and washer 49
⑩ Air outlet for indirect ventilation or storage compartment 80
⑪ Emergency flasher switch 45
⑫ Warning light for front passenger airbag switched off ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Monitoring the Advanced Airbag System"
⑬ Front passenger airbag ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag System"
⑭ Glove compartment handle and lock 64
⑮ Fuel filler flap release button ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Filling the tank"
⑯ Rear lid release button 35
⑰ Power window switches for windows 38
⑱ Switches for adjusting the outside power mirrors 53
⑲ Engine hood release lever ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment"
⑳ Instrument cluster light switch ... 44
㉑ Cruise control lever , ... 96
㉒ Driver airbag ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system"
㉓ Horn (works only when the ignition is on)
㉔ Lever for adjustable steering column 25
㉕ Ignition lock 84
㉖ Thumb wheel for left seat heating 59
㉗ Controls for
- Climatic 75
- Climatronic 78
㉘ Additional storage compartment
- Power outlet 68
㉙ ON/OFF button for Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) or Anti-slip regulation (ASR) ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brakes"
㉚ Parking brake lever 94
㉛ Button for switching tire monitoring pressure system[1] ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Tires and wheels"
㉜ Cup holder 67
㉝ Selector lever for automatic transmission or gearshift lever (manual transmission) 88, 87
㉞ Thumb wheel for right seat heating 59
㉟ Sound system ⇒ booklet 3.4

[1] not for USA market

Tips

- Some features mentioned are standard equipment on some models only and options on others.
- For technical reasons, the arrangement of the switches and indicator/warning lights may differ. The governing factor is the symbol on the switch itself. ◀

Warning lights

Overview of the warning lights

The warning lights indicate a number of different functions and possible faults.

Fig. 2 Instrument cluster with warning lights. Some of the warning lights shown here may be available only on certain models or may be optional equipment. Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance if you have questions.

Informational, warning or malfunction messages are identified by a warning light or symbol and with a matching text in the display ⇒ page 12. ▶

① Warning and Indicator lights in the tachometer

Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
	Comes on: Electromechanical power steering assist reduced – contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Power steering"
	Comes on: Electromechanical power steering assist failure – STOP contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Power steering"
	Flashes: Malfunction in the electronic steering column lock – STOP contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp – contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Engine management and exhaust system"
	Properly close the fuel cap	
EPC	Electronic Power Control (Gasoline engine only) – contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	
	Electronic immobilizer	⇒ page 85
	Generator malfunction – contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Vehicle batteries"
	Bulb failure	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Changing a light bulb"
	High beams switched on	⇒ page 46

② Indicator lights in the turn signal system

Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
	Turn signal left	⇒ page 46
	Turn signal right	⇒ page 46

③ Warning and indicator lights in the display

Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
	STOP Engine coolant temperature too high – Stop and allow engine to cool.	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Coolant"
	STOP Engine coolant level too low – Check coolant level.	

Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
	Brake pads worn – contact your authorized Volkswagen dWindshield washer fluid too lowealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brakes"
	Windshield washer fluid level too low	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling"
	Fuel level too low (reserve) – Refuel as soon as possible	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Filling the tank"
	STOP Engine oil pressure too low – switch engine off and check engine oil level	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Engine oil"
	Doors open Make sure that all the doors are completely closed (to the second catch).	⇒ page 33
	Rear lid open	⇒ page 35
	Engine oil level too low – Check the oil level as soon as possible and refill with oil as necessary	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Engine oil"

④ Warning and indicator lights in the speedometer

Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
	Depress brake pedal	⇒ page 88 or ⇒ page 85
	Airbag system malfunction– contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag System "
	Airbag disabled	⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag System"
	Belt pretensioner system malfunction – contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag System"
	Engine hood open	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment"
	Fasten safety belts!	⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts"
ABS or	Malfunction in anti-lock brake system – contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brakes"
	Flashing: Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) in operation or Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR) in operation **Illuminated:** ESP or ASR malfunction or switched off	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brakes"

Symbol	Meaning of warning lights	Further information
BRAKE or	**Light on:** Malfunction in brake system– contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brakes"
	Light on: brake fluid level too low – switch engine off and check brake fluid	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Brakes"
BRAKE or	**Light on:** – parking brake is applied	⇒ page 94
	Inflation pressure for one tire is too low or there is a system error.	⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Tires and Wheels"
CRUISE or	Cruise control system switched on	⇒ page 96
DRL or	Daytime running lights	⇒ page 43

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information can lead to a breakdown in traffic, collision and serious personal injury.

- **Never ignore warning lights and warning texts!**
- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn on the emergency flasher and stop the engine and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.**
- **Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material that can cause fire.**

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

Failure to observe warning lights or warning texts can cause damage to your vehicle.

Tips

- If one of the lights marked with STOP comes on while you are driving, move a safe distance off the road. Turn the emergency flasher on. Turn off the engine and use other warning devices to alert other motorists. Go to listed page in your booklet for detailed information.
- Some warning lights are also displayed in the instrument cluster. The priority of malfunctions is displayed with red and yellow symbols and displayed with additional information.
- Some malfunctions are indicated only by the warning lights in the instrument cluster without warning or information texts. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Some features mentioned are standard equipment on some models and options on others. ◀

Instrument cluster

Instrument overview

The instrument cluster displays the vehicle operating status.

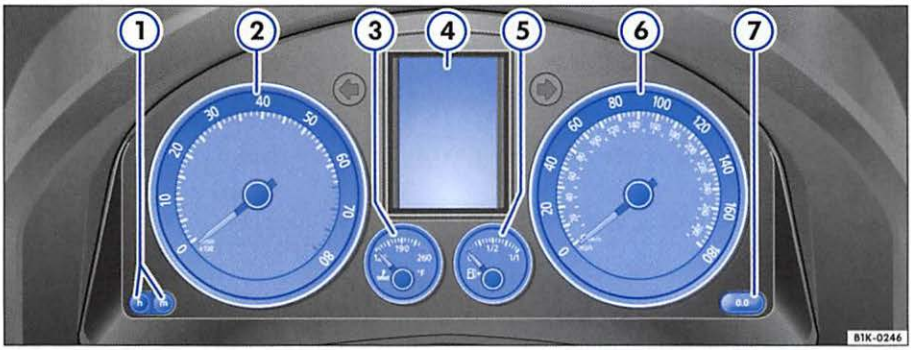


Fig. 3 Detail of the instrument panel: instrument cluster

1. Buttons for setting the clock time ⇒ page 8
2. Tachometer ⇒ page 9
3. Engine coolant temperature gauge ⇒ page 9
4. Display for various readouts ⇒ page 11
5. Fuel gauge ⇒ page 10
6. Speedometer
7. Reset button for trip odometer ⇒ page 10 ◀

Setting the clock

The clock is located in the Display in the instrument cluster.

Fig. 4 Section of the instrument cluster: buttons for setting the clock time

– Press the [h] button ⇒ fig. 4 to set the hour. The clock will advance to the next hour if you briefly press the button.

– Press the [min] button to set the minute. The clock will advance to the next minute if you briefly press the button. ◀

Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

If, for example, the needle is directly over the 20, this corresponds to an engine speed of 2,000 rpm (revolutions per minute).

The red zone on the dial indicates the maximum engine speed that may be used only briefly when the engine is warm and after it has been broken in properly. However, it is advisable to upshift or move the selector lever to D (or take your foot off the accelerator pedal to slow down) before the needle reaches the red zone.

Note

To avoid damage to the engine never allow the needle in the tachometer to go into the red end of the scale (warning zone)!

For the sake of environment

Upshifting early saves fuel and minimizes engine noise. ◀

Engine coolant temperature gauge

This gauge shows the engine coolant temperature.

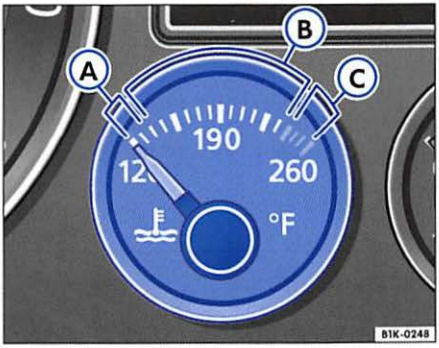


Fig. 5 Section of the instrument cluster: engine coolant temperature gauge

Engine cold Ⓐ

Avoid high engine speeds and heavy engine loads ⇒ fig. 5.

Normal temperature Ⓑ

Under normal driving conditions, the needle should be in the middle of the gauge. The temperature may also rise when the engine is working hard, especially at high outside temperatures. Do not worry if the warning light and a warning message does not appear in the display.

If the symbol and a warning text appear in the display, either the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Coolant."

Needle in warning zone Ⓒ

If the needle is in the warning zone, the symbol will light up. If your vehicle is equipped with the message display feature, an information text will also appear in the display. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for more information. Either the coolant temperature is too high, or the coolant level too low. **Stop the vehicle and switch off the engine.** Check the coolant level ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Coolant" ⇒ ⚠.

Do not continue driving if the coolant level is correct and you have a warning in the instrument cluster telling you there is a problem. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

- Accessories in front of the air inlet reduce the cooling effect of the coolant. If it is hot outside and you drive with high engine loads, there is a risk of the engine overheating. ▶

- The front spoiler also ensures proper distribution of the cooling air when the vehicle is moving. The engine could overheat if the spoiler is damaged, torn off or removed! Have the spoiler repaired or replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

Fuel gauge

Fig. 6 Section of the instrument cluster: fuel tank gauge

The fuel tank holds about 14.5 gallons (55 liters).

When the needle reaches the low fuel level zone ⇒ fig. 6 (arrow), the display lights up. If your vehicle is equipped with the message display feature, **Please refuel!** will also appear in the display. See your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for more information. At the same time, a warning will sound **as a reminder to refuel.** At this point there are still about 1.8 gallons (7 liters) of fuel in the tank. The display only works when the ignition is switched on.

Tips

- Remember to refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel, especially in remote areas.
- The small arrow next to the fuel tank symbol appearing in the fuel gauge on which side of the vehicle the fuel filler flap is located. ◀

Mileage (kilometer) display

The mileage (kilometer) are in the instrument cluster display.

Odometer for total distance traveled

The left-hand counter ⇒ page 11, fig. 7 ③ in the display shows the total distance of miles (kilometers) driven.

Trip odometer "trip"

The right-hand counter ⇒ page 11, fig. 7 ③ shows the short trip. It shows the distance covered since the trip odometer was last reset. The last digit 100 yards (meters). Press the button 0.0 ⇒ page 8, fig. 3 ⑦ to rest the odometer back to zero.

Switching total distance reading to speedometer display (mph or km/h)

In the Settings menu under Units you can switch from mph to km/h. ◀

Display in the instrument cluster

Messages appearing in the display

Informational or malfunction messages are identified by a warning light or symbol and, depending on the kind of instrument cluster in your vehicle, with a matching text in the display.

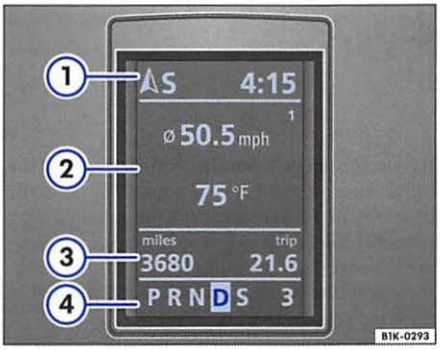


Fig. 7 Display in the instrument cluster: Multi-function display

① Compass ⇒ page 22 and clock

② There are optional and automatic displays in this field:

- **Selectable displays:** . Multi-function indicator (MFI) and outside temperature display
- **Automatic displays:** Information text or warnings ⇒ page 12
- Menus providing information, which can be used to make different settings, are also shown in the display ⇒ page 13 .

③ Odometer, Trip Odometer

④ Selector lever position display for the automatic transmission[2]. The selector lever position or the gear selected (Tiptronic®) will be shown in the display field with a light background.

⑤ Compass ⇒ page 22

Tips

There are different instrument clusters. Equipment and display readings may vary between models. ◀

Service Interval Display

When a Service is due, you will be reminded by a message appearing either in the instrument cluster ⇒ page 8, fig. 3 ④.

Service interval display on vehicles with time- or distance-dependent service

If a Service is due soon, a **Service notice** appears in the display. A "wrench" symbol appears in the display "mi" ("km") together with the number of miles (kilometers) you can drive until the service due date. The display changes after about 10 seconds. A "Clock symbol" appears and the number of days until the service due date. The following display appears in the instrument cluster: **SERVICE IN --- MILES OR ---DAYS**. About 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on or with the engine running, the service message disappears. You can also switch to the normal display by pressing the button ⇒ page 24 ⑤ in the multi-function steering.

When there is a **Service due**, a chime sounds and the flashing "wrench" symbol appears for about 20 seconds . The following display appears in the instrument cluster: **SERVICE NOW**.

An overdue service is indicated by a minus sign in front of the distance or day reading. ▶

[2] Where applicable

Service Interval Display

If the Maintenance Service was **not performed** by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop, then you should bring your vehicle as soon as possible to your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the Maintenance Service reminder reset.

Tips

Do **not** reset the display between service intervals; doing so will result in an incorrect display. ◀

Applies to vehicles: With Multi-function indicator

Warning or information texts in the display

Malfunctions are shown in the display with warning symbols and warning information messages.

Fig. 8 Warning symbol and warning text in the display of the instrument cluster

The status of some function and vehicle components is checked when the ignition is turned on or while driving. Operational problems are displayed by red warning lights or yellow indicator lights with warning messages in the instrument cluster. Depending on the type of problem, you will also be alerted by an audible signal.

Warning symbols

There are red warning symbols (priority 1) and yellow warning symbols (priority 2).

Warning messages, Priority 1 (red)

If one of these malfunctions occurs, the warning light will flash or light up and you will hear **three warnings sounds**. This is a **danger** warning. Pull off the road where it is safe and switch off the engine immediately. Contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop immediately and have the malfunction repaired.

If several priority 2 warnings are detected at the same time, the symbols will appear one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time. After a set time, the information text will disappear, however the symbol will appear in the display and stay on as a reminder for you to have the malfunction repaired.

As long as a priority 1 warning is shown in the display, you will not be able to see any other menus ⇒ page 13. To display the menus, confirm the warning messages with the OK button on the multi-function steering wheel or under the windshield wiper lever depending on the equipment installed in your vehicle.

Warning messages, Priority 2 (yellow)

If one of these situations occurs, the warning symbol comes on, and you will hear **one warning sound**. Check the cause as soon as possible.

If several priority 2 warnings are detected at the same time, the symbols are displayed one after the other for about 2 seconds at a time. After a set time, the information text will disappear, however the symbol will appear at the side of the display and stay on as a reminder for you to check the cause as soon as possible.

Priority 2 warning messages will not be shown until all **Priority 1** warning messages have been corrected!

Information text

In addition to warning messages about a malfunction, you will receive additional information in the display. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Failure to heed warning lights and other important vehicle information can lead to a breakdown in traffic, collision and serious personal injury.

- **Never ignore warning lights and warning messages!**
- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, stop the engine, and turn on the emergency flasher and use other warning devices to warn approaching traffic.**

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

Failure to observe warning lights or warning texts can cause damage to your vehicle.

Tips

Some malfunctions are indicated only by the warning lights in the instrument cluster without warning or information texts. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance. ◀

Menus in the instrument cluster

Settings menu

The set up menu is used to make various different settings for the functions in the vehicle.

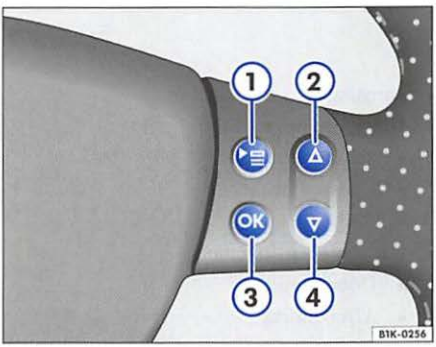


Fig. 9 Multifunction steering wheel: right side

Opening the Settings menu

– Press the button ⊡ on the multi-function steering ⇒ fig. 9 ① until the **Settings** menu is displayed.

An example of how to use the menu ⇒ page 15

.

Settings	Function
Compass[a)]	This is where the compass can be calibrated on vehicles without a Navigation system ⇒ page 22 .
Time	You can set the clock (hours and minutes) both in the instrument cluster and in the Navigation System. You can choose between a 12 and 24 hour display and switch to daylight savings time (an **S** (Summer) appears in the upper part of the display)
Winter tires	You can enter here whether the warning will be optical or acoustic and the vehicle speed when the warning will be given. You can use this function, for example, if you have installed winter tires which are not suited for the top speed of your vehicle ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Tires and wheels".
Language	Text in the display and in the Navigation System can be displayed in seven different languages.
Units	The units of measure for temperature, fuel consumption values and distances can be set here.
Convenience	The convenience menu is used to make the settings for the convenience functions in the vehicle⇒ page 16 .
Lights & Vision	Various settings can be made for the vehicle lighting in the Lights & Vision menu⇒ page 17
Display off	The display is switched off. If there is warning message, malfunction message or service message, it is displayed. After the message has been shown or by pressing OK the display switches off again. If a button on the windshield wiper lever or the multi-function steering wheel is pressed while the display is switched off, the settings menu **Display off** can be used to switch the display on.
Back	Return to the main menu.

a) Vehicles without navigation system

Settings menu structure

- Settings
- Compass[a)]
- Time of day
  - Hours
  - Minutes
  - 24 h / 12 h
  - Daylight saving
  - Back
- Winter tires
  - On / Off
  - + 5 mph
  - - 5 mph
  - Back
- Language
- Units (metric or US)
  - Temperature
  - Consu. / distance
  - Back
- Convenience operation
  - Door open
  - ATA confirm
  - Conv. mode
  - Mirror adjust
  - Factory setting
  - Back
- Light & Vision
  - Footwell light

- Comfort indic.
- Factory setting
- Back
- Display off

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction can cause accidents and serious personal injury.

- **Never select menus when the vehicle is moving.**

Tips

- The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the options installed on your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop can program or modify additional functions depending on kind of display installed on your vehicle.
- The Settings menu can only be opened when the vehicle is at a standstill. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with large display area in the instrument cluster and the multi-function steering wheel

Example of using the menus with the multi-function steering wheel

All menus in the instrument cluster can also be used following the steps described here.

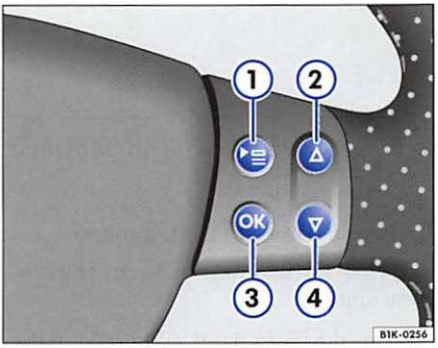


Fig. 10 Multifunction steering wheel: right side

The setting of a speed warning will be used as an example of how to use the menus. The speed warning feature is a helpful reminder if you are, for example, using winter tires which are not suited for the top speed of the vehicle.

1. Opening the SETTINGS menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 10 ① on the multi-function steering wheel until the **SETTINGS** menu is displayed.

2. Opening the Winter tires menu

– Press the arrow keys △ ② or ▽ ④ to highlight the menu item **Winter tires**. The highlighted menu item is between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right ◀.

– Press the OK button ③. The **Winter tires** menu opens.

3. Setting the speed warning

– Highlight the menu item **+ 5 mph** (**(+ 10 km/h)**) or **- 5 mph** (**(- 10 km/h)**) using the arrow keys and press the OK button to increase or decrease the speed shown at the top of the display.

4. Switching the speed warning on and off

– Using the arrow keys, select the menu item **On / Off** and press the OK button to switch the speed warning on or off. When the speed warning is switched off, three dashes --- appear at the top of the display.

5. Exiting the Winter tires menu

– Select the menu item **Back**. ▶

The function "Winter tires" will generate a visible and acoustic warning once the vehicle has reached the set speed.

The example menu Winter tires

In display	Function
Winter tires	The name of the displayed menu
X mph (X km/h) or ---	Displays the speed currently set or dashes if the function is switched off.
ON/OFF	Switches the function on or off.
+ 5 mph (+10 km/h)	Increases the set value by 5 mph (10 km/h).
- 5 mph (-10 km/h)	Decreases the set value by 5 mph (10 km/h).
Back	The **Winter tires** menu closes and the last displayed menu opens again.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the options installed on your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance. ◀

Convenience functions menu

The convenience menu is used to make the settings for the convenience functions in the vehicle.

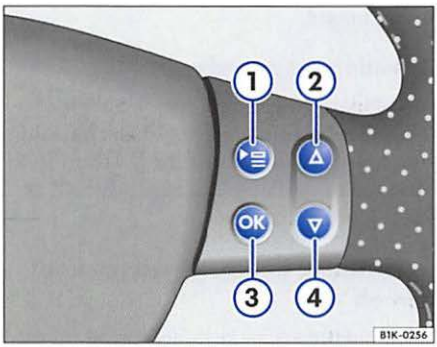


Fig. 11 Multifunction steering wheel: right side

1. Opening the SETTINGS menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press the [≡] ⇒ fig. 11 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **SETTINGS** menu is displayed.

2. Opening the Convenience menu

– Press the arrow keys [△] ② or [▽] ④ to highlight the menu item **Convenience**. The highlighted menu item is between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right ◀.

– Press the [OK] button ③. The **Convenience** menu opens. ▶

Convenience	Function
Door open	The vehicle locks all doors when the vehicle is moving and unlocks the doors when the key is removed from the ignition lock.
ATA confirm	The activation of the anti-theft alarm system can be confirmed if required.
Conv. mode	Convenience operation of the power windows: determines if the driver's door window, all windows or no window should be opened when the vehicle is unlocked. This function can only be activated via the driver's door.
Mirrors adjust	The front passenger side mirror will be adjusted automatically together with the driver's mirror if this function is switched on.
Factory setting	This menu resets all of these functions to the original factory settings.
Back	You will return to the Settings menu.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the options installed on your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance. ◀

Lights & Vision menu

Various settings can be made for the vehicle lighting in the Lights & Vision menu.

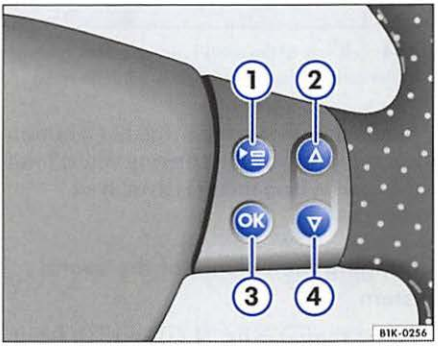


Fig. 12 Multifunction steering wheel: right side

1. Opening the SETTINGS menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press the [≡] ⇒ fig. 12 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **SETTINGS** menu is displayed.

2. Opening the Lights & Vision menu

– Press the arrow keys [△] ② or [▽] ④ to highlight the menu item **Lights & Vision**. The highlighted menu item is between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right ◀.

– Press the [OK] button ③. The **Lights & Vision** menu opens.

Lights & Vision	Function
Footwell light	Sets the brightness of the footwell lighting when the doors are open.
Comfort indic.	The turn signal will flash at least three times if the turn signal lever is used when changing lanes⇒ page 46

Lights & Vision	Function
Factory setting	This menu resets all of these functions to the original factory settings.
Back	Return to the Settings menu.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the options installed on your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with sound system

Sound system menu

Fig. 13 Display in the instrument cluster: Sound system menu

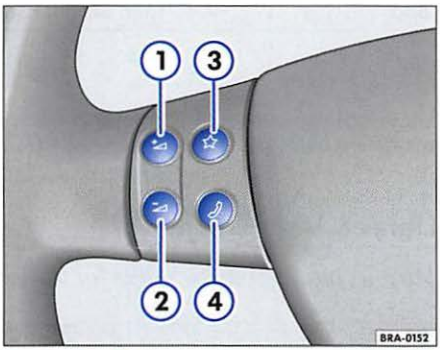


Fig. 14 Left side of the multi-function steering wheel with the controls for the telephone and the radio

Opening the Sound system menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Switch the sound system on

– Press the [≡] ⇒ page 17, fig. 12 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **Sound system** menu is displayed ⇒ fig. 13.

Changing the volume of the sound system

– Press the [◿] ⇒ fig. 14 ① and [◿] ② buttons to change the volume. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Navigations system

Compass menu

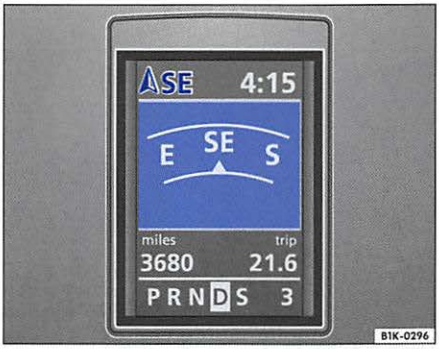


Fig. 15 Display in the instrument cluster: Compass menu

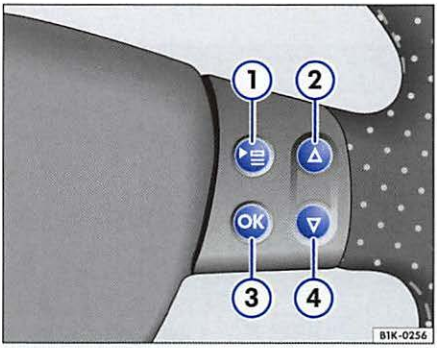


Fig. 16 Multifunction steering wheel: right side

Opening the Compass menu[3)]

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Switch the Navigations system on.

– Press the ⊡ ⇒ fig. 16 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **Compass** menu is displayed .

3) Vehicles with navigation system

Applies to vehicles: with multi-function indicator (MFI)

Multi-Function Indicator (MFI)

The Multi-Function Indicator (MFI) shows you various travel data.

Fig. 17 Display in the instrument cluster: Multi-Function Indicator (MFI)

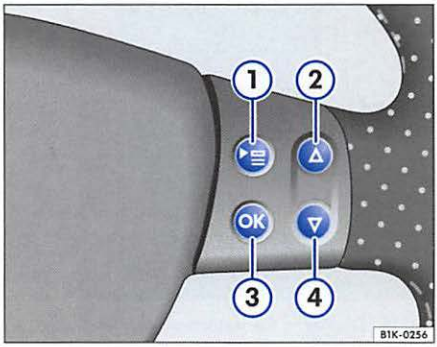


Fig. 18 Right side of the multi-function steering wheel with the controls for the Multi-Function Indicator

The MFI is equipped with two automatic memories: **1 - Trip memory** and **2 - Total journey memory**. The selected memory will be shown in the upper right-hand corner of the MFI display ⇒ fig. 17 -arrow-.

Opening the MFD menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press the [≡] ⇒ fig. 18 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **Set up** menu is displayed.

– Press the [≡] ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **MFD** menu is displayed.

Selecting a memory

– With the ignition switched on, briefly press the button [OK] on the multi-function steering wheel ③ to toggle between memory 1 and memory 2.

Erasing the memory

– Select the memory that you would like to erase.

– Press and hold the button the [OK] button on the multi-function steering wheel for at least 2 seconds.

The **trip memory 1** collects the travel and fuel consumption data from the moment the ignition is switched on until it is switched off. If the trip is continued within two hours of switching off the ignition, the new values will be added to the existing trip record. The memory will automatically be erased if the ignition is switched off for more than two hours.

The **total journey memory 2** collects the trip data for any number of individual trips (even if the ignition is switched off for longer than two hours). The maximum travel time is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The maximum number of miles (kilometers) is 9999 and the maximum number of gallons (liters) of fuel consumed is 999. The memory will automatically set itself back to zero after it has reached the maximum value.

Memory displays

You can switch between the following displays in the multi-function indicator (MFI) by pressing the buttons [△] or [▽] ② or ④ on the multi-function steering wheel.

- Driving time ▶

- Current fuel consumption
- Average fuel consumption
- Miles (kilometers) to empty
- Distance traveled
- Average speed
- Speed warning

min Driving time

The display shows the amount of time that has gone by since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 99 hours and 59 minutes. The memory will reset itself back to zero once this value has been reached.

gallons /100 miles (l/100 km) Current fuel consumption

The display will show the current fuel consumption in gallons (liters) per 100 miles (kilometers) while the vehicle is in motion or in gallon (liters) per hour when the vehicle is at a standstill with the engine running.

Using this display you can see how your driving style affects fuel consumption ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Driving and protecting the environment".

Ø gallons/100 miles (Ø l/100 km) Average fuel consumption

The average fuel consumption will appear after you have driven approximately 100 yards (meters). Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is in motion. The amount of fuel used will not be shown.

Miles Miles (kilometers) to empty

The miles (kilometers) to empty is calculated using the fuel tank contents and current fuel consumption. It shows how far the vehicle can travel using the same speed and driving conditions as a reference.

Miles (km) Distance traveled

The display shows the distance traveled since the ignition was switched on.

The maximum display value in both memories is 9999 miles (kilometers). The memory will reset itself back to zero once this value has been reached.

Ø mph (Ø km/h) Average speed

The average speed will appear after you have driven approximately 100 yards (meters). Dashes will appear in the display until that time. The display will be updated every 5 seconds while the vehicle is moving.

Speed warning

The speed warning can be set so you will see and hear a warning when you reach the desired speed. For example, this setting could be used to let you know if you exceed the posted speed limit. When you reach the desired speed, briefly press button ⇒ page 20, fig. 18 ③ on the multi-function steering wheel. Press and hold the OK button to erase the stored speed.

Outside temperature display

The temperature range is -40° F to +122° F (-40° C to +50° C). At outside temperatures between -40° F and +39° F (-40° C and +4° C), a "snowflake symbol" (ice warning) appears in addition to the outside temperature display. This symbol flashes for approximately 5 seconds and remains lit until the outside temperature rises above +39° F (+4° C).

When the vehicle is standing still or traveling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine.

⚠ WARNING

Roads and bridges can be dangerously icy even if the outside air temperature is above freezing.

- **If you use the outside temperature display to tell you about frost conditions, remember that roads can even ice over at temperatures above 39° F (+ 4° C).**
- **Always remember, even if the "snowflake symbol" (ice warning) does not appear in the display, black ice could be on the road.**
- **Never rely exclusively on this the outside temperature display.**
- **Always reduce your speed and drive with special care under weather conditions when the chances that you will encounter icy road surfaces are greater.**

Tips

- The MFI displays which have memory 1 and memory 2 are "Driving time," "Average fuel consumption," "Distance traveled" and "Average speed."
- The MFI display may look different in your vehicle because there are different instrument clusters. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance.
- When the vehicle is at a standstill or travelling at very low speeds, the temperature displayed may be slightly higher than the actual outside temperature as a result of the heat radiated from the engine. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with compass and sound system

Calibrating the compass

The vehicle compass must be calibrated every time you install additional items in your vehicle, i.e. a roof rack.

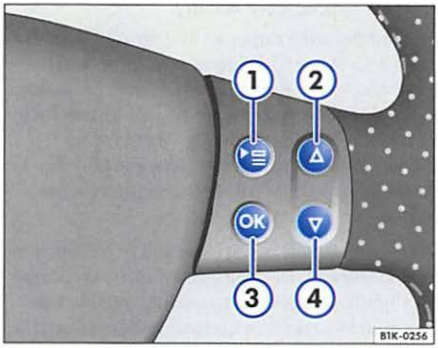


Fig. 19 Multifunction steering wheel: right side

1. Opening the SETTINGS menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press the ⇒ fig. 19 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **Set up** menu is displayed.

2. Opening the Compass menu[4)]

– Press the arrow keys △ ② or ▽ ④ to highlight the menu item **Compass**. The highlighted menu item is between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right ◀.

– Press the OK button ③. The **Compass** menu opens.

Calibrating the compass

– Mark the menu entry **Calibration** and press the OK button. The following message will be displayed **To calibrate drive round a complete circle.**

– Drive the vehicle in circles at 5 mph (10 km/h) or less until the display indicates that the calibration process has been completed.

[4)] Vehicles without navigation system

Applies to vehicles: with compass and sound system

Adjusting the compass variance zone

The compass variance zone must be adjusted in certain circumstances, i.e. during long distance trips.

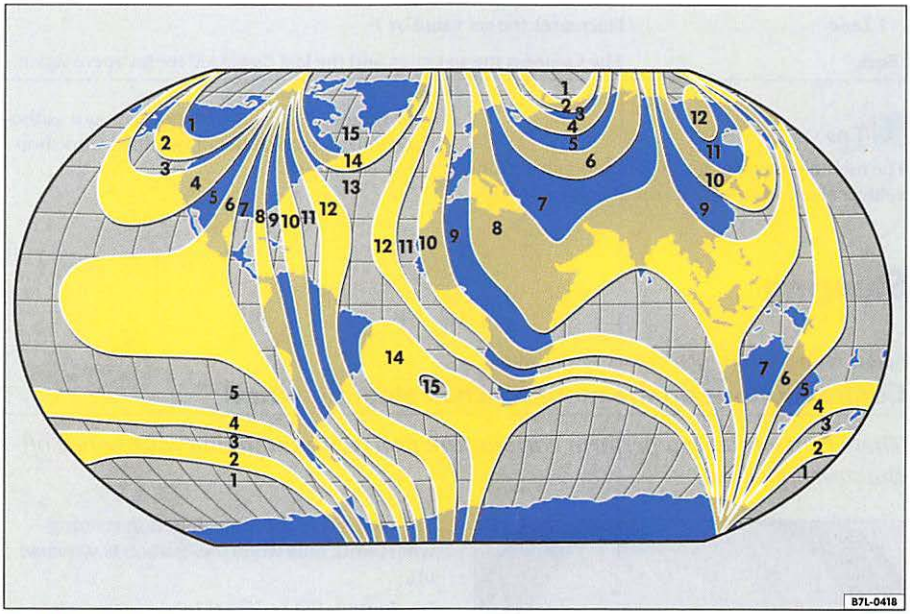


Fig. 20 World wide compass zone

1. Opening the SETTINGS menu

– Switch the ignition on. A vehicle pictogram appears.

– Press the ⇒ page 22, fig. 19 ① button on the multi-function steering wheel until the **Set up** menu is displayed.

2. Opening the Compass menu[5)]

– Press the arrow keys △ ② or ▽ ④ to highlight the menu item **Compass**. The highlighted menu item is between the two horizontal lines. There is also a triangle on the right ◀.

– Press the OK button ③. The **Compass** menu opens.

– Select **Zone** and press the OK button.

Adjusting the compass variance

– Find your current location and variance zone ⇒ fig. 20.

– Mark the menu entry **+ 1 Zone** or **- Zone** and press the OK button to either increase or decrease the compass variance zone shown in the display above.

Exiting the Compass menu

– Scroll down to **Back**. ▶

5) Vehicles without navigation system

– Press the OK button.

In display	Function
Compass	The name of the displayed menu
+ 1 Zone	Increase the set value by 1
- 1 Zone	Decreases the set value by 1
Back	The Compass menu closes and the last displayed menu opens again.

Tips

The menus shown in the display depends on the vehicle electronics and the options installed on your vehicle. If you are not sure, ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for assistance. ◀

Steering

Applies to vehicles: with multi-function steering wheel

Control buttons on the multi-function steering wheel

These controls let you perform various functions without taking your hands off the steering wheel.

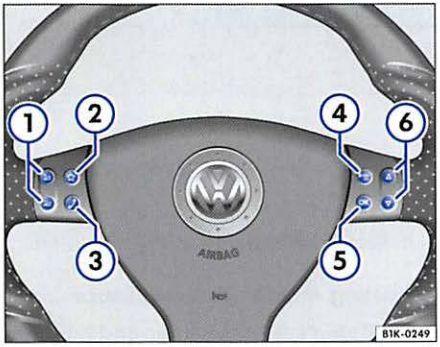


Fig. 21 Multi-function steering wheel with controls

The controls in the multi-function steering wheel work only when the ignition is switched on.

1. Buttons and to increase the volume
2. Button to mute the radio
3. Button to open the telephone directory or to accept, decline or end a telephone call[6)]
4. Button to open the menus in the instrument cluster display and toggle between the menus
5. OK button to confirm a menu item or entry
6. Buttons and to move the selector bar up within a menu in the instrument cluster display ◀

6) model-dependent

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable steering column

Adjusting the steering wheel position manually

The height and reach of the steering wheel can be freely adjusted to suit the driver.

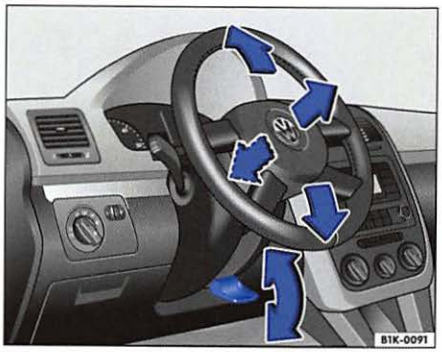


Fig. 22 Adjusting the steering wheel position

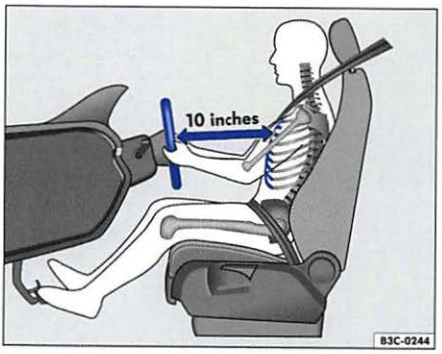


Fig. 23 Illustration of principle: proper seating position for driver

– Adjust the driver seat to the correct position ⇒ page 55.

– Push the lever down ⇒ fig. 22 under the steering column ⇒ ⚠.

– Adjust the steering wheel this way until the correct position is set ⇒ fig. 23.

– Then push lever up.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect use of the steering column adjustment function can result in serious personal injury and or death. Both the safety belt and the airbag system will work best to protect you in the event of an accident if you have the steering column properly adjusted. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury and/or death:

- **Never adjust the steering column while the vehicle is moving. Always adjust the steering column while the vehicle is standing still and before you set out. If you are driving and must make an adjustment, safely stop your vehicle and make the necessary adjustment.**
- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel ⇒ fig. 23.

- **If physical limitations prevent you from sitting 10 inches (25 cm) or more from the steering wheel, check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer to see if adaptive equipment is available.**
- **Never adjust the steering wheel so that it points toward your face. Otherwise, the airbag system cannot protect you properly in the event of an accident. Always make sure that the steering wheel points toward your chest.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **After adjusting the steering wheel, always push the steering wheel adjustment lever back up as far as it will go. This ensures the position** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

of the steering wheel cannot be altered unintentionally when the vehicle is moving. ◀

Opening and closing

Key Set

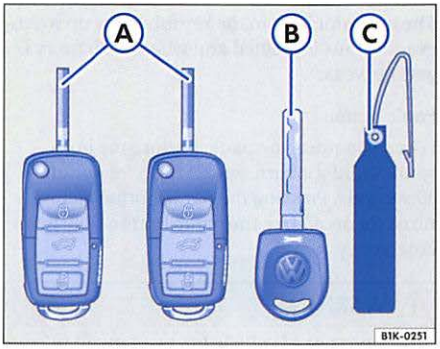


Fig. 24 Key set

Your vehicle's key set contains:

- two master keys ⇒ fig. 24 Ⓐ with remote control and panic button and an emergency key Ⓑ
- a plastic key tag with a number Ⓒ

Key tag Ⓒ

If you need a replacement key, take your key tag an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

The key number is needed to obtain another key, therefore:

- Always keep the key tag in a safe place.
- Never leave it in the vehicle.

If you sell the vehicle, be sure to give the key tag to the new owner.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.**
- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or while it is rolling to a stop. The steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**

Note

- The keys with the remote control contain electronic components. Protect these keys from moisture and rough handling.
- Never leave any vehicle keys inside the vehicle. Entry by unauthorized persons could harm the vehicle or your vehicle could be stolen. Always take the keys with you whenever you leave your vehicle.

Tips

- A replacement key can only be made with the key number.
- The key number identifies the way the key has to be cut and allows the microchip in the key to be programmed to work with the coded electronic immobilizer in your vehicle.
- A key without the special microchip or with a chip that has not been coded properly will not work with your vehicle, even if it has been cut correctly.
- Additional remote control keys are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers or qualified workshops. Each key must be programmed to work with your vehicle ⇒ page 29.
- You can use up to even remote control keys with your vehicle. ◀

Remote control key

Locking and unlocking the vehicle

The remote control key can lock and unlock the vehicle from a distance.

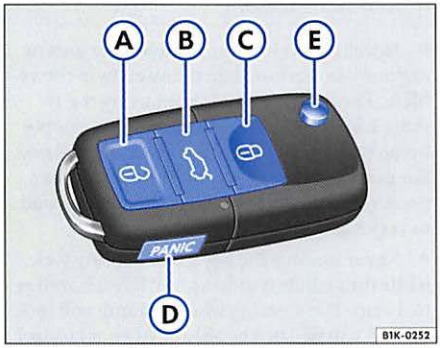


Fig. 25 Assignment of buttons on the remote control key

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press the ⇒ fig. 25 button on the remote control key to unlock all the doors and the rear lid.

Locking the vehicle

– Press the button on the remote control key to lock all the doors and the rear lid.

Unlocking rear lid

– Press the button in the remote control key for about one second to unlock the rear lid.

Panic function

– Press the red panic button PANIC in the remote control key to trigger the Panic function.

The remote control transmitter and the batteries are inside the key fob. The receiver is inside the vehicle. The maximum range of the remote control depends on various conditions. The range is shorter when the batteries are weak ⇒ fig. 25.

The indicator light in the key fob lights up whenever buttons is pushed and when the battery is getting weak.

Panic button

When you press the panic button, the horn sounds and the turn signals flash for about 30 seconds. Pressing the panic button again turns them off. Use the panic button only in an emergency.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.**
- **Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.**
- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or while it is rolling to a stop. The steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**

Note

- Never leave any vehicle keys inside the vehicle. Entry by unauthorized persons could ▶

harm the vehicle or your vehicle could be stolen. Always take the keys with you whenever you leave your vehicle.

- Using the wrong batteries can damage the remote control key. Replace used batteries with new ones of the same voltage and same size.

Tips

- Individual door opening can be programmed through the Convenience menu ⇒ page 16 or by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. Press the button once to unlock just the drivers's door ⇒ page 28, fig. 25. Press the button a second time to unlock all the doors and the rear lid.
- The remote control key only works when you are in range of the receiver.
- When you unlock your vehicle with the remote control, you have 30 seconds to open a door or the rear lid. If you do not, the vehicle will automatically relock itself. This safety relock feature prevents you from leaving your vehicle unlocked.
- If the remote control does not work, it may have to be synchronized again ⇒ page 29.
- If you try to use the remote control several times outside its effective range, the remote control may not work and will have to be reset ⇒ page 29.
- Use the remote control only if you intend to use one of the functions. Since terrain and conditions may vary, pressing the remote may unlock the vehicle or set off the panic function even if you think your are out of range.
- The operation of the remote control key can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle that work in the same frequency range (e.g. radio equipment, cellular phone). ◀

Resetting the remote control key

The remote key has to be reset if it does not lock or unlock the vehicle.

Resetting the remote control key

– Unlock the driver's door manually by inserting the emergency key in the door lock ⇒ page 27.

– Switch on the ignition.

Tips

The remote control key will have to be reset if you press the button several times outside its effective range and the vehicle can no longer be locked or unlocked with the remote. ◀

Replacing the battery

Fig. 26 Battery indicator light in the remote control key

When the battery charge light in the remote control key ⇒ fig. 26 (arrow) does not light up you press one of the buttons in the key, this means the battery is weak or dead and must be replaced.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop can change the batteries for you.

Note

Using the wrong battery can damage the remote control key. Replace the used battery with one of the same voltage and the same size.

For the sake of environment

Dispose of dead batteries properly. ◀

Power locks

How the power locks work

The power locks let you lock and unlock all the doors and the rear lid at the same time.

To use the power lock feature, you have the following options:

- using remote control key ⇒ page 28,
- using central locking button inside the vehicle ⇒ page 32
- manually using the emergency key ⇒ page 27

Automatic locking AUTO LOCK

Always close all doors properly so that the automatic locking feature can lock the doors. You will hear the vehicle doors and rear lid lock when you drive faster than about 4 mph (6 km/h). This feature can be changed in the convenience functions menu ⇒ page 16.

Automatic unlocking AUTO UNLOCK

The vehicle unlocks automatically when you remove the ignition key from the ignition lock. This feature can be changed in the convenience functions menu ⇒ page 16.

Individual unlocking

To unlock just the driver's door: press the button in the remote control key **one time only**.

To unlock all the vehicle doors and the rear lid: press the button in the remote control key **two times**.

Using **SETTINGS** in the Convenience functions menu you can select whether the driver's door or all doors unlock when you use the remote control. Choose the settings you want in the **CONVENIENCE** menu under **DOOR OPEN**.

WARNING

Driving with open doors can lead to serious personal injury.

- **If the doors are not closed properly, they can open while driving or in a collision.**
- **Always keep all doors closed while driving. The door must be flush with the surrounding body parts.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If you ever notice that the doors not properly closed when the vehicle is moving, stop as soon as it is safe to do so and close the door properly.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power locks can result in serious personal injury.

- The power locking button locks all the vehicle doors. Locking doors from the inside can help prevent unintended door opening during a collision and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.
- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the power lock button. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. People trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.
- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can

⚠ WARNING (continued)

cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.

- Never allow passengers to remain in a locked vehicle. Locked doors can delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in the event of an emergency. In an emergency any person still inside the vehicle might not be able to get out.

Tips

- If any airbag deploys, the vehicle doors unlock automatically, automatically unless the feature has been disabled by collision damage. When the doors have unlocked automatically after an airbag deployment, the vehicle cannot be locked from the outside or the inside unless door has been opened and closed again and the ignition is switched off and then switched on again.
- When you lock your vehicle with the central locking button:
  - The doors and the rear lid cannot be opened from the outside (for your safety, for example, when stopped at a traffic light).
  - If you try to lock the vehicle using the central locking button while the driver's door is still open, the driver's door will not lock. This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle. ◀

Central locking button

The vehicle can be locked and unlocked from the inside with the central locking button.

Fig. 27 Detail of the driver's door: central locking button

Locking the vehicle

– Press the ⇒ fig. 27 button ⇒ ⚠.

Unlocking the vehicle

– Press the button.

The central locking button works even when the ignition is switched off.

Please note the following when you use the central locking button to lock your vehicle:

- The anti-theft alarm is **not** activated when you press the button.
- If you try to lock the vehicle using the remote control while the driver's door is still open, the driver's door will not lock. This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.
- You can unlock all the doors separately from inside the vehicle. You will have to pull the door release handle *once*. The door will be opened by pulling the door release handle again.

Automatic locking

You can program the automatic locking function using the convenience functions menu⇒ page 16. This function automatically locks all the doors and the rear lid at a speed above 7,5 mph (15 km/h). After the vehicle comes to a stop, the vehicle will unlock itself when you remove the ignition key from the ignition switch or if you press the central locking in the door panel.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power locks can result in serious personal injury.

- **Locking doors from the inside can help prevent unintended door opening during a collision and can also prevent unwanted entry from the outside. Locked doors can, however, delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in an accident or other emergency.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked with the central locking button. This could leave people trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. People trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.**
- **Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.**
- **Never allow passengers to remain in a locked vehicle. Locked doors can delay assistance to vehicle occupants and rescue from the outside in the event of an emergency. In an emergency any person still inside the vehicle might not be able to get out.**

Tips

When you lock your vehicle with the central locking button:

- The doors and the rear lid *cannot* be opened from the outside (for your safety, for example, when stopped at a traffic light).
- You can unlock and open all the doors separately from inside. Pull the door handle **twice**. ▶

- If you try to lock the vehicle using the central locking button while the driver's door is still open, the driver's door will not lock. This feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle. ◀

Doors

Closing the doors

Doors which are not closed properly can open while you are driving.

If a door is not closed properly, the warning light in the instrument cluster or a message in the display[7] appears. The message also comes on with the ignition switched off and goes out approximately 15 seconds after locking the vehicle.

– Stop the vehicle.

– Open the door and close it again (to the second catch).

⚠ WARNING

A door which is not closed properly can accidentally open and cause injuries and accidents.

- **Never close a door inattentively or without checking first. You can injure yourself or other people. Always make certain that no one is standing within range of the door that is being closed.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with four doors

Child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from the inside.

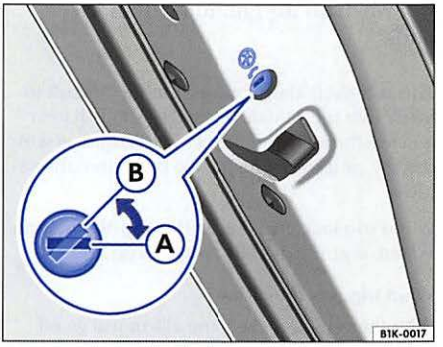


Fig. 28 Child safety lock in the rear left door: Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on

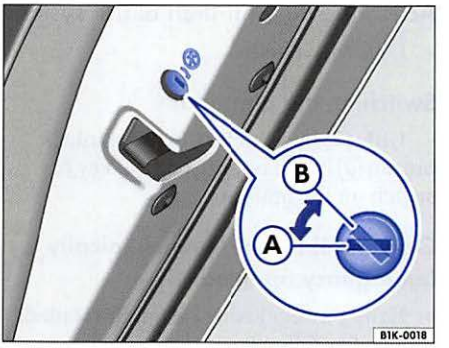


Fig. 29 Child safety lock in the rear right door: Ⓐ switched off, Ⓑ switched on

The rear doors have a child safety lock. You can use any vehicle keys to engage or disengage the lock. ▶

[7] Where applicable

Engaging the child safety lock

– Unlock the vehicle.

– Open the rear door.

– Use a vehicle key to turn the slot in the door to the position shown in ⇒ page 33, fig. 28 Ⓑ / ⇒ page 33, fig. 29 Ⓑ.

– Close the door. The door **cannot** be opened from the inside.

Disengaging the child safety lock

– Unlock the vehicle.

– Open the rear door.

– Use a vehicle key to turn the slot in the open door to the position shown in Ⓐ.

– Close the door. The door **can** opened from the inside.

The child safety lock can be activated to prevent children opening the rear doors by accident. When the child-proof lock is activated, the door can be opened from the outside only. The child safety lock can be switched on and off using a key in the opened door.

⚠ WARNING

With the child safety switch is activated the respective rear door cannot be opened from the inside.

- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle when locking the doors. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.** ◀

Anti-theft alarm system

Applies to vehicles: with anti-theft alarm

Description of anti-theft alarm system

Activating the anti-theft alarm system

– Lock the vehicle.

Switching the alarm off

– Unlock the vehicle using the unlock button 🔓 in the remote control key or switch on the ignition.

Opening the vehicle mechanically (emergency opening)

– If the power closing system has failed, proceed as follows:

– Open the vehicle with the emergency key at the driver's door ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Emergency closing or opening". The alarm is triggered immediately.

– Switch on the ignition within 15 seconds.

The anti-theft alarm makes it more difficult to break into the vehicle or steal it. You will hear and see the alarms if the vehicle is opened with the key, or if someone tries to break into the vehicle.

When you lock the vehicle, the anti-theft alarm system is automatically switched on.

What triggers the alarm?

With the vehicle locked, the alarm will go off under the following circumstances:

- Opening a door,
- Opening the engine hood,
- Opening the rear lid,
- Manually opening the vehicle using the emergency key. ▶

When the alarm is triggered, the horn will sound for about 30 seconds and the turn signals will flash for about 4,5 minutes.

Tips

When the alarm stops sounding and you open another door or the rear lid or any other part of the vehicle that is monitored by the anti-theft alarm system, the alarm will be triggered again. ◀

Rear lid

Opening the rear lid

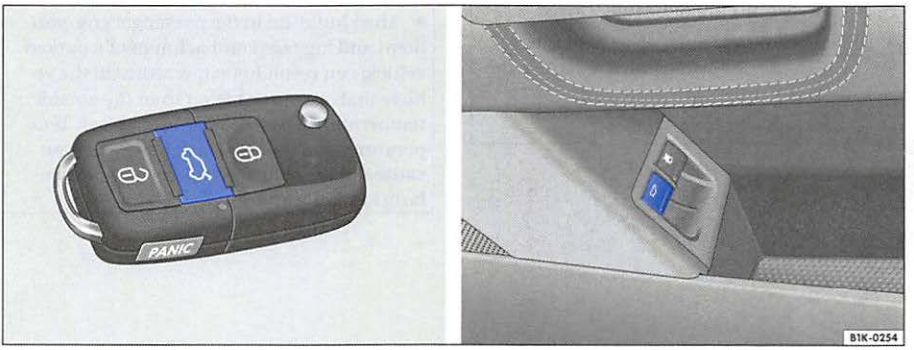


Fig. 30 Left illustration: remote control key, right illustration: rear lid release button in the driver door

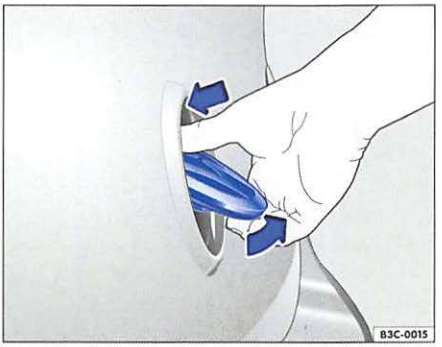


Fig. 31 Rear lid: unlocking rear lid

Unlock the rear lid with the remote control key

– Press the button in the remote control key ⇒ fig. 30.

Unlock the rear lid with the button in the driver's door

– Pull the rear lid release switch in the driver's door ⇒ fig. 30.

Opening the rear lid with the Volkswagen emblem

– Press on the top of the Volkswagen emblem with your thumb ⇒ fig. 31 and pull the emblem out at the bottom. Reach under the emblem with your hand and open the rear lid.

If the rear lid is open or not closed properly, the indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster or an indicator appears in the display. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Driving with an open rear lid can lead to serious personal injury.

- After closing the rear lid, always pull up on it to make sure that it is properly closed and cannot open suddenly when the vehicle is moving, even though the key has been turned to the locked position.
- Always keep the rear lid closed while driving to help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from begin drawn into the vehicle
- Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.
- If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, do the following notes to reduce the risk of carbon monoxide poisoning:
  - Close all windows,

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - Close the power roof[8],
  - Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,
  - Switch off the air recirculation,
  - Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.
- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children. ◀

[8] where applicable

Closing the rear lid

Fig. 32 Section of the rear lid interior trim: recesses for closing

– Take hold of one of the recesses ⇒ fig. 32 (arrow) in the interior trim of the rear lid ⇒ ⚠ and pull the rear lid down.

If the vehicle is locked (anti-theft alarm system activated) and the remote control key is used to unlock the rear lid only, the rear lid is locked immediately when it is closed. All turn signals flash briefly to confirm that the rear lid has been locked.

A display appears in the instrument cluster if the rear lid is not properly closed.

⚠ WARNING

Always close the rear lid properly to help avoid serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let anyone get in the way of the edges of the rear lid or its hinges when the rear lid is closing.**
- **Always make sure that the rear lid closes properly when you close it so that it cannot open suddenly while the vehicle is moving.**
- **Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury, especially when it is very hot or cold.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key or the central locking button. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle.**
- **Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children.**

Tips

If the battery is discharged or if there is a fault in the closing system, the rear lid can be unlocked manually ⇒ booklet Tips and Advice "Emergency closing or opening" ◀

Windows

Power windows

All power windows can be operated using the controls in the driver's door. The other doors each have a switch for their own window.

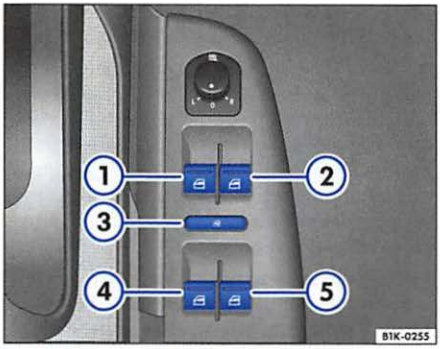


Fig. 33 Section of the driver door: window controls

Opening and closing the windows

– Press the ⇒ fig. 33 button to open a window.

– Pull the button to close a window ⇒ ⚠.

Always close the windows fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

You can use the power windows for about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition if neither the driver's door nor the front passenger's door has been opened.

Buttons in the driver door

① Button for window in front left door
② Button for window in front right door

Buttons for rear windows

③ Safety switch[9] for disabling the power window buttons in the rear doors
④ Button[9] for window in rear left door
⑤ Button[9] for window in rear right door

Safety switch

Safety switch ③ in the driver door can be used to disable the power window in the rear doors.

The symbol in the safety switch is not illuminated: the buttons in the rear doors are "on."

The symbol in the safety switch is illuminated: the buttons in the rear doors are "off."

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power windows can result in serious personal injury.

- **Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.**
- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Unsupervised use of keys can result in use of vehicle systems such as power windows leading to serious personal injury. The power windows will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **When children are in the back seat, use the safety switch to disable the rear power windows and prevent them from being opened and closed.**

Tips

If something obstructs the window while it is going up, the window will stop and then automatically go down again ⇒ page 40. If this happens, see why the window could not close before attempting to close it again. ◀

[9] Where applicable

One-touch opening and closing

With the One-touch opening and closing feature, you do not have to hold the button.

The buttons ⇒ page 38, fig. 33 for the windows have two positions for opening the window and two for closing it. This makes it easier to open or close windows to the desired position.

One-touch closing

– Pull the button up briefly to the second position. The window closes completely.

One-touch opening

– Push the button down briefly to the second position. The window opens completely.

Reactivating one-touch opening and closing

– The one-touch opening and closing feature will not work after the vehicle battery has been disconnected or if the battery is dead. You will have to re-activate this function.

– Close all windows and all doors ⇒ ⚠ in "Power windows" on page 38.

– Lock the vehicle from outside using your key and hold the key in the lock position for at least one second. The one-touch function is now ready for operation.

If you push (or pull) a button to the first position, the window will open (or close) until you release the button. If you push (or pull) the button briefly to the second position, the window will open *(one-touch opening)* or close *(one-touch closing)* automatically. If you push or pull the button while the window is opening or closing, the window will stop.

One-touch closing does not work when the ignition has been switched off.

The one-touch feature will not work if there is a malfunction in the power windows. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop to have the malfunction corrected. ◀

Pinch protection

The windows have a pinch protection feature that helps reduce the risk of injuries when the windows are closing.

- If a window is obstructed when closing, the window will stop and go down again ⇒ ⚠.
- If this happens, see why the window could not close before attempting to close it again. If you try to close the window again within 10 seconds, the window's closing force is automatically increased.
- If the window is still obstructed, the window will stop at this point.
- If there is no obvious reason why the window cannot be closed, try to close it again within 10 seconds. **The pinch protection is now off. The window closes with maximum force.**

If you wait longer than the 10 seconds described above, the window will open fully when you operate one of the buttons. One-touch closing is on again.

The one-touch function and pinch protection do not work if there is a malfunction in the power windows. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop to have the malfunction corrected.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power windows can result in serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it.**
- **Always make sure that no one is in the way when while overriding the pinch protection to close a window!**
- **When locking the vehicle from the outside, make sure that no one, especially children, remains in the vehicle. The windows will not open in case of an emergency.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. Unsupervised use of keys can result in use of vehicle systems such as power windows leading to serious personal injury.**
- **The power windows will continue to operate until the ignition key has been removed and one of the front doors has been opened.**
- **When children are in the back seat, use the safety switch to disable the rear power windows and prevent them from being opened and closed.**

Tips

This pinch protection feature is switched off when the windows are closed from the outside using the ignition key for convenience closing ⇒ page 40.

Convenience opening and closing

You can open or close the windows from outside the vehicle.

Convenience closing

– Hold the key in the lock of the driver's door in the lock position, until all windows are closed.

– Release the to stop interrupt the operation.

Convenience opening

– Hold the key in the lock of the driver's door in the unlock position, until all windows are open.

– Release the key to interrupt the operation.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power windows can result in serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never let anyone get in the way of a power window when closing it. ◀

Power roof

Applies to vehicles: with power roof

Opening and closing the power roof

You can open and close the power roof using the rotary control when the ignition is switched on.

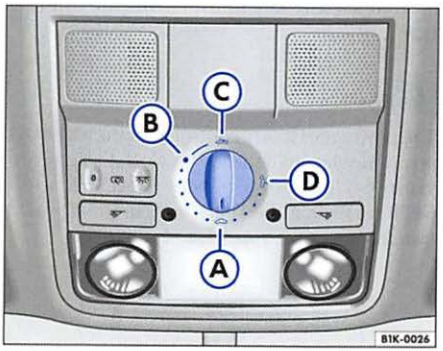


Fig. 34 Section of roof: rotary control for power roof

Opening the power roof

– Turn the rotary control to position ⇒ fig. 34 Ⓑ. The roof opens to the convenience position where wind noise is reduced.

– To open the roof more, turn the switch to position Ⓒ and hold the switch in this position until the roof opens to the desired position.

Tilting the power roof

– Turn the rotary control to position Ⓓ.

Closing the power roof

– Turn the rotary control to position Ⓐ ⇒ ⚠.

Always close the power roof fully if you park the vehicle or leave it unattended ⇒ ⚠.

The power roof can be operated for 10 minutes after the ignition has been switched off, provided the driver's door and the front passenger's door are not opened.

Sunshade

The sunshade automatically opens when you open the sunroof. If you prefer, you can close the sunshade when the power roof is closed.

⚠ WARNING

Without pinch protection ⇒ page 42 , the power roof will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that no one is in the way when while overriding the pinch protection to close the power roof!**
- **Always be careful when closing the power roof. Pinch protection will not always be able to prevent serious injuries under all circumstances.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the power roof can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that no one is in the way of the power roof when it is closing. There is no pinch protection when closing the power roof from outside.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave children or disabled persons in the vehicle particularly if they have access to the keys. Unsupervised use of a key could mean that the engine is started or that electrical equipment is used (e. g. power windows, power roof). The doors can be locked with the remote control key trapping people in the vehicle in an emergency.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The power roof will work until one of the front doors is opened and the key removed from the ignition.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with power windows and power roof

Convenience closing

You can close the power roof from outside the vehicle. The windows will close first, and then the power roof ⇒ ⚠ in "Opening and closing the power roof" on page 41 .

– Hold the key in the lock of the driver's door in the close position , until the power roof is completely closed.

– Release the key to interrupt the operation.

Tips

The power roof rotary control remains in the last position selected if the roof is closed using convenience closing from outside the vehicle and will have to be turned back to its original position the next time you drive. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with power roof

Power roof – pinch protection

The power roof has *pinch protection* that helps prevent larger objects getting trapped when the roof is closed. The pinch protection does not however prevent fingers from getting pinched against the roof opening. The power roof stops and opens again immediately if it is obstructed by a larger object when closing.

If the power roof has been opened again by the pinch protection, it can be closed only by pressing back the rotary control back to position ⇒ page 41, fig. 34 Ⓐ until the power roof has closed fully. **Please note that the roof will now close without pinch protection.**

If the power roof still does not close, you will have to use the *emergency operation function* ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Emergency closing or opening."

⚠ WARNING

Without pinch protection, the power roof will close with enough force to cause serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that no one is in the way when while overriding the pinch protection to close the power roof!**
- **The pinch protection feature does not prevent fingers getting pinched against the roof opening.** ◀

Lights and a clear view

Lights

Switching the lights on and off

Fig. 35 Section of instrument panel: switch for the headlights, automatic headlight control and front fog lights

Daytime running lights[10)]

– Daytime running lights are on whenever the ignition is switched on and the headlight switch is in position O ⇒ fig. 35.

Switch on the headlights

– To switch on the headlightst, turn the light switch to ⇒ fig. 35 ≡D ⇒ ⚠.

Switching on low and high beam

– Turn the light switch to ≡D. For more information on high beam and headlight flasher ⇒ page 46.

– The low beam will only work with the ignition on. When you start the engine, the headlights go off to reduce drain on the battery and only the parking lights will be on.

Switching off the headlights

– Turn the light switch to position O.

Switching on the fog lights[10)]

– Pull the switch out of position ≡D.

Daytime running lights[10)]

Leave the light switch in position O. The daytime running lights come on automatically when you switch on the ignition.

When the ignition is on and the parking brake is engaged, the daytime running lights switch off automatically. When the parking brake is fully released, the daytime running lights switch on again automatically.

Fog lights[10)]

When the fog lights are switched on, an indicator light ≡D in the instrument cluster comes on. This is to remind you that you have the fog lights are on. If "automatic headlight control" is switched on, you cannot switch on the fog lights.

Dynamic headlight range control

Vehicles with gas discharge lamps[10)] ("Xenon light") are equipped with dynamic headlight range control. This means that the headlights will adjust themselves to match the load level of the vehicle. They will also adjust to nodding movements when driving off or braking.

> ⚠ **WARNING**
>
> **Crashes and other accidents can happen when you cannot see the road ahead and when you cannot be seen by other motorists.**
>
> - **Never use daytime running lights to see where you are going. They are not bright enough and will not let you see far enough ahead for safety especially at dusk or when it is** ▶

[10)] Where applicable

⚠ WARNING (continued)

dark. Always switch on the low beam at dusk or when it is dark.

- **Rear tail lights do not light up when daytime running lights are on. A vehicle without rear tail lights turned on cannot be seen by others in bad weather at dusk or when its dark.**
- **Always turn on the headlights before dusk and in rain or fog so that you can see ahead and so that others can see your vehicle from the back.**

Tips

- If you remove the key from the ignition lock with the lights still on, a buzzer will sound when you open the driver's door to remind you to turn the lights off.
- Always observe local ordinances and traffic regulations when using your lights.

Tips

In cool or damp weather conditions the headlight lenses can fog over temporarily.

- The critical factor is the temperature difference between the interior and the exterior of the headlight lens.
- With the main beams switched on, the light-emitting area will be free of condensation after a short time, however the edges of the glass may still be fogged. The rear lights and turn signals may also be affected.
- This physical phenomenon has no effect on the life of the lighting system of your vehicle. ◀

Instrument cluster lighting

Fig. 36 Section of the dash panel: control for instrument lighting

Instrument cluster lighting

– Turn the thumbwheel ⇒ fig. 36 to adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster lighting. The headlights must be on when you do this to adjust the brightness of the instrument cluster. ◀

Emergency flasher switch ⚠

Use the emergency flasher delete space to draw the attention o your vehicle in case of an emergency.

Fig. 37 Section of instrument panel: switch for the emergency flasher

In an emergency situation:

1. Park your vehicle a safe distance from moving traffic.

2. Press button ⇒ fig. 37 ⚠ to switch on the emergency flasher ⇒ ⚠.

3. Switch the engine off.

4. Set the parking brake.

5. Move the gearshift lever into neutral (Manual transmission) or the selector lever to the **P** position (Automatic transmission).

6. Use a warning triangle or other warning equipment to draw the attention of other motorists to your vehicle.

7. Always take the key w... you must leave the vehicle.

You should use the emergency flasher under the following situations:

- when you approach a traffic jam
- if your vehicle has a break down
- if your vehicle is being towed or if you are towing a vehicle
- if you find yourself in a dangerous situation

All turn signals flash simultaneously. The two turn signal Indicator lights ⇦⇨ and the light in the switch ⚠ will flash at the same time. The emergency flasher also works when the ignition is switched off.

⚠ WARNING

A vehicle stalled or stopped on or beside a highway can be struck by other vehicles and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

- **Whenever stalled or stopped for repair, move the vehicle a safe distance off the road, turn of the emergency flasher, stop the engine and use a warning triangle or similar device to warn approaching traffic.**
- **Never park the vehicle in areas where the hot catalytic converter and exhaust system can come in contact with dry grass, brush, fuel spill or other material that can cause fire.**

i Tips

You can discharge the vehicle battery if you leave the emergency flasher on for a long time. ◀

.gnal ⇦ ⇨ and high beam lever ≣D

.ne turn signal and high beam lever also operates the headlight flasher.

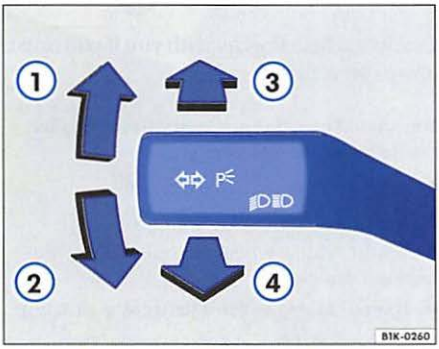


Fig. 38 Turn signal and high beam lever

The turn signal and high beam lever has the following functions:

Using the turn signals

– Move the lever all the way up ⇒ fig. 38 ① to indicate a **right** turn, and all the way down ② to indicate a **left** turn.

Changing lanes

– Move the lever either up ① or down ② just the point of resistance, then release it. The turn signal will blink three times if you have convenience indicator switched on. The corresponding turn signal indicator will blink as well.

Switching the high beam on and off

– Turn the light switch to ≣D.

– Press the lever forward to position ③ to switch on the high beams.

– Pull the lever back toward the steering wheel ④ and beyond the detent in the switch to turn the high beam off again.

Headlight flasher

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel ④ to operate the flasher.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the headlight flasher or the high beams can distract other drivers causing a crash and serious personal injury.

- **Never use the headlight flasher and high beams when they will blind or distract other motorists.**
- **Always use the turn signals when changing lanes to alert other motorists.**

Tips

- The *turn signals* only work when the ignition is switched on. The corresponding warning light ⇦ or ⇨ flashes in the instrument cluster.
- If a turn signal bulb is defective, the warning light in the instrument cluster will flash. You should have the bulb replaced ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Changing a light bulb."
- The *high beam* can be only be switched on if the headlights are on. The indicator light ≣D then comes on in the instrument cluster.
- The *headlight flasher* comes on for as long as you pull the lever – even if no other lights are switched on. The indicator light ≣D then comes on in the instrument cluster.
- If the turn signal lever is left on, a buzzer sounds when the driver door is opened, even if the key is left in the ignition lock. This is a reminder to switch off the turn signal. ◀

Interior lights

Interior light in the front

Fig. 39 Section of roof: front interior light

Use the rocker switch ⇒ fig. 39 to select the following positions:

Door contact switch

If the rocker switch is in the middle position, the door contact switch is turned on. The front and rear interior lights come on automatically as soon as you unlock the vehicle, open a door or remove the ignition key. The light goes out about 20 seconds after the doors are closed. When the vehicle is locked or when the ignition is turned on, the interior lights are turned off.

Interior light switched on

Press the symbol on the rocker switch to switch on a front or rear interior light. The light will stay on.

Interior light switched off 0

Press the 0 symbol on the rocker switch to switch off a front or rear interior light.

Glove compartment light

The light comes on automatically when the compartment is opened and switches off when you close the compartment.

Luggage compartment light

The light comes on automatically when your open the rear lid and goes off when you close it.

Tips

If you should leave one of the vehicle doors open, the interior lights will switch off after about 10 minutes, provided you have taken your key with you and that interior light switch is in the courtesy light position. This prevents the battery from discharging. ◀

Front reading lights

Fig. 40 Section of roof: front reading lights

Switching on the reading lights

Press the corresponding button ⇒ fig. 40 to switch on the reading light. ◀

Background lighting

The background lighting lights up control elements in the center console.

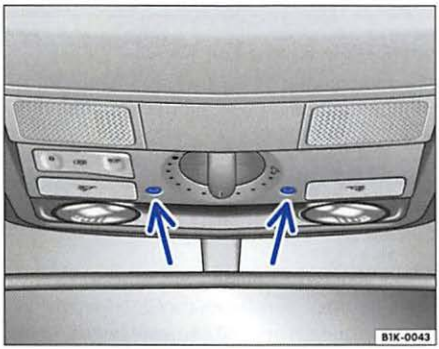


Fig. 41 Section of the roof: background lighting

The background lighting ⇒ fig. 41 -arrows- will function when the ignition and the headlights are switched on. The center console is illuminated from above.

◀

Rear interior light and rear reading lights

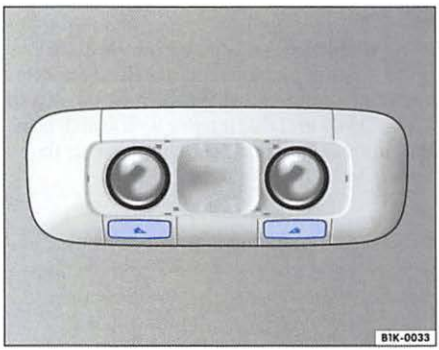


Fig. 42 Section of roof: rear interior light and reading lights

Switching on the reading lights

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 42 to switch on the reading light.

Switching off the reading lights

– Press the button to switch off the reading light.

Tips

- If all the doors are not closed, the interior lights go off after about 10 minutes if the ignition key is removed and the door contact circuit is switched on. This prevents the battery from discharging.
- There are various versions of the rear interior and reading lights, depending on your vehicle model and its equipment. ◀

Clear vision

Sun visors

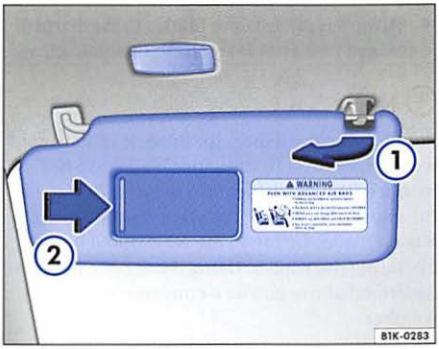


Fig. 43 Sun visors on the driver side

The sun visor for the driver and the front passenger can be pulled out of its retaining clip in the center of the vehicle and turned toward the doors ⇒ fig. 43 ①.

The make-up mirrors in the sun visors have covers. When you open the cover ②, the light in the headliner comes on.

Tips

- Before you leave your vehicle, make sure that the make-up mirror cover in the visor is closed.
- When the ignition key is removed, the light in the headliner goes out after about 10 minutes. This prevents the battery from discharging. ◀

Windshield wipers

Windshield wipers

The windshield wiper lever operates both the windshield wipers and the windshield washing systems.

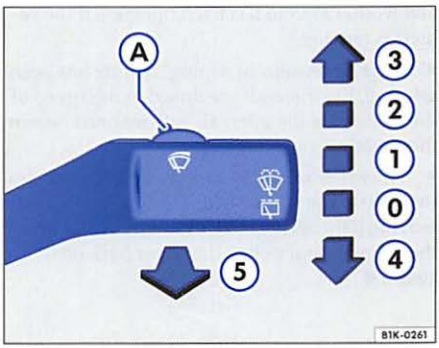


Fig. 44 Windshield wiper and windshield washing lever

The washer and windshield wiper work only when the ignition is switched on. The windshield wiper lever ⇒ fig. 44 has the following settings:

Intermittent wiping (windshield)

– Move the lever up to position ①

– Turn the lever Ⓐ to either shorten or lengthen the interval. Turn the lever to the left to lengthen the frequency and make the wipers faster in the intermittent mode. Turn the lever to the right to shorten the frequency and make the wipers move more slowly in the intermittent mode.

Slow wipe

– Move the lever up to position ②.

Continuous wipe

– Move the lever up to position ③. ▶

Brief wiping

– Move the lever down to position ④ to give the windshield a *brief* wipe. The wiper will begin to move faster if you keep the lever pressed down for longer than 2 seconds.

Switching off the wipers

– Move the lever up to position ⓪.

Windshield wiper and washer system (windshield)

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel to position ⑤.

– Release the lever again. The wipers will continue to wipe for about 4 seconds.

The washers and wipers will work only when the ignition is switched on.

Service position / winter position

The windshield wipers will move to the "Service position", if you switch the ignition on briefly and then turn it off again, while pressing the windshield wiper lever down ④. The windshield wiper arms can be moved forward "Winter position" so that they do not freeze to the windshield. The windshield wiper arms will have to be pushed back onto the windshield before driving off.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades will reduce visibility and increase the risk of collisions and serious injury.

- **Never use the front wiper/washer in freezing weather without first defrosting the windshield. The washer solution may freeze on the window and reduce visibility.**
- **Always clean the windshield wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **Always replace wiper blades that are worn, damaged or do not keep the windshield clear.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Note

Before using the wipers for the first time in cold weather, make sure the wiper blades are not frozen to the windshield. To prevent damage to the wiper blades and the wiper motor, always loosen blades frozen to the windshield before operating the wipers. Using the service position described above can be a convenience in cold weather.

Tips

- The windshield wipers will only work when the ignition is switched on and the engine hood is closed.
- The previous wiping speed will be automatically selected when the vehicle stops, when wiping speed ⇒ page 49, fig. 44 ② or ③ is selected. The selected wiping speed will resume when the vehicle drives off again.
- The windshield will be wiped again after about five seconds once the windshield wiper and washer system has been operated if the vehicle is moving.
- If the "intermittent wiping" feature has been selected, the intervals are linked to the speed of the vehicle i.e. the intervals will be shorter when the vehicle is traveling faster.
- The wiper will try to wipe away any obstacles that are on the windshield. The wiper will stop moving if the obstacle blocks its path. Remove the obstacle and switch the wiper back on again. ◀

Rear window wiper

The wiper and the automatic wipe/wash function for the rear window is operated through the windshield wiper lever..

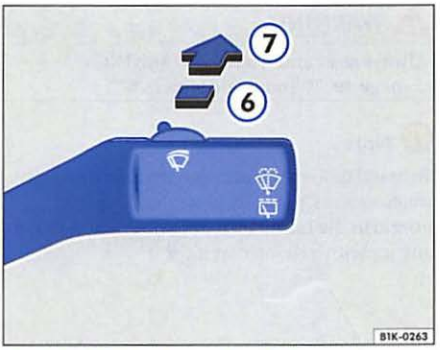


Fig. 45 Windshield wiper lever: Rear window wiper

Switching intermittent wipe on

– Push the lever forward until it engages ⇒ fig. 45 ⑥. The wiper operates about every 6 seconds.

Switching intermittent wipe off

– Pull the lever back towards the steering wheel ⑥ If you switched off the wipers during the wiping action, the wiper can continue to run briefly.

Switching on automatic wipe/wash function

– Push the lever fully forward to position ⑦. The washer system operates immediately, while the wiper starts to wipe a little later. The wiper/washer system will operate as long as you hold the lever in this position.

– Release the lever. The wiper will continue to operate for about 4 seconds, after that intermittently.

⚠ WARNING

- **A worn or dirty windshield wiper blade reduces vision and compromises safety.**
- **Always heed the warnings in ⇒ booklet 3.2, chapter "Replacing windshield wiper blades"**

Note

In frosty weather check whether the windshield blade is frozen to the windshield before switching on the wipers for the first time. If you switch on the windshield wiper when the blade is frozen to the windshield, both the wiper blade and the wiper motor can be damaged.

Tips

- The rear window wiper and washer operate only with the ignition switched on and with the rear hatch closed
- The rear window wiper switches on automatically when the windshield wipers are switched on and reverse gear (manual transmission) or selector lever position R has been engaged. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with headlight washer system

Headlight washer system

The headlight washer system cleans the headlights

After the ignition is switched on, the headlights are washed the first time and then every fifth time the windshield washer system is used, when the windshield wiper lever ⇒ page 49, fig. 44 ⑤ is pulled back towards the steering wheel – while the low or high beams are turned on. However, at regular intervals, for example when refueling, stubborn dirt (such as insect remains) should be removed from the headlight lenses.

⚠ WARNING

Always read and heed the WARNINGS ⇒ page 49, "Windshield wipers"

Note

To avoid damage, make sure that the headlight washers work properly in winter. Keep the nozzle in the bumper free of snow and remove any ice with a de-icer spray. ◀

Mirrors

Inside day-night mirror

It is important for safe driving that you have good vision to the rear.

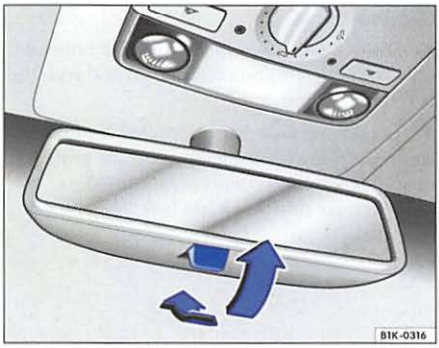


Fig. 46 Inside day-night mirror

With the mirror in the normal position, the lever ⇒ fig. 46 at the bottom edge of the mirror must point forward. Pull the lever back to dim the mirror. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with power outside mirrors

Outside mirrors

It is important for safe driving to properly adjust the outside mirrors using the joystick in the center console.

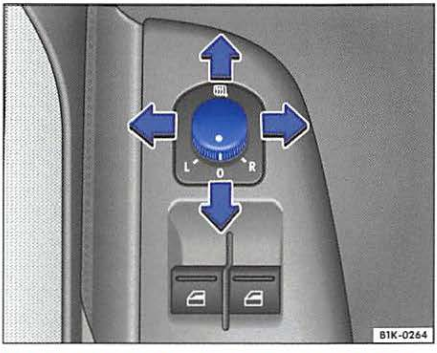


Fig. 47 Section of the driver's door: joystick for the outside mirrors

Basic setting for the outside mirrors

1. Turn the joystick ⇒ fig. 47 to L (**left outside mirror**).

2. Move the joystick to adjust the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle. If synchronized mirror setting is active in the convenience functions menu, the right mirror is adjusted at the same time ⇒ page 16.

3. Turn the joystick to R (**right outside mirror**).

4. Turn the joystick to adjust the mirror so that you have a good view to the rear of the vehicle.

Outside mirror heating

– Turn the joystick to , to heat the outside mirrors. It is important for safe driving that you have a good view to the rear.

Switching off heated exterior mirror

– Turn the rotary knob to the **0**,position to switch off the heated exterior mirror.

Simultaneous mirror adjustment[11)]

– In the "Convenience functions menu" ⇒ page 16, select whether you want to adjust the exterior mirrors individually or simultaneously. For simultaneous adjustment, you adjust the exterior mirrors as follows:

1. Turn the rotary knob to position L (**left exterior mirror**).

2. Adjust the mirror by turning the rotary knob so that you have a good view to the rear. The **right exterior mirror** is adjusted simultaneously (synchronously). You may have to correct the adjustment of the right mirror.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrectly estimating distances with the right outside mirror can cause collisions and serious injury

- **The right outside mirror has a convex (curved) surface. Vehicles or other objects seen in a convex mirror will look smaller and farther away than they really are.**
- **If you use the right outside mirror to judge distances from vehicles behind you when changing lanes, you could estimate incorrectly and cause a crash.**
- **Whenever possible, use the inside mirror to more accurately judge distance and size of vehicles or other objects seen in the convex mirror.**

11) Where applicable

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Make sure that you do not get your finger trapped between the mirror and the mirror base when moving the mirrors.
- Always make sure you have a good vision to the rear.

For the sake of environment

The exterior mirror heating should be switched off when it is no longer needed otherwise you waste fuel. ◀

Seats and storage

Why is seat adjustment so important?

Proper seat adjustment increases the level of protection offered by seat belts and airbags.

Your vehicle has **five** seating positions. Two in the front and three in the rear seats. Each seating positions has safety belt.

The driver's seat and front passenger's seat can be adjusted in many ways to suit the physical needs of the vehicle occupants. Seat position is very important for:

- fast and easy operation of all controls on the instrument panel,
- relaxed posture that does not cause fatigue,
- safe driving,
- optimum protection from the safety belts and airbag system ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first."

⚠ WARNING

Drivers or passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by an airbag as it unfolds. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always adjust the driver's seat and the steering wheel so that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between your breastbone and the steering wheel.**
- **Always hold the steering wheel on the outside of the steering wheel rim with your hands at the 9 o'clock and 3 o'clock positions to help reduce the risk of personal injury if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Never hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or with your hands at other positions inside the steering wheel rim or on the steering wheel hub. Holding the steering wheel the wrong way can cause serious injuries to the hands, arms and head if the driver's airbag inflates.**
- **Passengers must always sit in an upright position and never lean against or place any**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

part of their body too close to the area where the airbags are located.

- **Passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured by an airbag as it unfolds with great force in the blink of an eye.**
- **Always make sure that there are at least 10 inches (25 cm) between the front passenger's breastbone and the instrument panel.**
- **Each passenger must always sit on a seat of their own and properly fasten and wear the safety belt belonging to that seat.**
- **Before driving, always adjust the front seats and head restraints properly.**
- **Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.**
- **Always keep your feet on the floor in front of the seat. Never rest them on the seat, instrument panel, out of the window, etc. The airbag system and safety belt will not be able to protect you properly and can even increase the risk of injury in a crash.**
- **Never drive with the backrest reclined or tilted far back! The farther the backrests are tilted back, the greater the risk of injury due to incorrect positioning of the safety belt and improper seating position.**
- **Safety belts only offer maximum protection when the seatback is securely latched in the upright position and the safety belts are properly positioned on the body. By not sitting upright, a rear seat passenger increases the risk of personal injury from improperly positioned safety belts!**
- **Children must always ride in child seats. Special precautions apply when installing a child seat on the front passenger seat** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

? booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Child safety." ◀

Head restraints

Correct adjustment of head restraints

Properly adjusted head restraints are an important part of occupant protection and can help to reduce the risk of injuries in accidents.

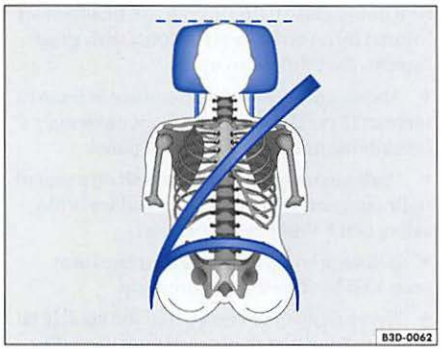


Fig. 48 Viewed from in front: properly adjusted head restraints and proper belt adjustment

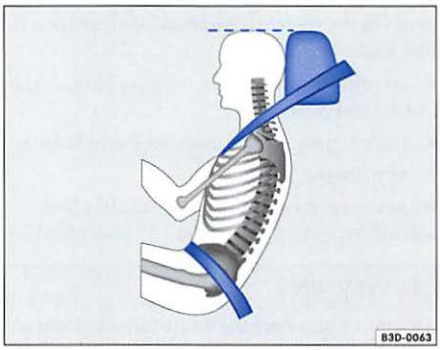


Fig. 49 Viewed from side: properly adjusted head restraints and proper belt adjustment

– Adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible ⇒ fig. 48 and ⇒ fig. 49.

Adjusting the head restraints ⇒ page 57

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision. To help reduce the risk of injury:

- Always drive with the head restraints in place and properly adjusted.
- Every person in the vehicle must have a properly adjusted head restraint.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always make sure each person in the vehicle properly adjusts their head restraint. Each headrest must be adjusted according to occupant size so that the upper edge is as even with the top of the person's head, but no lower than eye level and so it is as close to the back of to the head as possible.
- Never attempt to adjust head restraint while driving. If you have driven off and must adjust the driver headrest for any reason, first stop the vehicle safely before attempting to adjust the head restraint.
- Children must always be properly restrained in a child restraint that is appropriate for their age and size ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Child safety." ◀

Removing and adjusting head restraints

You can adjust the head restraints by moving them up and down.

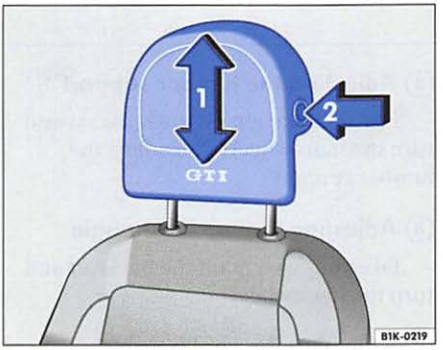


Fig. 50 Adjusting and removing the head restraints

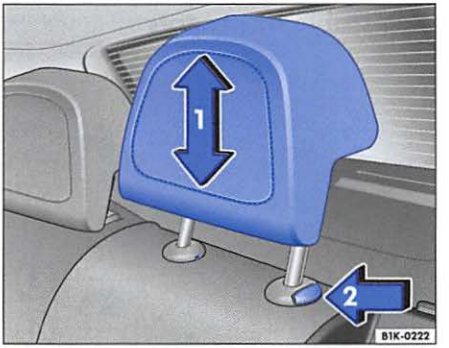


Fig. 51 Adjusting and removing the rear head restraints

Adjusting the height

– Hold the side of the head restraint.

– Push the head restraint up in the direction of the arrow or, with the button pressed ⇒ fig. 50 ② or ⇒ fig. 51 ② down. Correct height: ⇒ page 56.

– Make sure that it engages securely in position.

Removing the head restraints

– Push the head restraint up as far as it will go.

– Hold the button ⇒ fig. 50 ② or ⇒ fig. 51 ② down and remove the head restraint at the same time.

Installing the head restraint

– Insert the head restraint into guides on the rear backrest.

– Push down the head restraint.

– Adjust the head restraint for the person using the seat ⇒ page 56.

The center rear head restraint was developed only for the center position on the rear seat. Do not install the head restraint in other positions.

⚠ WARNING

Driving without head restraints or with improperly adjusted head restraints increases the risk of serious injuries in a collision.

- **If the center head restraint does not fit your seated height when fully extended, move to another seating position to reduce the risk of injury in a collision.**

ℹ Tips

The center head restraint on the rear seat **cannot** be adjusted for height. ◀

Front seats

Applies to vehicles: with manually adjustable front seats

Adjustable front seats

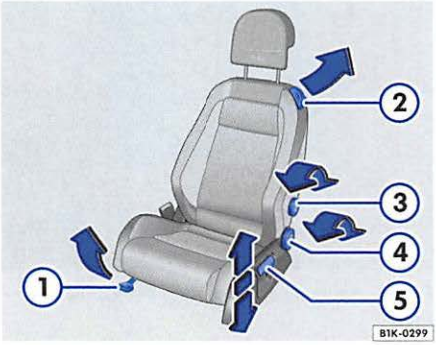


Fig. 52 Operating elements for adjustable seats (driver's seat)

In the front passenger seat the adjustment controls in ⇒ fig. 52 are arranged in reverse.

① Adjusting the seat forward and backward

– Pull up the lever and move the seat forward or backward ⇒ ⚠.

– Release the lever ① and slightly move the seat until it latches into place.

② Folding seat back forward and backwards

– To **fold forward** the seat back, pull the lever ② (only 2-door vehicles) up and fold the seatback forward. At the same time you can slide the seat to the front to make entry into the back seat of the vehicle easier.

– To **fold backwards** the seat back, first slide the seat **completely** back, then pull the lever ② up and fold the seat back backwards.

③ Adjusting the lumbar support[12)]

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel ③ to adjust the lumbar support.

④ Adjusting the backrest angle

– Take your weight off the backrest and turn the handwheel ④.

⑤ Adjusting the seat height

– Pump the lever ⑤ up or down to raise or lower the seat.

The curvature of the cushioned area is determined by the settings made in the lumbar region. This supports the natural curvature of the spine very effectively.

⚠ WARNING

Drivers or passengers who are unbelted, out of position or too close to the airbag can be seriously injured or killed by an airbag as it unfolds ⇒ ⚠ in "Why is seat adjustment so important?" on page 55.

⚠ WARNING

- **Never adjust the seats while the vehicle is moving. Your seat may move unexpectedly and you could lose control of the vehicle.**
- **To reduce the risk of personal injury in an accident, front seat passengers must never ride in a moving vehicle with the seatback reclined. Safety belts offer protection only when the seatback is upright and belts are properly positioned on the body. The more the seatback is reclined, the greater the risk of personal injury from an out of position safety belt.**
- **Caution when adjusting the seat for height or in the for-and-aft direction. Adjusting the**

12) Where applicable

⚠ WARNING (continued)

front seat carelessly or without checking can pinch fingers or limbs risk of injury.

Tips

- Depending on the particular model, there may be differences in the controls. For example, on some seats mechanical and power controls may be combined.
- The controls for the passenger's seat may differ from those of the driver's seat. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with seat heating

Heated front seats

The seat cushions and backrests of the front seats can be heated electrically.

Fig. 53 Detail of instrument panel: thumb wheels for front seat heating

– Turn the left or right wheel ⇒ fig. 53. The seat heating is switched off in the **0** position.

The seat heating only works when the ignition is switched on. The left thumb wheel controls the left seat and the right thumb wheel controls the right seat.

Note

Do not kneel on the seat or apply sharp pressure at a single point to the seat cushion and backrest. This can damage the heating elements.

For the sake of environment

The heating for the seats should remain on only as long as it is needed. Otherwise fuel is used unnecessarily. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with front center armrest

Front center arm rest

The center arm rest can be adjusted for height.

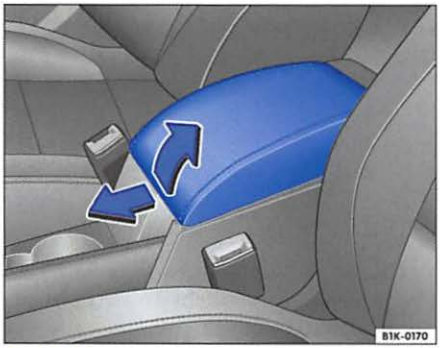


Fig. 54 Front center armrest

Adjusting armrest for height

– Lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 54 gradually until it latches into the desired position.

– To lower the armrest, you must first lift it all the way up. Then you will be able to lower it down.

Forward-and-backward adjustment of armrest

– Pull the armrest fully forward until it latches or push the center armrest all the way back.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> **Striking an open armrest cover can cause serious injury in a crash.**
>
> - **Always keep the armrest closed when the vehicle is moving.**
> - **Make sure that no one is in the way when closing the cover of the storage compartment.** ◀

Rear seat

Rear center armrest

– Pull on the loop and fold the armrest forward.

– To **fold it back**, lift the armrest to the rear as far as it can go.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - **Never allow a passenger to sit on the center rear seat if the storage compartment is folded out. Improper seating position can increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.** ◀

Folding rear seatback forward

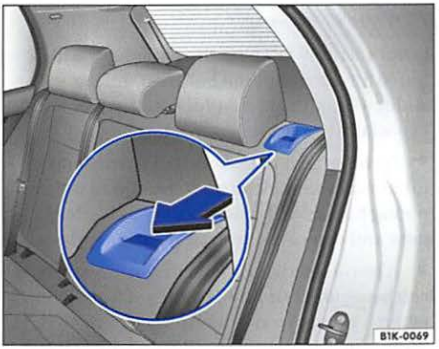


Fig. 55 Rear seat backrest: unlocking

Fig. 56 Rear seat: rear seat backrest folded forward

The rear seatback is split for folding. Both sections can be folded forward individually.

– First move the driver's seat and front passenger's seat as far forward as possible.

– Pull the release handle in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 55 and fold the backrest forward at the same time.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let passengers ride on the rear load surface in the luggage compartment area or sit on the folded down backrests. Passengers who are not properly wearing their safety belts risk serious injuries and even death in a collision.**

Note

In order to prevent seat damage, the front seat cushion must be fixed in its normal horizontal position before the backrest can be folded forward so that the rear seat backrest does not press against the front seat. ◀

Folding rear seatback up again

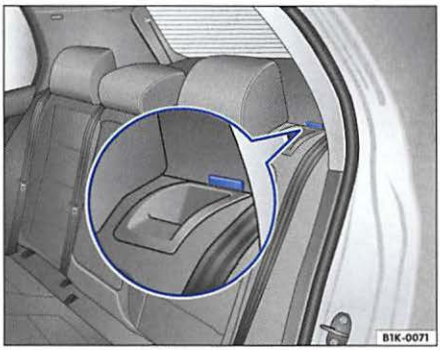


Fig. 57 Seatback latch for the rear seat

– Fold the backrest backwards and press it back firmly until it latches. The red mark on the release button should no longer be visible ⇒ fig. 57.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioned safety belts can cause serious personal injury in an accident.

- Caution when folding the seatback up. Folding the seatback up carelessly or without checking or can pinch fingers or limbs.
- Safety belts offer optimum protection only when the seat back is upright and belts are correctly positioned on the body.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrest to which the center rear safety belt is attached is securely latched whenever the rear center safety belt is being used. If the backrest

⚠ WARNING (continued)

is not securely latched, the passenger will move forward with the backrest during sudden braking, in a sudden maneuver and especially in a crash.

- Never attach the safety belt to the buckle for another seat. Attaching the belt to the wrong buckle will reduce safety belt effectiveness and can cause serious personal injury.
- A passenger who is not correctly restrained can be seriously injured by the safety belt itself when it moves from the stronger parts of the body into sensitive areas like the abdomen.
- Never let the safety belts become trapped between the seat and the side of the vehicle when raising the seatbacks. A trapped safety belt can be damaged so that it cannot help to reduce the risk of injury in a crash.
- Always make sure that rear seat safety belts are in their proper position and able to be used after the rear seat backrests have been securely latched in the upright position.
- Always make sure that the rear seat backrests are securely latched after moving them back to the upright position. to properly latch it back. Loose items in the luggage compartment can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.
- A red mark on the backrest latch ⇒ fig. 57 shows that the backrest is not securely engaged. When the marker is not visible the backrest is properly and securely latched. Always make sure the mark is not visible after raising the backrests to the upright position. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an opening in the rear backrest to transport long objects

Transporting long items

Your vehicle has an opening in the center of the rear backrest, which enables you to transport long objects, which do not fit in the luggage compartment.

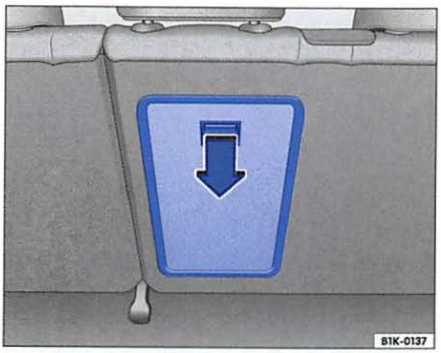


Fig. 58 In the luggage compartment: release button with mark

Opening from the luggage compartment

– Open the rear lid.

– Press down the release button ⇒ fig. 58 in the direction of the arrow and fold the cover toward the interior of the vehicle. When the cover is unlocked a red marking will be visible on the release button.

Loading the long objects inside the vehicle

– Place the long objects through the center opening carefully and secure them with an appropriate strap.

– Close the rear lid.

Closing from the inside the vehicle

– Remove all objects.

– Fold the plastic cover upward and press until you hear it click into place.

– Fold the rear armrest back into place.

⚠ WARNING

Loose luggage or other objects in the vehicle can cause serious personal injury.

- **During sudden braking manoeuvres or accidents, loose objects in the passenger compartment can shift forward, injuring vehicle occupants.**
- **Always secure the objects with the fastening strap so that they cannot be thrown around the interior during a sudden braking maneuver**
- **When you transport heavy objects, always keep in mind that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling.**

Tips

- You can open the pass through from the luggage compartment. Push the release button down and push the cover forward.
- To avoid soiling the interior of your vehicle, wrap dirty objects in a blanket before storing them in the vehicle. ◀

Storage

Glove compartment on the front passenger side

Cooled air can be directed into the glove compartment.

Fig. 59 Front passenger side: glove compartment

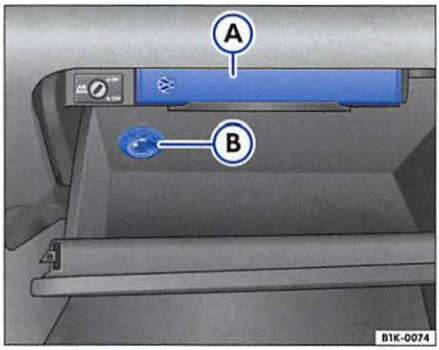


Fig. 60 Passenger's side: open compartment with vehicle literature Ⓐ and air vent Ⓑ.

Opening the compartment by pulling the lever ⇒ fig. 59. It is locked when the key slot is horizontal.

Storage for the vehicle literature

The vehicle literature ⇒ fig. 60 Ⓐ is kept in the upper storage. The vehicle literature should always be kept in this compartment.

Cooling the glove compartment

There is an air outlet on the left of the rear panel Ⓑ. If the air conditioning is switched on, cooled air also is directed into the glove compartment.

Turn the air outlet to open and close it. Always close the air outlet when not in use.

⚠ WARNING

An open glove compartment door can increase the risk of serious injury during hard braking or in a crash.

- **Loose items in the glove compartment can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.**
- **Always keep the glove compartment closed properly while when the vehicle is moving.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with front center armrest and one storage compartment

Front center armrest with storage compartment

There is a storage compartment in the center armrest.

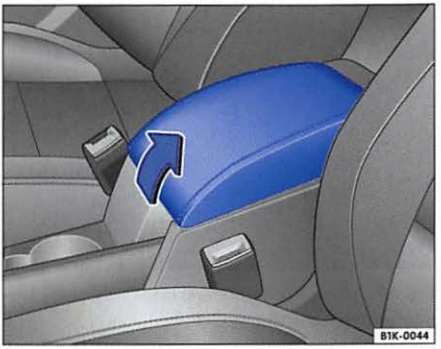


Fig. 61 Front armrest with storage compartment

Opening and closing the storage compartment

– To open the storage compartment lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 61.

– To close the storage compartment, pull down the armrest.

The factory installed **CD changer**[13] is located in this compartment.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always keep the armrest closed when the vehicle is moving to reduce the risk of injury.**
- **Never allow a passenger to sit on the center rear seat if the storage compartment is folded out. Improper seating position can increase the risk of serious injury in a crash.**

Note

Do not keep heat-sensitive items in the front center armrest storage such as audio cassettes, chocolate or medication. ◀

Glasses case in the headliner

The case for eyeglasses is in the center of the roof at the front.

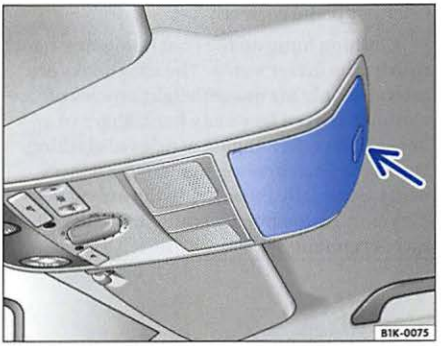


Fig. 62 Case for eyeglasses in roof

– Press the release button ⇒ fig. 62 -arrow- to open. The cover opens automatically.

– To close the cover, press it up until it engages.

⚠ WARNING

Always keep the storage area cover closed while the vehicle is moving to reduce the risk of injury during sudden braking or in the event of an accident and to prevent any items from being thrown through the vehicle interior. ◀

[13] Where applicable

Other storage areas

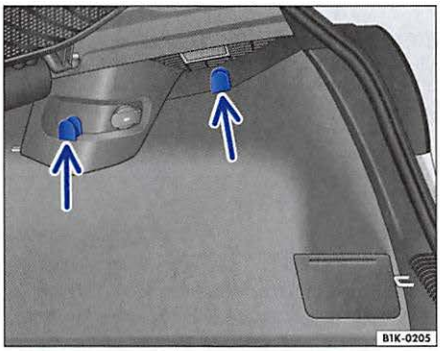


Fig. 63 Shopping bag hooks in the luggage compartment

Fig. 64 Storage compartment in the side of the luggage compartment

Additional storage areas are located in the door trim panels (front and rear) and in the front center console.

The coat hooks are in the rear grab handles in the headliner. There are additional shopping bag hooks on the left and right side of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 63.

You can lift out the side walls of the storage compartments on the left and right sides in the luggage compartment in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 64 to store bulky objects in the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can become airborn missiles, flying through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment or suitable storage compartments.**
- **Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Never place objects on the instrument panel. These objects could fly through the passenger compartment when the vehicle is moving (while accelerating, braking or cornering) and distract the driver. This could cause serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident.**
- **Make sure that no objects can fall from the center console or other storage areas into the driver footwell while the vehicle is moving. In the event of a sudden braking maneuver, you will not be able to use the brake, clutch or accelerator pedal correctly.**
- **Clothing hung on the coat hooks must not restrict the driver's view. The coat hooks are intended only for use with light articles of clothing. Do not leave any hard, sharp or heavy objects in hanging articles of clothing. During sudden braking maneuvers or accidents, especially those involving airbag deployment, these objects could injure the vehicle occupants. ◀**

Cup holders

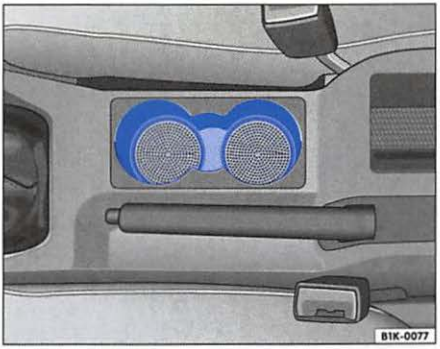


Fig. 65 Cup holders in the center console

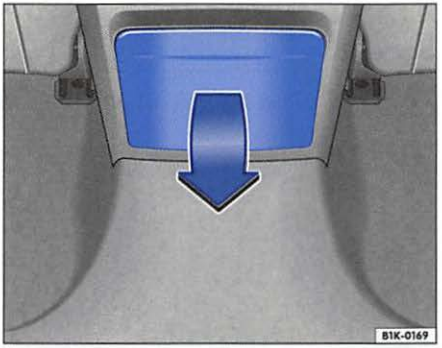


Fig. 66 Cup holder in the rear center console

Cup holders in the front center console

There are two cup holders in the center console.

Cup holders in the rear center console

To open the cup holder, swing the cover ⇒ fig. 66 down in the direction of the arrow.

To close the cupholder, lift the cover up.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the beverage holders can cause injury.

- **Do not place hot drinks in the cup holders. During a normal or sudden maneuver, sudden braking or in an accident, the hot liquid can be spilled and cause burns!**
- **Make certain that the bottles or other objects cannot fall into the driver's footwell while the vehicle is moving. The bottles or items can fall into the footwell and interfere with operating the pedals. In the event of a sudden braking maneuver, you would not be able to apply the brakes, depress the clutch or accelerate – risk of an accident!**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never put hot drinks or liquids in the beverage holder. Hot liquids can spill when the vehicle is moving as well as during braking or other sudden maneuvers.**
- **Never put containers with hot liquids in the cup holders.**
- **Never put heavy cups/beverages or other heavy things in the cup holders. Heavy objects can fly through the passenger compartment in a crash and cause serious injury.**
- **Make sure that no one is in the way when closing the cover of the storage compartment.**
- **Hot liquids can spill in a crash, during hard braking, sudden maneuvers and even cause a collision.**

(!) Note

Do not leave open drinks in the cup holder while the vehicle is moving. The drinks can spill, for example, during braking, for example, and cause damage to the vehicle. ◀

Electrical sockets

Applies to vehicles: with 12 volt sockets

Sockets

An electrical accessory can be connected to each 12 volt socket.

Fig. 67 Socket in the front center console behind a cover

Fig. 68 Socket in the luggage compartment

– Press the cover briefly in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 67 for the socket in the front center console. The cover will open

– To close, push the cover down as far as it will go.

The 12 volt sockets in the front center console and the socket in the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 68 -arrow- can be used for electrical accessories. The power draw at each socket must not exceed 120 watts.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the sockets and electrical accessories can cause fire and serious injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never leave children alone in the vehicle. The electrical sockets and anything connected to them can be used when the ignition is switched off and the key removed.**

Tips

- The 12 Volt sockets work only when the ignition is switched on.
- When the engine is not running and equipment is switched on, the vehicle battery is discharged.
- Before purchasing any accessories, follow the recommendations ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications." ◀

Luggage compartment

Storing luggage

Store all luggage securely.

Observe the following points to make sure the vehicle handles well:

– Distribute the load as evenly as possible.

– Place heavy objects as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.

– Secure luggage in the luggage compartment with suitable straps on the tie-down hooks.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly stored luggage or other items can become airborne missiles, flying through the vehicle causing serious personal injury in the event of hard braking or an accident. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- **Always put objects, for example, luggage or other heavy items in the luggage compartment.**
- **Always secure objects in the luggage compartment using the tie-down hooks and suitable straps.**

⚠ WARNING

Heavy loads will influence the way your vehicle handles and heavy loads that are not properly stowed or secured can cause loss of control and serious injury.

- **Always keep in mind when transporting heavy objects, that a change in the center of gravity can also cause changes in vehicle handling:**
  - **Always distribute the load as evenly as possible.**
  - **Secure heavy objects properly as far forward in the luggage compartment as possible.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - **Always secure heavy items securely using the tie-downs provided with suitable straps.**
- **Never exceed the Gross Axle Weight Rating or the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating on the safety compliance sticker on the left door jamb. Exceeding permissible weight can cause the vehicle to skid and handle differently.**
- **Always read and heed additional important information on safe driving ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first.", chapter "Safe driving"**

⚠ WARNING

To help prevent poisonous exhaust gas from being drawn into the vehicle, always keep the rear lid closed while driving.

- **Never transport objects larger than those fitting completely into the luggage area because the rear lid cannot be fully closed.**
- **If you absolutely must drive with the rear lid open, observe the following notes to reduce the risk of poisoning:**
  - **Close all windows,**
  - **Close the power roof[14],**
  - **Open all air outlets in the instrument panel,**
  - **Switch off the air recirculation,**
  - **Set the fresh air fan to the highest speed.**

⚠ WARNING

Always make sure that the doors and rear lid are securely closed and locked to reduce the risk of injury when the vehicle is not being used.

- **After closing the the rear lid, always make sure that it is properly closed and locked.** ▶

[14] Where applicable

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never leave your vehicle unattended especially with the rear lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the rear lid or window shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury.
- Never let children play in or around the vehicle.
- Never let passengers ride in the luggage compartment. Vehicle occupants must always be properly restrained in one of the vehicle's seating positions.

Note

Hard objects on the luggage compartment cover could damage the wires of the rear window defogger.

Tips

Do not cover the ventilation slots in front of the rear window because this can prevent stale air from escaping the vehicle. ◀

Tie-down hooks

There are tie-down hooks in the luggage compartment for securing items luggage and other items.

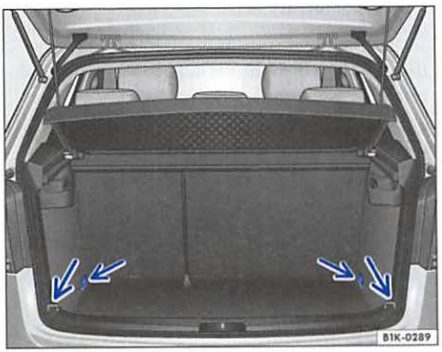


Fig. 69 Section of luggage compartment: tie-down hooks

There are four tie-down hooks in the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 69 -arrows- you can use to secure luggage or other items. There are two hooks at the front of the luggage compartment, one on the left and one on the right side. The other two hooks are located at the rear of the luggage compartment.

The two front hooks must be folded out before they can be used.

⚠ WARNING

If baggage or other items are secured to the hooks with unsuitable or damaged line or straps, the items may come loose during braking, other maneuvers or during collisions and cause injury.

- To prevent baggage or other items from being able to fly forward, always use suitable lines or straps which are securely fastened to the tie-down hooks.
- Never attach a child seat to the tie-down hooks in at the luggage compartment. ◀

Luggage compartment cover

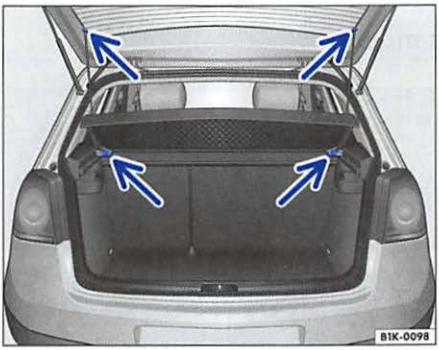


Fig. 70 Removal and installation of luggage compartment cover

When the rear hatch is opened, the luggage compartment cover is automatically lifted at the same time. If you are transporting bulky items, the cover can be removed.

Removing the luggage compartment cover

– Unhook the retaining straps at the rear hatch ⇒ fig. 70 -top arrows-.

– Pull the cover to the rear out of its side-mounted retainers ⇒ page 71, fig. 70 -lower arrows-.

Installing the luggage compartment cover

– Push the cover forward into the side-mounted retainers.

– Install the retaining straps at the rear hatch.

You can place articles of clothing on the luggage compartment cover. But remember that the view to the rear through the rear window can be restricted by the articles of clothing.

⚠ WARNING

Never leave hard, heavy or sharp objects in clothing pockets or lying on the luggage compartment cover. Animals must not ride on the luggage compartment cover. In a sudden braking or avoidance maneuver or in the event of an accident, these objects and animals endanger all the passengers in the vehicle – risk of an injury!

Note

The heating wires or the antenna in the rear glass can be severely damaged by abrasive objects on the luggage compartment cover.

Tips

The ventilation slots below the side mounting points of the luggage compartment cover must not be blocked so that stale air can escape from the vehicle. ◀

Roof rack

Markings for attaching the roof rack mounts

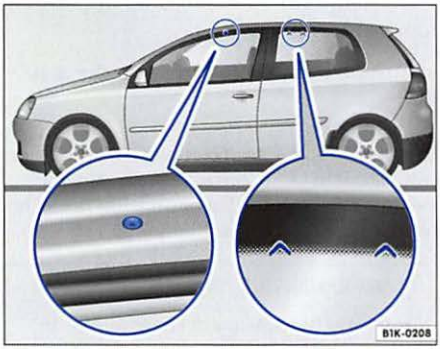


Fig. 71 Attachment points for 2-door vehicles

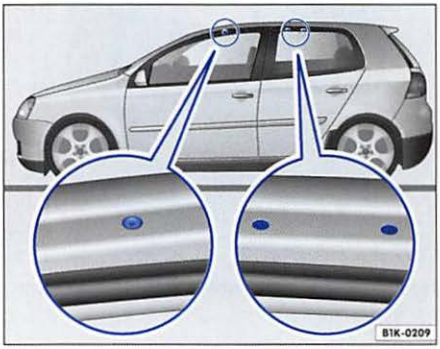


Fig. 72 Attachment points for 4-door vehicles

2-door vehicles

Front: The attachment holes are located on the underside of the roof rails ⇒ fig. 71, visible with the door open.

Rear: The markings are located above the rear side windows ⇒ fig. 71.

4-door vehicles

Front: The attachment holes are located on the underside of the roof rails ⇒ fig. 72, visible with the door open.

Rear: The markings are located on the underside of the roof rails ⇒ fig. 72, visible with the door open.

⚠ WARNING

Installing or using a roof rack improperly can cause the roof rack and anything on it to fly off the vehicle causing collision and serious injury.

- **Always read and heed the WARNINGS and the information ⇒ page 73, "Important notes on using a roof rack".**
- **Always attach the roof rack securely and only at the mounting points shown in the illustrations ⇒ page 72, fig. 71 and ⇒ page 72, fig. 72.** ◀

Important notes on using a roof rack

Always follow the instructions provided with the roof rack.

The roof rack system must always be installed exactly according to the instructions provided.

- Your vehicle has special roof rails for the roof rack attachments. Therefore, standard roof carriers cannot be used.
- The special attachments are the basis of a complete roof rack system. Special fixtures must then be added in order to safely transport luggage, bicycles, skis, surf boards or small boats on the roof. All these system components are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers or qualified workshops. We recommend you use genuine Volkswagen roof rack systems. If you want to use a different roof rack, make sure that it can be fitted securely to your vehicle and that it does not damage your vehicle.
- We recommend you keep the roof rack assembly instructions provided by the manufacturer with the Owner's Literature for in your vehicle.

When should the roof rack be removed?

- When it is not needed (to save fuel, reduce wind noise and avoid theft).
- Before driving through an automatic car wash.

⚠ WARNING

Installing or using a roof rack improperly can cause the roof rack and anything on it to fly off

⚠ WARNING (continued)

the vehicle causing collision and serious injury.

- **Always attach the roof rack securely and only at the mounting points shown in the illustrations and ⇒ page 72, fig. 71 and ⇒ page 72, fig. 72.**
- **Always install roof rack and roof rack fixtures carefully following the instructions provided with the roof rack and heed all WARNINGS.**
- **Always make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip.**
- **Install only roof racks expressly approved by Volkswagen for your vehicle.**

Note

- Your vehicle is higher when the roof rack is installed, especially when it is loaded. To reduce the risk of vehicle damage, please bear this in mind when driving through garage doors or other confined spaces.
- Check all bolts and fasteners in the roof rack system before every trip. If necessary, re-tighten the bolts and re-check the system at appropriate intervals, e.g. during a break on a long trip. ◀

Securing the load

Loads transported on the roof rack must be securely attached. The vehicle's handling is affected when transporting loads.

Always secure the cargo in the *center* of the roof rack.

The maximum permissible roof load for your vehicle is **165 lbs. (75 kg)**. The load limit applies to the combined weight of the carrier system and the load itself.

Each mount can bear a maximum load of 110 lbs. (50 kg) if the weight of the load is evenly distributed over the entire length of the mount.

However, if you are using a roof rack with a lower weight rating, you will not be able to carry the maximum roof load. Do not exceed the maximum weight limit for the roof rack that is listed in the installation instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Items that are not properly secured to a roof rack can fall off causing a collision and personal injury.

- **Always make sure that all bolts and fasteners are properly installed and properly tightened before every trip at each stop during a long trip.**
- **Always properly install special fixtures for items such as bicycles, skis, surfboards, etc.**
- **Never use straps or other things that are damaged, not strong enough or not suitable to attach items to a roof rack.**

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy bulky loads on the roof will change the way the vehicle handles by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity,

⚠ WARNING (continued)

changing its aerodynamics and the way it reacts to side winds.

- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a more negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Always adapt your driving and speed to what you are carrying on the roof as well as to road, traffic, weather and wind conditions.**
- **Always avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.**
- **Always make sure that loads are properly distributed and that heavier items are in the front.**
- **Never exceed the maximum roof load for the vehicle (100 kg), maximum axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight**

⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Note

- Do not let the rear lid strike the roof load when open. This could damage the vehicle.
- Damage to the vehicle resulting from improper installation of roof rack attachments or roof rack systems is not covered by the warranty.
- Your vehicle is higher when the roof rack is installed, especially when it is loaded. To reduce the risk of vehicle damage, please bear this in mind when driving through garage doors or other confined spaces.

For the sake of environment

Driving with the roof rack increases fuel consumption. If you do not need it, do not leave it on the vehicle: ◀

Air Conditioning system

Climatic

Applies to vehicles: with Climatic

Controls

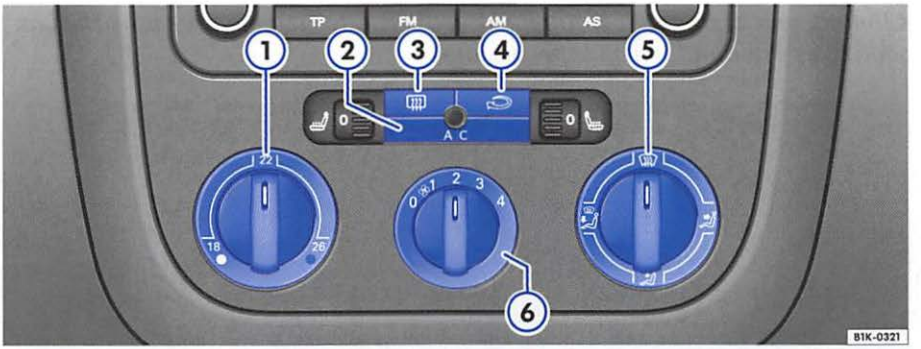


Fig. 73 In the center console: Climatic controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the fan is switched on.

– Using the controls ⇒ fig. 73 ①, ⑤ and ⑥ you can set the temperature, air distribution and the fan speed.

– To switch a function on or off, press the appropriate button ② to ④. When a function is switched on a light in the button comes on.

① Temperature ⇒ page 76

② AC button – switch on / off air conditioning. When the indicator light in the button comes on, this means the air conditioning is switched on. When the indicator light in the button go out, the air conditiong switches off to save fuel. At low outside temperatures and with the air conditioning switched off, heating performance will be less after the engine is started.

③ Button rear window defogger with engine running– The rear window defogger switches off automatically approximately *10 minutes* after it is switched on. It can also be switched off by pushing the switch again.

④ Button – air recirculation mode ⇒ page 77

⑤ Air distribution control: Use the air distribution control to guide the air flow where you want it ⇒ page 76.

⑥ Fan – The fan has four different speeds. The fan should always be set at the lowest speed when driving slowly. The fan should always run at the lowest speed if outside air quality permits.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

- **Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.**
- **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only occur after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the defog/defrost features you will need for good visibility.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒ page 83, "Important notes".** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatic

Heating and cooling the interior

Climatic controls air temperature so that the selected temperature is reached as soon as possible and is then kept constant.

Fig. 74 In the center console: Climatic controls

Heating the interior

– Turn the temperature selector ⇒ fig. 74 ① to the right until the desired heat output is reached. We recommend 22° C.

– Turn the fan switch ⑥ to one of the settings 1-4.

– Use the air distribution control ⑤ to guide the air flow where you want it: (to the windshield), (into the vehicle interior), (to the footwells) and (to the windshield and to the footwells) ⇒ page 77, "Air recirculation mode".

Cooling the interior

– Switch on the air conditioning by pressing the ⇒ fig. 74 AC button (the indicator light in the button should be on).

– Turn the temperature selector to the left until the desired cooling output is reached.

– Turn the fan switch to one of the settings 1-4.

– Use the air distribution control ⑤ to guide the air flow where you want it: (to the windshield), (into the vehicle interior), (to the footwells) and (to the windshield and to the footwells).

Heating

Maximum heat output, which is needed to defrost the windows quickly, is only available when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

Cooling system

When the air conditioning is on, not only the temperature, but also the air humidity in the vehicle interior is reduced. This improves comfort ▶

for the vehicle occupants and prevents the windows from fogging up when the outside air is very humid.

If the air conditioning does not switch on, it could be for one of the following reasons

- the engine is not running.
- the fan is switched off.
- the outside temperature is lower than about +40 °F (+3 °C).
- the air conditioner compressor has been temporarily switched off because the engine coolant temperature is too high.
- the air conditioner fuse is blown.

Have the air conditioner checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatic

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode helps prevent fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

Fig. 75 On the center console: Climatic controls

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 75 to switch air recirculation mode on or off. When it is switched on a light in the button comes on.

Air recirculation mode helps prevent strong outdoor odors from entering the vehicle interior, for example when driving through a tunnel or in heavy traffic.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

When the outside temperature is high, using air recirculation mode provides more effective cooling by cooling air from the vehicle interior instead of warm air from outside.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is not possible when the control for air distribution is set to the position. The air recirculation mode can be switched back on by pressing the button.

If you shift into Reverse while the windshield wipers are working, the Climatic will temporarily shut off the air recirculation. This prevents outside air (exhaust fumes from other vehicles) from entering into the vehicle interior.

⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness. This can lead to accidents, collisions and serious personal injury. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never use air recirculation for long periods of time because no fresh air will come into the passenger compartment.
- The windows can fog up quickly if the cooling system is switched off and decrease driver visibility.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always switch the recirculation mode off when it is not needed.

Note

Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor. ◀

Climatronic

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Controls

The controls allow separate adjustment of air conditioning settings for the left side and right side of the vehicle.

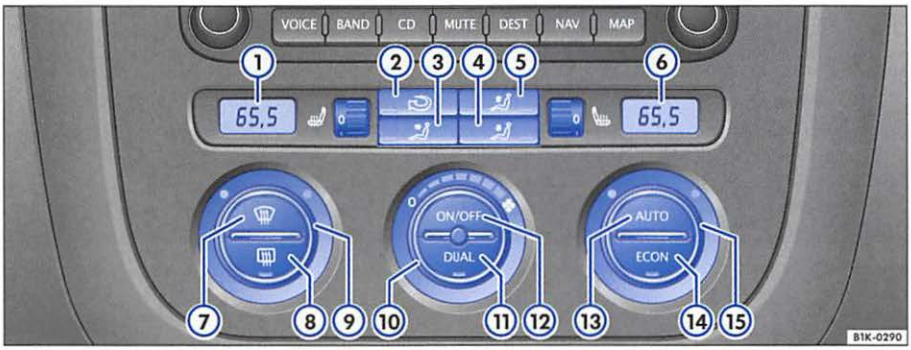


Fig. 76 In the center console: Climatronic controls

The air conditioning system only works when the engine is running and the fan is switched on.

– To adjust the temperature for the left or right side, turn the appropriate temperature control ⇒ fig. 76 ⑨ or ⑮.

– The functions will be switched on when one of the buttons ② to ⑤ is pressed. When a function is switched on the light in the button comes on. Press the button again to switch off the function.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

① Display of the selected interior temperature for the left side.
② Button air recirculation mode ⇒ fig. 76
③ Button central air distribution
④ Button downward air distribution
⑤ Button upward air distribution
⑥ Display of the selected interior tem/perature for the right side.
⑦ Button – defrost function for the windshield. The air drawn in from outside the vehicle is directed at the windshield. The air ▶

recirculation mode, if switched on, will be switched off as soon as the defrost function is switched on. At temperatures above 40° F (3° C), the air conditioning system will be switched on automatically and the fan speed will be increased by one level in order to dry the air.

(8) Button [ ] rear window heating with engine running. The heating switches off automatically approximately *10 minutes* after it is switched on. It can also be switched off by pushing the switch again.

(9) Temperature control for the left side ⇒ page 79

(10) Fan speed control ⇒ page 81

(11) Button [DUAL], if the indicator light in the button is on, different temperatures can be set for left and right. When the button is pressed - the indicator light goes out - the left-side temperature setting is adopted for the right side as well. If the button is pressed again or the temperature regulator (15) for the right side is actuated, different temperatures can be set for both sides again. The indicator light in the button comes on again.

(12) Button [ON/OFF] switches the Climatronic on and off ⇒ page 81. When the system is on the light in the ON/OFF button lights up.

(13) Button [AUTO], automatic temperature, fan, and air distribution control ⇒ page 79. The button lights up.

(14) [ECON] button switches on economy mode. When the lamp in the button lights up, the air conditioning is switched off to save fuel. At low outside temperatures, heating performance in Economy operation will be less after the engine is started.

(15) Temperature control for the right side ⇒ page 79

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

- **Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.**
- **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only occur after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.**
- **Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the defog/defrost features you will need for good visibility.**
- **Always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒ page 83, "Important notes".**

Note

Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Automatic mode

In automatic mode air temperature, flow, and distribution are automatically regulated so that a specified temperature is attained as quickly as possible and then maintained.

The temperature can be adjusted separately for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior.

Switching on automatic mode

– Press the [AUTO] button. The button lights up.

– Turn the temperature controls to the desired temperatures for the left and right sides of the interior. We recommend 72° F (22° C).

Switching from Fahrenheit to Centigrade

– Switch the Climatronic on. ▶

– Press and hold the [ECON] button ⇒ page 78, fig. 76 and the [AUTO] button at the same time until the temperature display switches from one temperature unit to the other.

A comfortable interior climate is quickly reached when a temperature of 72° F (22° C) is set in automatic mode. It can be changed as necessary to suit individual preferences or particular circumstances. It is possible to select interior temperatures from 61° F (16° C) to 86° F (29.5° C). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the outside conditions.

If a temperature below 61° F (16° C) is selected the display switches to **LO**. In this setting the system runs at maximum cooling output and the temperature is not controlled.

If a temperature above 86° F (29.5° C) is selected the display switches to **HI**. In this setting the system runs at maximum heating output and the temperature is not controlled.

Climatronic automatically helps to maintain a constant temperature inside the passenger compartment. The temperature of the air supplied to the interior, the fan speed and the air distribution are also regulated automatically. The system also allows for the effect of strong sunlight, so there is no need for you to re-adjust the system. Therefore, **automatic mode** provides the best comfort for the vehicle occupants in all conditions throughout the year.

Automatic mode is switched off whenever an adjustment is made using the buttons for air distribution or the fan control. The temperature continues to be controlled. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Indirect ventilation

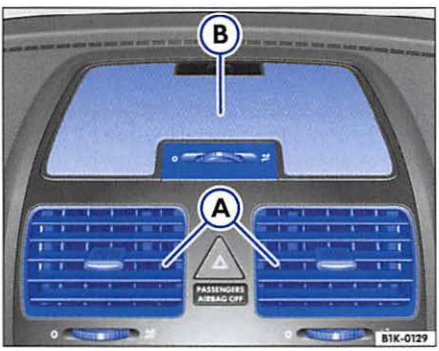


Fig. 77 Central air outlet (A) and air outlet (B) for indirect ventilation

In manual operation, press the button [⊡] to obtain draft-free ventilation. The ventilation is indirect, if you close the air outlets ⇒ fig. 77 (A) and open air outlet (B) using the thumb wheel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Manual mode

In manual mode you can adjust the air temperature, air flow, and distribution yourself.

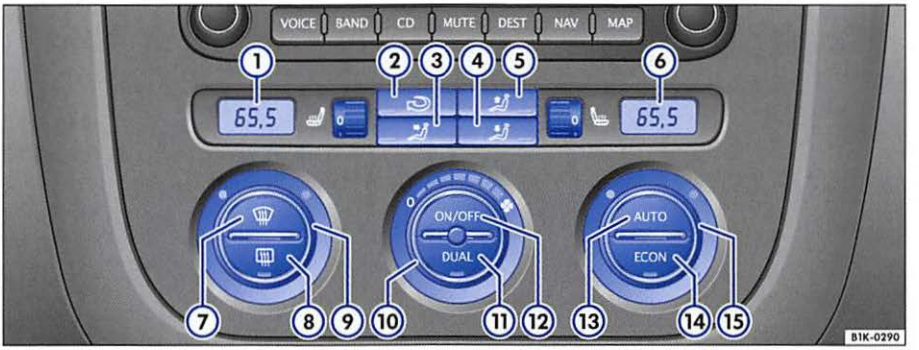


Fig. 78 In the center console: Climatronic controls

Switching on manual mode

– Press one of the buttons ⇒ fig. 78 ③ to ⑤, or turn the fan control ⑩. The light in the [AUTO] button will go out.

Temperature

There are separate temperature selectors for the left and right sides of the vehicle interior. The selected temperature is displayed above the selector. It is possible to select interior temperatures from 61° F (+16° C) to 86 °F (+29.5° C). These are approximate temperatures and the actual temperature may be slightly higher or lower depending on the outside conditions.

If a temperature below 61 °F (+16° C) is selected the display switches to **LO**. In this setting the system runs at maximum cooling output and the temperature is not controlled.

If a temperature above 86° F (+29.5° C) is selected the display switches to **HI**. In this setting the system runs at maximum heating output and the temperature is not controlled.

Fan

The fan can be adjusted with the fan switch ⑩. Always have the fan running at a low setting when driving at low speeds to make sure there is a constant flow of fresh air into the vehicle. If the fan is set to 0, the Climatronic switches off.

Air distribution

Use the buttons [ ], [ ] and [ ] to control the air distribution. When a function is switched on, the button lights up. It is also possible to open and close some of the air outlets separately.

Switching the Climatronic on/off

The Climatronic system can be switched on and off with the button [ON/OFF]. The system should only be switched off in exceptional cases, e.g. if the system malfunctions. The button lights up when the system is switched on.

Switching on the economy mode / switching off the cooling system

Use the [ECON] button to switch on the economy mode. When the button lights comes on, the cooling system switches off to save fuel. At low outside temperatures, heating performance in Economy operation will be less after the engine is started. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Climatronic

Air recirculation mode

Air recirculation mode prevents fumes or unpleasant smells from entering the vehicle.

Fig. 79 In the center console: Climatronic controls

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 79 to switch air recirculation mode on or off. When it is switched on a light in the button comes on.

Air recirculation mode prevents strong outdoor odors from entering the vehicle interior, for example when driving through a tunnel or in dense traffic.

When the outside temperature is low, using air recirculation mode provides more effective heating by heating air from the vehicle interior instead of cold air from outside.

When the outside temperature is high, using air recirculation mode provides more effective cooling by cooling air from the vehicle interior instead of warm air from outside.

For safety reasons, air recirculation is not possible when the control for air distribution is set to the position. The air recirculation mode can be switched back on by pressing the button.

If you shift into Reverse while the windshield wipers are working, the Climatronic will temporarily shut off the air recirculation. This prevents outside air (exhaust fumes from other vehicles) from entering into the vehicle interior.

⚠ WARNING

Stale air causes driver fatigue and reduces driver alertness. This can lead to accidents, collisions and serious personal injury.

- **Never use air recirculation for long periods of time because no fresh air will come into the passenger compartment.**
- **The windows can fog up quickly if the cooling system is switched off and decrease driver visibility.**
- **Always switch the recirculation mode off when it is not needed.**

Note

Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor. ◀

Important notes

The pollution filter

The pollution filter (a combined particle filter and active charcoal filter) serves as a barrier against impurities in the outside air, including dust and pollen.

For the air conditioning system to work with maximum efficiency, the pollution filter must be replaced as specified in the Service Schedule.

If the filter loses efficiency prematurely due to use in areas with very high levels of air pollution, the pollution filter must be changed more frequently than specified in your Maintenance booklet..

Cooling system malfunctions

If the cooling system cannot be switched on, it may be due to the following causes:

- the engine has not been started
- the blower is switched off
- outside temperature is below about 40° F (3° C).
- the cooling system compressor was switched off temporarily because of excessive engine coolant temperature
- the air-conditioning fuse is blown
- there is some other problem with the vehicle.

Have the air-conditioning system checked at your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

- **Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.**
- **Maximum heating output and fast defrosting will only occur after the engine has reached operating temperature. Wait until you have good visibility before driving off.**
- **Thoroughly familiarize yourself with the operation of the heating and ventilation system, including the defog/defrost features you will need for good visibility.**

⚠ WARNING

Note that with Climatronic switched off completely, no outside air enters the interior. So with Climatronic switched off, open a window or the power roof[15] to provide adequate fresh air in the vehicle.

Note

- If you suspect that the air conditioning system has been damaged or is not working properly, switch over to ECON mode to prevent more damage and have the system checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.
- Repairs to the air conditioning system require special knowledge and special tools. Therefore, we recommend that you go to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or other qualified workshop should problems occur.
- Do not smoke while air recirculation mode is on, as smoke drawn into the climate-control system can leave a residue on the evaporator, producing a permanent unpleasant odor.

Tips

- If the humidity and temperature outside the vehicle are high, **condensation** can drip off the evaporator in the climate-control system and form a pool underneath the vehicle. This is normal and is not a leak.
- Keep the air intake slots in front of the windshield free of snow, ice and leaves to ensure unimpaired heating and cooling and to prevent the windows from fogging over.
- The air from the outlets flows through the passenger compartment and out the slots below the rear window. Do not cover these slots with clothing or other objects.
- The air conditioning system works best when the windows and the power roof[15] are closed. However, if the vehicle has heated up in the sun, the inside air can be cooled faster by opening the windows to let the hot air out. ◀

[15] Where applicable

Driving

Ignition lock

Ignition key position

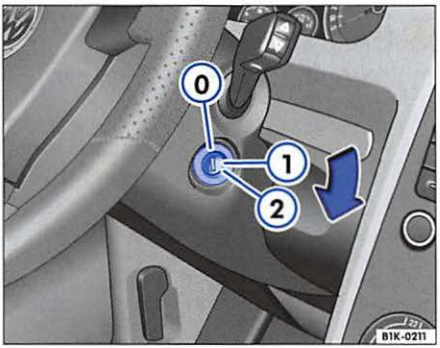


Fig. 80 Ignition key position

⓪ Ignition switched off, steering lock

In this position ⇒ fig. 80 ⓪ the ignition is switched off and the steering column is locked.

To **engage the steering lock**, remove the key from the steering lock and turn the steering wheel until it locks into place. You should always lock the steering wheel when you leave your vehicle. This makes vehicle theft more difficult.

① Switching on the ignition

Turn the ignition key to this position ①, the ignition will switch on. If the key cannot be turned or is difficult to turn from position ⓪ to position ①, move the steering wheel (to take the load off the steering lock mechanism) until it turns freely.

② Starting the engine

Start the engine when the key is in position ② ⇒ page 85. If you have any major electrical consumers on (example the headlights), they will be switched off temporarily until the engine has started. Once the engine has started, the ignition key will remain in this position.

You must turn the key back to position ⓪ whenever you want tp start the engine. This prevents the starter from being damaged when the engine is running.

Switching off the ignition ⓪

Turn the ignition key to position ⓪ and release the key.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of vehicle keys can result in serious personal injury.

- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.**
- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or while it is rolling to a stop. The steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**

Note

You can damage the starter or the engine if you try to start your vehicle (key position ②) when it is still moving or if you try to start the engine immediately after switching it off.

Tips

If you open the driver's door with the key still in the ignition lock, a buzzer will sound to remind you to take the key and lock your vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: mit Automatikgetriebe

Removing the ignition key from the ignition lock

The ignition key can be removed from the ignition lock only with the selector in the P position.

After the ignition is switched off, you can only remove the key if the selector lever for the automatic transmission is in position **P**. After the ignition key is removed, the selector lever is locked. In order to remove the ignition key from the ignition lock on vehicles equipped with automatic transmission, the ignition must be switched off and the selector lever **must** be in the P position. Once you have removed the ignition key, the selector lever will be locked. Please be sure to apply the parking brake whenever you remove the key from the ignition. ◀

Electronic immobilizer

The immobilizer helps to prevent unauthorized use of the vehicle.

There is a chip in the key that automatically deactivates the immobilizer when you put the key into the ignition lock.

The electronic immobilizer is automatically activated when you take the key out of the ignition lock.

The engine can only be started using a genuine and correctly coded Volkswagen key.

Tips

You can only start the engine with a correctly coded genuine Volkswagen key. You may have problems starting the vehicle if a genuine and correctly coded Volkswagen key is not used. ◀

Starting and stopping the engine

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Starting the engine

The engine can only be started if the clutch pedal (manual transmission) or brake pedal (automatic transmission) is fully depressed using a coded Volkswagen master key.

Manual transmission

– Move the gearshift lever into neutral.

– Depress the clutch pedal fully and hold it depressed.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 84, fig. 80 ② to start the engine.

– Release the ignition key when the engine starts. Do not let the starter to continue to run.

Automatic transmission

– Move the selector lever to **P** (Park) or **N** (Neutral) ⇒ page 88.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⇒ page 84, fig. 80 ② to start the engine.

– Release the ignition key when the engine starts. Do not let the starter to continue to run. When starting a hot engine, you may need to press the accelerator briefly. ▶

When starting a cold engine, it may be a little noisy for the first few seconds until oil pressure has built up in the hydraulic valve lifters. This is normal and no cause for concern.

If the engine does not start after 10 seconds, switch off the ignition, wait 30 seconds, then try again.

If you have problems starting ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Jump starting."

⚠ WARNING

Reduce the risk of serious personal injury when starting and running the vehicle's engine.

- **Never start or let the engine run in a confined or enclosed area. Exhaust from the engine contains carbon monoxide, a poisonous, colorless and odorless gas. Carbon monoxide can cause unconsciousness and death.**
- **Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running. The vehicle could move suddenly or an unusual operating condition**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

could occur resulting in property damage or personal injury.

- **Never use "starting assist fluids." They are potentially explosive and can cause a "runaway" vehicle condition.**

Note

- You can damage the engine if you drive high engine speeds, at full throttle or by over-loading the engine when the engine is cold.
- The engine cannot be started using push-starts or by towing.
- To avoid damaging the starter, release the ignition key at least as soon as the engine starts.

For the sake of environment

Do not warm up the engine by running it with the vehicle standing still. Drive off as soon as you start the engine. This helps the engine reach operating temperature faster and reduces emissions. ◀

Switching off the engine

– Let the vehicle come to a complete stop.

– Turn the ignition key to position ⓪ ⇒ page 84, fig. 80.

– Be sure to apply the parking brake whenever you remove the key from the ignition.

After the engine is switched off the radiator fan may continue to run for up to 10 minutes, even if the ignition is switched off. The radiator fan can start automatically if the vehicle's engine is hot and the coolant temperature rises, or if the sun heats up the engine compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash and be seriously injured.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake booster does not work when the engine is turned off. A lot more brake pedal pressure will be necessary to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering system does not work when the engine is turned off and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.**
- **When the key is removed, the steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**
- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel etc.**

Note

If the engine has been driven hard for a long period, the engine could overheat when it is switched off. To reduce the risk of engine damage, be sure to let the engine idle for about 2 minutes before you switch it off. ◀

Manual transmission

Applies to vehicles: with manual transmission

Selecting reverse gear

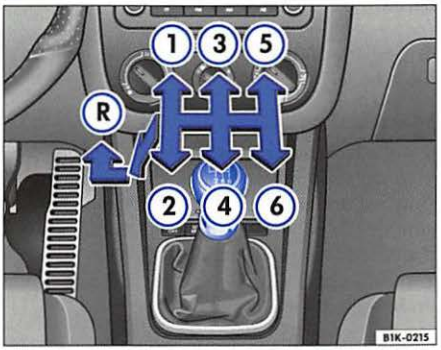


Fig. 81 Section of center console: manual transmission

Selecting Reverse gear

– The vehicle must be completely stopped with the engine idling. Depress the clutch pedal fully.

– Move the gearshift lever into Neutral.

– Press the gearshift lever down, move it to the left and then move if forward into Reverse ⇒ fig. 81 (R) shown on the gearshift lever.

When you shift into Reverse the back up lights come on.

⚠ WARNING

- **When the engine is running, the vehicle will start to move as soon as a gear is engaged and the clutch released.**
- **Make sure the vehicle is at a complete standstill before engaging Reverse, otherwise engine damage could result.**

Note

- Always make sure the vehicle is completely stopped before engaging Reverse, otherwise engine or transmission damage could occur.
- Do not rest your hand on the gearshift lever knob when driving. The pressure of your hand could cause premature wear in the transmission.
- Always depress the clutch pedal fully when changing gears.
- Do not hold the vehicle on a hill with the clutch pedal partially depressed. This may cause premature clutch wear or damage. ◀

Automatic transmission (Direct shift gearbox)

Applies to vehicles: with automatic transmission

Transmission programs

The automatic transmission has two programs.

Fig. 82 Section of center console: selector lever

Selecting the standard program

– Move the selector lever ⇒ fig. 82 into posit ion D (Drive).

–

Selecting the sport program

– Move the selector lever into position S (Sport).

D Drive

If you select the standard program you will be driving in the eco nomy mode and will reduce fuel consumption. The transmission upshifts and downshifts at lower engine speeds. While driving downhill in D, the engine does not brake the vehicle.

S (Sport)

If you select the sport program you will be driving in a sport mode. All forward gears upshift and down-shift automatically at higher engine speeds depending on engine load, your individual driving style and the vehicle speed. While driving downhill in S, the engine does not brake the vehicle.

Switching with the rocker switch on the steering wheel

If you press the rocker switch ⇒ page 91, fig. 86 while in Normal mode or Sport mode, it switches temporarily to "Tiptronic®" mode. If you would like to exit "Tiptronic®" mode again, press the right rocker switch + **OFF** towards the steering wheel for about one second. "Tiptronic®" mode is also exited if the rocker switches are not pressed for approximately 10 to 40 seconds.

For the sake of environment

Driving in D uses less fuel than driving in S.

Tips

The display in the instrument cluster shows the gear selected in addition to the transmission program being used, D or S. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Selector lever lock

The selector lever lock in the P or N position prevents the vehicle from being unintentionally shifted into gear and being accidentally put into motion.

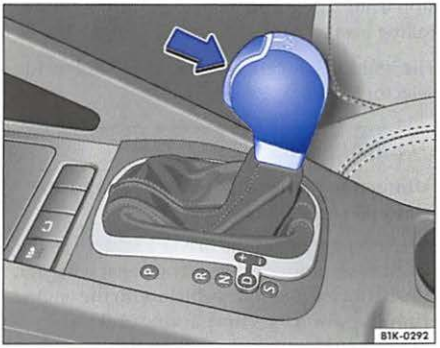


Fig. 83 Section of center console: selector lever with selector lever button

Releasing the selector lever lock

– Depress and hold the brake pedal and press the release button ⇒ fig. 83 -arrow- in the selector lever handle at the same time.

The selector lever is locked when:

- The selector lever is in P
- The selector lever is in N for more than about 1 second and you are driving slower than 3 mph (5 km/h)

The selector lever lock will not engage if you quickly move the selector lever through position N when shifting between R and D. This makes it possible, to "rock" the vehicle backward and forward if it is stuck in snow or mud. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with 6-speed automatic transmission

Driving with an automatic transmission

The transmission upshifts and downshifts automatically.

Fig. 84 Section of center console: selector lever

Starting the engine

– Start the engine with the selector lever on position P or N. For more information ⇒ page 85

Driving

– Depress and hold the brake pedal.

– Release the parking brake.

– Press and hold the release button ⇒ fig. 83 in the selector lever handle.

– Move the selector lever to R (Reverse), D (Drive) or S (Sport).

– Release the lock button and wait for the transmission to engage the gear (a slight movement can be felt).

– Release the brake and depress the accelerator ⇒ ⚠. ▶

Stopping briefly

– Always use the foot brake to prevent the vehicle from creeping forward, for example at a traffic light. You do not need to move the selector lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral).

– Do not depress the accelerator.

Parking

– Depress and hold the brake pedal until the vehicle comes to a full stop ⇒ ⚠.

– Apply the parking brake firmly ⇒ page 94.

– Move the selector lever to P with the release button pressed.

Driving down hills

– Select the "Tiptronic®" position.

– Pull the lever to the "-" minus position to downshift.

Stopping on an incline

– You should always hold the vehicle in position with the footbrake to stop it from "rolling backward".

– Do not try to stop the vehicle from "rolling backward" by increasing the revs when a gear is engaged ⇒ ⚠.

Moving away on an incline

– With a gear engaged, take your foot from the brake and depress the accelerator.

The steeper the grade, the lower the gear you will need. This increases the braking effect of the engine. For example, you should drive down a very steep slope in 3rd gear. If the engine brake effect is not sufficient, the vehicle will gain speed. The automatic transmission automatically upshifts to prevent the engine from overrevving. Use the foot brake to reduce speed and change into 3rd gear using "Tiptronic®" ⇒ ⚠.

Your vehicle has an Automatic Shift Lock (ASL) that locks the selector lever in P or N when the ignition is on. You must depress the brake pedal to move the selector lever out of P or N. This prevents the selector lever from being unintentionally moved into a driving position resulting in unwanted vehicle movement.

Always hold the vehicle with the foot brake if you stop while driving up a hill to prevent it from rolling backward.

The ignition key cannot be removed unless the selector lever is in P.

⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- **Never get out of the driver's seat when the engine is running, especially when it is in gear. If you must leave your vehicle with the engine running, always set the parking brake and move the selector lever to P (Park).**
- **When the engine is running with the selector lever in a driving position (D (Drive), S (Sport) or R (Reverse) always depress and hold the brake pedal to keep the vehicle from moving. Power is transmitted to the wheels when a driving position is selected and the vehicle may "creep" even at idle speed.**
- **Never depress the accelerator when moving the selector lever.**
- **Never move the selector lever to R (Reverse) or P (Park) when the vehicle is moving.**
- **Before you drive down a steep section of road, reduce speed and shift to a lower gear using "Tiptronic®" for better engine braking effect and to reduce the load on the brake system.**
- **Do not ride the brakes or apply the brake pedal too often or too long. Constant braking causes the brakes to overheat and substantially reduces braking performance, increases braking distance or causes complete failure of the brake system.**

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash and be seriously injured.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake booster does not work when the engine is turned off. A lot more brake pedal pressure will be necessary to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering system does not work when the engine is turned off and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.**
- **When the key is removed, the steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**
- **Never coast down a slope with the transmission in Neutral.**

Note

- If you stop the vehicle on a grade, do not attempt to stop rolling by depressing the accelerator when a gear has been selected. The automatic transmission could overheat and be damaged. Pull the parking brake on fully or depress the brake pedal to prevent the vehicle from rolling away.
- Never let the vehicle roll down a hill with the selector lever in N and the engine switched off. This will damage the automatic transmission.

Tips

- If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into N while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before selecting a driving position.
- The dual clutch mechanism in the vehicles equipped with automatic transmission is equipped with an overload protector. For example, if you are stopped on an incline and the clutch mechanism starts to slip, the transmission fluid will overheat. If the clutch is then overloaded, the vehicle will make a slight jerk and the selector lever display will start to blink. The clutch mechanism will open automatically because it is overloaded. If this happens, depress the foot brake and wait a few seconds before driving off. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with automatic transmission and Tiptronic

Shifting with "Tiptronic®"

The "Tiptronic®" system lets the driver shift manually.

Fig. 85 Section of the center console: automatic transmission in Tiptronic position

Fig. 86 Multi-function steering wheel: paddles for Tiptronic

Shifting with "Tiptronic®" (selector lever)

– Move the selector lever from D (Drive) to the right into the "Tiptronic®" position ⇒ fig. 85. ▶

– Move the selector to the front ⊕ to upshift.

– Move the selector lever back ⊖ to downshift.

Shifting with "Tiptronic®" (paddles on steering wheel)

– Pull right paddle + OFF towards the steering wheel to change up ⇒ page 91, fig. 86.

– Pull left paddle - towards the steering wheel to change down.

If the paddles on the steering wheel are not used, the automatic transmission switches back to the previously selected Program D or S after a delay of about 15 seconds.

When accelerating, the transmission automatically upshifts to the next highest gear before the maximum engine speed is reached.

When shifting into a lower gear, the transmission will downshift only when there is no possibility of overrevving.

If the "Tiptronic®" is selected while the vehicle is in motion and the automatic transmission is in the 3rd gear in selector lever position D, the "Tiptronic®" will then also be in the 3rd gear.

The individual gears are shown on the display in the instrument cluster.

Switching with the rocker switch on the steering wheel

If you press the rocker switch ⇒ page 91, fig. 86 while in Normal mode or Sport mode, it switches temporarily to "tiptronic®" mode. If you would like to exit "tiptronic®" mode again, press the right rocker switch + OFF towards the steering wheel for about one second. "tiptronic®" mode is also exited if the rocker switches are not pressed for approximately 10 to 40 seconds. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Selector lever positions

The selector lever positions are shown on the display in the instrument cluster.

Fig. 87 Selection of instrument cluster: selector lever display with the selector lever in position D and 4th gear

Fig. 88 Selection of instrument cluster: selector lever display in the 4th gear selected in the Tiptronic mode

Selector lever position

The gear selected is display on the side of the selector lever and in the display ⇒ fig. 87 in the instrument cluster.

Gear selection display for "Tiptronic®"

If the automatic transmission is shifted manually or using "Tiptronic®" the individual gears are shown on the display ⇒ fig. 88. ▶

P Park

When the selector lever is in **P**, the drive wheels are locked mechanically.

Shift into **P** only when the vehicle is at a completely stopped ⇒ ⚠.

When selecting and deselecting **P** you must press the release button in the selector lever handle *and* depress the brake pedal at the same time.

If the battery is dead, the selector lever cannot be moved out of **P**.

R Reverse

Shift into reverse only when the vehicle is at a completely stopped and the engine is idling ⇒ ⚠.

To move the selector lever to **R**, press the release button while depressing the brake pedal.

When the reverse gear is selected and the ignition is on the back up lights come on.

N – Neutral

In **N** (Neutral), no power is transmitted to the wheels and the engine has no a braking function.

To move the selector lever out of **N**, you must depress the brake pedal and drive slower than 3 mph (5 km/h) ⇒ ⚠.

Never use **N** to coast down a hill because the engine will not slow the vehicle down and you will have to rely only on the foot brake.

You could damage the automatic transmission if you drive down hills with the selector in position **N** and the engine switched off.

D – standard driving position (standard program)

If you select the standard program you will be driving in the economy mode and will reduce fuel consumption. The transmission upshifts and downshifts at *lower engine speeds*. While driving downhill in **D**, the engine does not brake the vehicle. The display also shows which gear has been selected in addition to position **D** ⇒ page 92, fig. 87.

If position **N** as been selected and you wish to select **D**, you must press the foot break if the vehicle is completely stopped or moving at slower than 3 mph (5 km/h) ⇒ ⚠.

S – standard driving position (sport program)

If you select the sport program you will be driving in a sporty mode. All forward gears upshift and downshift automatically at higher engine speeds depending on engine load, your individual driving style and the vehicle speed. While driving downhill in **S**, the engine does not brake the vehicle. The display also shows which gears has been selected in addition to position **S**.

⚠ WARNING

Never switch off the engine before the vehicle has come to a complete stop. You can lose control of the vehicle, crash and be seriously injured.

- **The airbags and safety belt pretensioners will not work when the ignition is switched off.**
- **The brake booster does not work when the engine is turned off. A lot more brake pedal pressure will be necessary to stop the vehicle.**
- **The power steering system does not work when the engine is turned off and you will need more force to steer the vehicle.**
- **When the key is removed, the steering wheel column will lock up and you will not be able to steer the vehicle.**
- **Never coast down a slope with the transmission in Neutral.**

Note

Never let the vehicle roll down a hill with the selector lever in **N** and the engine switched off. This will damage the automatic transmission.

Tips

- If the selector lever is unintentionally moved into **N** while driving, take your foot off the accelerator pedal and wait until the engine speed has dropped to idle speed before selecting a driving position.
- If there is a fault in the system and the automatic transmission is running in an emergency program if all the displays of the selector lever positions for the automatic transmission have a light background. The automatic transmission should be checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with an automatic transmission

Kick-down function

The kick-down function permits maximum acceleration when the selector lever is in D, S or "Tiptronic®."

If you push the accelerator pedal all the way down, the transmission permits maximum acceleration. The transmission automatically downshifts, depending on the road speed as well as the engine speed.

The transmission will not upshift until the engine reaches the maximum engine speed for the gear selected.

⚠ WARNING

Accelerating on slippery roads can cause loss of vehicle control and serious personal injury.

- **Be very careful when using the kick-down feature, especially on slippery surfaces. Rapid acceleration may cause wheel spin and skidding.**
- **Use the kick-down feature only when traffic and weather conditions permit.** ◀

Parking brake

Operation

The parking brake can be used to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally,

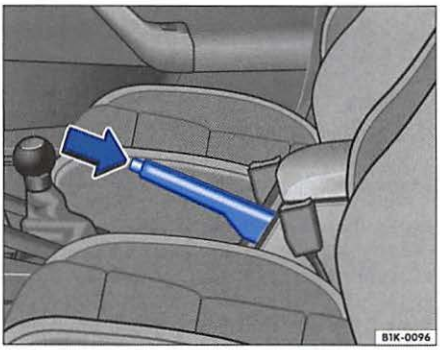


Fig. 89 Parking brake between front seats

Always apply the parking brake fully when you leave or park your vehicle and when you park your vehicle.

Applying the parking brake

– Pull the parking brake lever up firmly ⇒ fig. 89.

Releasing parking brake

– Pull the lever up slightly and press the locking knob in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 89 and guide the parking brake lever down fully ⇒ ⚠.

The parking brake should always be *fully* engaged so that you won't unintentionally drive off with the parking brake still engaged ⇒ ⚠

.

When the ignition is on and the parking brake is engaged, the warning light BRAKE or (!) in the instrument cluster will come on.

When the parking brake is released, the warning light BRAKE or (!) goes out.

If you should drive faster than 4 mph (6 km/h) with the parking brake still engaged, the following information text appears in the instrument cluster display: **HAND BRAKE APPLIED**. A warning signal sounds as well.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the parking brake can seriously injure you and your passengers.

- **Never use the parking brake to slow down the vehicle when it is moving. The braking distance is much longer because only the rear wheels are braked. Always use the foot brake.**
- **Never drive with the parking brake applied. This could cause the rear brakes to overheat and lose their braking efficiency. Always make sure to check that the parking brake is fully released driving.**
- **Always apply the parking brake fully when parking on a slope and cock the front wheels**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

to prevent the vehicle from moving unintentionally.

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS**
⇒ page 95, "Parking"

Note

- Whenever you leave the vehicle, you should engage the parking brake first. In addition, you should move the gearshift lever into 1st gear (manual transmission) or move the selector lever into P (automatic transmission).
- Driving with the parking brake engaged will damage the rear brakes. ◀

Parking

The parking brake can be used to prevent the vehicle from moving.

Parking

– Stop the vehicle using the brake pedal.

– Apply the parking brake fully.

– Shift into 1st gear (manual transmission) or move the selector lever into P (automatic transmission).

– Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition lock. Turn the steering wheel slightly to engage the steering lock.

– Always take you vehicle keys with you when you leave the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

When parking on slopes

Before turning off the engine, turn the steering wheel so that if the vehicle starts to roll, it will roll into the curb:

- if the vehicle is facing *downhill*, turn the front wheels so that they point toward the curb.
- if the vehicle is facing *uphill*, turn the front wheels so that they point away from the curb.
- apply the parking brake and move the selector lever into P.

⚠ WARNING

Improper parking procedures can cause serious personal injury for you or your passengers.

- **Never remove the key from steering lock while the vehicle is moving or rolling to a stop. The steering wheel will lock up and you will not be able to steer or control the vehicle.**
- **Never park where the hot exhaust system could ignite flammable materials, such as brush, leaves, dry grass, spilled fuel etc.**
- **Always apply the parking brake when parking your vehicle.**
- **Never leave anyone in your vehicle to prevent the vehicle from moving if the parking brake is released or selector lever is moved.**
- **Always take the key with you when you leave the vehicle. The engine can be started and vehicle systems such as the power windows can be operated leading to serious personal injury.**
- **Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control trapping passengers in the vehicle in an emergency. Depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or very low temperatures.** ▶

Note

- Please exercise care when you park your vehicle in parking areas with parking barriers or curbs. Parking barriers and curbs vary in height and could damage your bumper and related components as the front of your vehicle moves over a barrier or curb that is too high, as you park or as you back out of a parking spot. In order to be sure that no such damage can occur, you should stop short of having the front tires of your car touch parking barrier or curb.
- Please also exercise exceptional care when you drive up or down steep ramps or drive over curbs or other obstacles, for which the vehicle is not designed, because components of the vehicle close to the ground such as bumper covers, spoilers, suspension and exhaust system components, may be damaged. ◀

Cruise control system

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system and without display in the instrument cluster

Description of the cruise control system

The cruise control system helps maintain a set speed beginning at about 18 mph (30 km/h).

When the desired speed is reached and saved, you can remove your foot from the accelerator.

The cruise control does not work in when the transmission is in 1st gear (manual transmission) or when the selector lever is in either the P, N or R position (automatic transmission).

The indicator light CRUISE or in the instrument cluster comes on when cruise control is switched on. The cruise control system does not necessarily have to be in control mode.

WARNING

Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed can be dangerous and lead to an accident causing serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

- **Never use the cruise control when driving in heavy or varying traffic, on steep, winding or slippery roads (for example snow, ice, streets covered with standing water or gravel).**

WARNING (continued)

- **Always adapt your speed and the distance to the vehicles ahead to take the traffic situation into consideration. This is the duty of the driver. The cruise control is merely an aid to the driver.**
- **To prevent unintended operation of the cruise control, switch the system off when it is not being used.**
- **It is dangerous to use the resume feature when the previously set speed is too high for the existing road, traffic or weather conditions.**
- **Never use the cruise control when driving off-road.**

Note

When traveling downhill, the cruise control may not maintain a constant speed. The vehicle will accelerate because of its own weight. Downshift and/or use the foot brake to slow the vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with cruise control system and without display in the instrument cluster

Using the cruise control

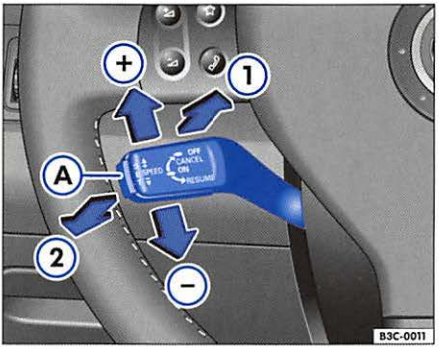


Fig. 90 Cruise control system controls

Switching the cruise control on

– Pull the lever in the direction ⇒ fig. 90 ① until it engages to switch the system on. The indicator light CRUISE or in the instrument cluster comes on when cruise control is switched on.

Switching the cruise control off

– Push the lever forward ② until it engages. The indicator light CRUISE or in the instrument cluster goes out. When the cruise control system or the ignition is switched off, the set speed is erased from the system's memory.

Setting the speed

– Press the SET button Ⓐ briefly once when the speed to be set has been reached. The current speed is set and held constant. **Or**

– Pull the lever toward the steering wheel and past the first detent ①. The current speed is set.

Increasing the speed

– Press the lever in the ⊕ direction until the desired speed is reached. The vehicle maintains this speed.

Reducing the set speed

– Press the lever in the ⊖ direction until the desired speed is reached. The vehicle maintains this speed. Vehicle speed is reduced by closing the throttle, there is no active braking.

Minor speed adjustments

– By briefly pressing the lever in the ⊕ direction, you can increase the desired speed by about 1-2 mph (km/h).

– By briefly pressing the lever in the ⊖ direction, you can decrease the desired speed by about 1-2 mph (km/h).

Turning control off temporarily

– Press the brake pedal **or**

– Depress the clutch pedal (manual transmission) **or**

– Press the lever slightly in the direction of the arrow until it meets resistance ② **or**

– Shift into position N (automatic transmission) (only in an emergency).

Resuming control

– Release the brake or clutch pedal.

– Pull the lever briefly in direction ①.

If you increase speed with the accelerator, the system will automatically resume the previously set speed after you release the accelerator. However, the previously set speed will not be resumed if that speed is significantly exceeded for an extended period. The cruise control switches off temporarily. The set speed is saved

⚠ WARNING

- **Using the cruise control when it is not possible to drive safely at a constant speed is dangerous ⇒ ⚠ in "Description of the cruise control system" on page 96**

Tips

Switch the cruise control system off completely at the end of each trip. When you start the next trip, the desired speed can be set only from the basic setting. ◀

Alphabetical index

A

Acoustic warning 84
Adjustable front seats 58
Adjusting the compass variance zone 23
Air conditioning
  Condensation 83
  Important notes 83
  Malfunctions 83
  Unpleasant odor 83
Air conditioning system 75
  Climatronic 78
Air recirculation mode
  2C-Climatic 77
  Climatronic 82
Alarm system 34
  Switching off 34
Anti-theft alarm system 34
  Switching off 34
Arm rest
  front 60
Automatic locking 32
Automatic mode
  Climatronic 79
Automatic transmission
  Selector lever lock 89
  Tiptronic 88
Automatic transmission with Tiptronic 91
Automatic wipe/wash function for the rear widnow 51
Average fuel consumption 21
Average speed 21

B

Bumper cover
  Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb 96
Buzzer 46, 84

C

Calibrating the compass 22
CD changer 65
Center arm rest
  front 60
Central locking button 32
Changing units 14
Child safety locks 33
Climatic 75
  Controls 75
  Malfunctions 83
Climatronic
  Important notes 83
  Malfunctions 83
Clock 8
Closing the doors 30
Coat hooks 66
Compass
  Adjusting 23
  Calibrating 22
Compass menu 19
Condensation 83
Control lights 4
Controls
  Power windows 38
Convenience closing 40, 42
Convenience menu 16
Convenience opening 40
Convenience operation (electric windows) 17
Coolant temperature
  Gauge 9
Cruise control system
  Indicator light 96
  without display 96
Cup holders 67
  in the front center console 67
  In the rear center console 67
Current fuel consumption 21

D

Daytime driving lights 43
Daytime Running Lights 43
Depress brake pedal 6
Digital clock 8
Display 13
Distance traveled 21
Door release handle 3

Doors 33
close 33
closing 30
Warning light 33
Driving time 20
Driving with an automatic transmission 89
Dust filter 83

E

Electrical socket 68
Electronic immobilizer 85
Emergency flasher 45
Emergency opening
Doors 34
Environmental information
Fuel economy 9
Environmental tip
Fuel economy 74

F

Fog lights 43
Front center armrest 65
Front seats 58
Fuel gauge
Display 10
Fuel level 10
Fuel tank 10

G

Gear selector lever
See Automatic transmission with Tiptronic
General illustration 3
Glove compartment
Front passenger side 64

H

Hand brake
See Parking brake
Hazard lights 45
Head restraints
Adjusting 56, 57
Removing 57
Headlight flasher 46
Headlight lens fogging 44
Headlights 43
Fog lights 43
Switching 43
Washer system 52
Heated front seats 59
High beam 46
High beam lever 46
Horn 3

I

Ignition key 84
removal lock 85
Ignition switch 84
Indicator light
Cruise control system 96
See also Warning lights
Indicator lights
Instrument cluster 4
Indirect ventilation 80
Individual unlocking 16, 30
Information messages 11
Information texts in the display 12
Inside day-night mirror 52
Instrument cluster 8
Menu structure 14
Instrument cluster illumination 3
Instrument cluster lighting 44
Instrument panel 3, 66
Instruments 8
interior front lights
front 47
Interior lights
background 48
reading 48
reading lights 47
interior lights 47
Intermittent wipe 49

K

Key tag 27
Keys 27
Kick-down function 94

L

Lane change flash function 17
Language in display 14
Lights 43
lights
  interior 47
Lights & Vision
  Menu 17
Locks
  Child safety 33
Low beam 43
Luggage compartment 69
Luggage compartment cover 71

M

Main menu - Multi-Function Indicator 20
Malfunction messages 11
Manual mode
  Climatronic 81
Manual transmission 87
Menu compass 19
Menu for convenience functions 16
Menu for Lights & Vision 17
Menu sound system 18
Menus
  Example of use 15
MFI 20
Miles (kilometers) to empty 21
Mirrors
  Inside mirror 52
  Make-up mirrors 49
  Outside mirrors, electrical 53
  Simultaneous adjustment 53
Mirrors lowered function 17
Multi-Function Indicator 20
Multi-function steering wheel 24

O

One-touch opening and closing
  power windows 39
Outside temperature display 21
Overview
  Indicator lights 4
  Instruments 8
  Multi-function steering wheel 24
  Warning lights 4

P

Panic button 28
Parking 95
  Automatic transmission 90
  Caution when parking near a parking barrier or curb 96
  Low bumper cover, spoilers and suspension 96
  When parking on slopes 95
Parking brake 94
  See also Parking brake
Pinch protection
  Power roof 42
  Windows 40
Pollen filter 83
Pollution filter 83
Power
  Roof 41
Power locks 30
  Individual unlocking 30
Power roof 41
  Pinch protection 42
Power windows 38

R

Reading lights
  back 48
  front 47
Rear lid 35
  closing 37
  Indicator light 35
Rear seat 60
  folding forward 61
Rear seat.
  folding back 61, 62
Rear view mirror 52
Rear window heating 75
Rear window wiper 51
Rear wiper 49
Remote control key
  Buttons 28
  Replacing the battery 30
  Synchronizing 29
Replacement keys 27

Replacing the battery
Remote control key 30
Reverse
Automatic transmission 93
Roof load 74
Roof rack 72, 74
Roof rack mounts 72

S

Safety
Child safety lock 33
Seat adjustment 55, 58
Seat heating
Front 59
Securing load 74
Selector lever lock 89
Selector lever postions 92
Service Interval Display 11
Service position 50
Setting the clock 14
Settings menu 13
Sockets
12 volt 68
Sound system menu 18
Speed warning 21
Starting the engine
With the ignition key 85
Steering 25
Steering lock 84
Steering wheel height adjustment 25
Stopping the engine 86
Storage area
Roof 65
Storage compartment 64
additional storage 66
Front center armrest 65
Storage for the vehicle literature 64
Sun visor 49
Sunroof 41
Sunshade
power roof 41
Switch lighting 3
Switches
Emergency flasher 45
Light switches 43
Power outside mirrors 53
Power roof 41
Power windows 38
Switching off the engine
With the ignition key 86

T

Tachometer 9
Tailgate 35
Tank
Fuel gauge 10
Tie-down hooks 70
Transporting long items 63
Trunk lid 35
Turn signal and high beam lever 46
Turn signals 46
Warning light 46

U

Unpleasant odor 83

W

Warning light
Cruise control 96
Doors 33
Warning lights 4
Emergency flasher 45
Instrument cluster 4
Turn signals 46
Warning messages 11
Warning texts in the display 12
When parking on slopes 95
When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 10
Windows 38, 39
Windshield wiper and washer system 49
Windshield wipers 49
Service position 50
Winter operation 50, 52
Winter tires
Speed warning 14

Afterword

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany

© Volkswagen AG

3.1 Controls and Equipment | Golf GTI
Print status: 11.2005
Art.-Nr.: 262.551.GGB.21 | englisch Nordamerika 12.2005

3.2 Tips and Advice

Golf GTI
Model year 2006

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to USA models only."

You will find any **Supplements** in the Owner's Literature immediately after the *Alphabetical Index* booklet.

An **alphabetical index** is at the end of the booklet.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section**.

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Text with this symbol contains important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Text with this symbol draws your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Text with this symbol contains information about the environment and how you can help to protect it.

Tips

Text with this symbol contains special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

Smart technology 2

Brakes 2
Power steering 8
Engine management and exhaust system . 9

Driving and protecting the environment 12

Break-in Period 12
Trailer towing 15
Drive economically and help protect the environment 19

Cleaning and protection 21

Regular care and vehicle care products .. 21
Care of vehicle exterior 22
Care of the vehicle interior 28

Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications 31

Accessories and parts 31
Repairs and technical modifications 32
Cellular phones and CB radios 33
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 34

Checking and Filling 35

Filling the tank 35
Fuel supply 37
Working in the engine compartment 39
Engine oil 42
Coolant 47
Washer fluid and windshield wiper blades 50
Brake fluid 53
Vehicle battery 55
Tires and wheels 57

What do I do now? 80

Vehicle tools and spare wheel 80
Changing a wheel 82
Emergency closing or opening 88
Fuses 90
Changing a light bulb 93
Jump starting 99
Towing 102
Lifting the vehicle 105
Consumer Information 106

Alphabetical index 108

Smart technology

Brakes

Brake booster

The brake booster increases the brake pressure you put on the brake pedal. It works only when the engine is running.

If the brake booster is not working or if the vehicle has to be towed, you will have to push the brake pedal harder to make up for the lack of booster assistance.

⚠ WARNING

Braking without the brake booster needs a much longer braking distance and requires

⚠ WARNING (continued)

you to push the brake pedal down harder than normal.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.**
- **If the brake booster is not active, for example if the vehicle is being towed, you will have to push the brake pedal down much harder than normal.** ◀

Warning light: Brake pads worn

Since the brake pad wear indicator only monitors the front brake pads, have the rear brake pads inspected at the same time.

There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- **Have the brake pads inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop if the brake pads worn symbol lights up.** ◀

Warning light: Brake system BRAKE or (!)

The warning light lights up if the parking brake is applied, if the brake fluid level is too low or if there is a malfunction in the brake system.

This warning light BRAKE or (!) lights up if:

- The parking brake is applied ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Parking brake." If the vehicle is driven faster than about 4 mph (6 km/h) with the parking brake applied, a warning will sound. There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take ⇒ ⚠.
- If the brake fluid level is too low ⇒ page 53.
- If there is a **malfunction in the brake system**, the warning light BRAKE or (!) in the instrument cluster will comes on. You will also hear a warning signal. Audible warning signals are also given. There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take. Stop the vehicle and do not continue to drive. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. If there is an ABS failure, the ABS indicator light comes ▶

on, along with the brake system warning symbol BRAKE or ⓘ ⇒ ⚠.

If a malfunction occurs in the ABS, the ABS warning light will light up together with the brake warning symbol BRAKE or ⓘ ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or ⓘ does not go out, or if it lights up when driving the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Immediately stop driving and get professional assistance ⇒ page 53.**
- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or ⓘ lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light , the ABS may not be working properly and the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control. If you believe that it is safe to do so, go immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**
- **If the ABS warning light does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible.** ◀

Brake Assist System (BAS)

In an emergency, most drivers brake in time, but not with maximum force. This results in stopping distances that are longer than they have to be!

The brake assist system helps: if you press the brake pedal very quickly, the brake assist system registers an emergency situation. It then very quickly builds up the full brake pressure so that the ABS can be activated more quickly and efficiently, reducing the braking distance while letting you steer at the same time.

Do not reduce the pressure on the brake pedal. The brake assist system switches off automatically as soon as you release the brake. The brake assist system works only when the engine is running.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let the extra safety offered by the Brake Assist System tempt you into taking extra risks.**
- **The Brake Assist System cannot reduce the risk of an accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.**
- **Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with the Brake Assist System!**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒ page 32, "Repairs and technical modifications".**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

systems work and reduce their effectiveness. ◀

Anti-Lock Brake System (ABS)

The Anti-Lock Brake System prevents the wheels from locking up when the brakes are applied.

The ABS is an important part of the vehicle's active safety system. The Anti-Lock Brake System works only when the engine is running.

How the ABS works

If one wheel begins to turn too slowly in relation to vehicle speed and tends to lock up, the ABS automatically reduces brake pressure to prevent that wheel from locking up. When ABS is doing its job you will notice a slight vibration through the brake pedal and hear a noise to let you know that your speed must be adjusted to road, traffic and weather conditions. This is a warning that one or more of the wheels is about to lock up and that the ABS control function has intervened. In this situation it is important to keep the brake pedal fully depressed so the ABS can help to regulate the brake application. Do not "pump" the brake pedal – ABS cannot do its job if you do.

ABS helps you to keep the vehicle under control because it prevents the wheels from locking up when the brakes are applied. This means the vehicle can still be steered and is less likely to skid.

The ABS cannot necessarily guarantee shorter braking distances in *all* conditions. The braking distance can even be longer if you brake on gravel or on fresh snow covering a slippery surface.

If ABS is not functioning properly, a warning light will come on ⇒ page 5.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the extra safety that ABS can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **Always drive safely.**
- **ABS cannot change the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ABS!**
- **ABS cannot reduce the risk of accidents, for example if you drive too fast for the conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒ page 32, "Repairs and technical modifications".**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness.**
- **The effectiveness of ABS is also determined by the tires on your vehicle ⇒ page 57, "Tires and wheels".** ◀

Warning light: Anti-lock brake system ABS or

The warning light monitors the ABS and the integrated electronic differential lock (EDL).

The warning light ABS or should light up for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on. The light goes out again after the system has run through an automatic test sequence.

There is a fault in the ABS if:

- The warning light ABS does not light up when the ignition is switched on.
- The warning light does not turn off again after a few seconds.
- The warning light lights up when the vehicle is moving.

The vehicle can still be braked in the normal way (except that the ABS is not active). Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible.

If a fault occurs in the ABS, the ESP warning light will also light up. There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

Fault in the main brake system

If the ABS warning light ABS or comes on along with the brake system warning lights BRAKE or and/or , the ABS is not only defective, but there is also possible malfunction in the brake system ⇒ ⚠.

There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Driving with bad brakes can cause a collision and serious personal injury.

- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or does not go out, or if it lights up when driving the brake fluid level in the reservoir is too low or there is a fault in the brake system. Immediately stop driving and get professional help ⇒ page 53.**
- **If the brake warning symbol BRAKE or lights up at the same time as the ABS warning light ABS or , the ABS may not be working properly and the rear wheels could lock up first under hard braking. Rear wheel brake lock-up can cause loss of vehicle control. If you believe that it is safe to do so, go immediately at low speed to the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected. Drive slowly and avoid sudden, hard brake application.**
- **If the ABS warning light ABS does not go out, or if it comes on while driving, the ABS system is not working properly. The vehicle can then be stopped only with the standard brakes (without ABS). You will not have the protection ABS provides. Contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible. ◀**

Electronic differential lock (EDL)

The electronic differential lock helps reduce the loss of traction if a wheel starts spinning.

The EDL helps the vehicle start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient when the going gets slippery where moving ahead may otherwise be difficult or even impossible. EDL uses the ABS sensors to monitor the speed of the wheels.

EDL works only when the engine is running.

EDL can help to balance out differences in the rotation of the wheels of approximately 100 rpm caused by a slippery ground surface on *one side* of the vehicle. It does this by braking the wheel that has lost traction and distributing more driving force to the other driven wheel via the differential.

EDL is active at speeds up to about 50 mph (80 km/h).

EDL automatically shuts off to prevent the disc brake of the braked wheel from overheating under excessive loads. The vehicle remains operational the same way as a vehicle without EDL. For this reason, the driver is not informed that the EDL has been shut off.

EDL will automatically switch on again when the brake has cooled down.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the extra safety that EDL can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **When accelerating on a slippery surface, for example on ice and snow, press the accelerator carefully. Despite EDL, the wheels may start to spin leading to a loss of vehicle control.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications ⇒ page 32, "Repairs and technical modifications".**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Electronic Stabilization Program

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) / Anti-slip regulation (ASR)

ESP and ASR can help make driving safer in certain situations.

Fig. 1 Detail of center console: Button for ESP

The Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP) contains the Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) and the Anti-Slip Regulation (ASR). The ESP works together with the Anti-locking Brake System (ABS). Both warning lights will come on if the ESP or ABS systems malfunction.

The ESP is started automatically when the engine is started.

The ESP should generally be left switched on at all times. In specific circumstances where you require less traction you can switch off the ESP by pressing [ESP] button ⇒ fig. 1.

For example:

- when driving with snow chains, ▶

- when driving in deep snow or on loose surfaces,
- when rocking the vehicle out.

Switch ESP back on as soon as possible.

You should press the button to switch the ESP back on when you no longer need wheel spin. The ASR and EDL are also switched off if the ESP is switched off. This means that this technology is not available for as long as the ESP remains switched off.

How ESP works

The electronic stabilization program (ESP) consists of ABS, EDL and ASR.

ESP helps to reduce the risk of skidding by braking the wheels individually. It works only when the engine is running.

The ESP system uses the steering wheel angle and road speed to calculate the changes of direction desired by the driver, and constantly compares this information with the actual behavior of the vehicle. If the path of travel is not being maintained accurately (for example if the vehicle is beginning to skid) ESP compensates automatically by applying the brake at the appropriate wheel.

The forces acting on the braked wheel help to bring the vehicle back on course. If the vehicle is tending to break away at the rear, the brake application is concentrated on the outside front wheel; if the vehicle is tends to follow a wider radius in a curve, the brake is mainly applied to the inside rear wheel.

How the Anti-slip regulation (ASR) works

The ASR reduces engine power to help prevent the driven wheels of front-wheel drive vehicles losing traction during acceleration. The system works in the entire speed range in conjunction with ABS. If the ABS fails, the ASR will also be out of action. ASR helps the vehicle to start moving, accelerate and climb a gradient in slippery conditions where this may otherwise be difficult or even impossible.

When do the indicator light and the button come on or flash?

- The indicator light comes on for about 2 seconds as an operational check when the ignition is switched on.
- The indicator light flashes while you are driving when the ESP is working.
- They come on if there is a malfunction in the ESP.
- They come on when the ESP is turned off.
- They also come on in the event of an ABS malfunction because the ESP system works in conjunction with the ABS.

If the indicator light comes on immediately after the engine is started, there may be a system-controlled deactivation. You can reactivate the ESP in this case by switching the ignition off and on again. When the indicator light goes out, the system is fully operational again.

If the battery has been disconnected, the indicator light comes on after the ignition is switched on. It must go out after the vehicle is driven a short distance.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the extra safety that ESP and ASR can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

- **Always drive safely.**
- **ESP and ASR cannot overcome the laws of physics. Slippery and wet roads are dangerous even with ESP!**
- **ESP and ASR cannot reduce the risk of accident, for example if you drive too fast for conditions or if you do not keep your distance from the vehicle in front of you.**
- **Although ESP and ASR are very effective, always remember that your vehicle's handling capability is limited by tire traction.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Always remember that vehicle alterations or modifications can affect the function of the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems. Examples of these alterations or modifications include a different wheel/tire combination and brake or chassis modifications** **⇒ page 32, "Repairs and technical modifications".**
- **Changing the vehicle suspension or using unapproved tire / rim combination can change the way the ABS, BAS, EDL and ESP systems work and reduce their effectiveness.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The effectiveness of ESP is also determined by the tires fitted ⇒ page 57, "Tires and wheels".**
- **Although ESP is very effective, always remember that your vehicle's handling capability is limited by tire traction.**

Note

In order to ensure that ESP and ASR functions correctly, all four wheels must be fitted with the same tires. Any differences in the rolling radius of the tires can cause the system to reduce engine power – even when this is not the best thing to do under the circumstances. ◀

Power steering

On vehicles with power steering, the amount of power assistance is regulated electronically according to vehicle speed, steering wheel torque and steering wheel angle.

The power assistance provided in the power steering system is not hydraulic, but rather mechanical using an electric motor. The advantages of this steering system include the fact that no hydraulic components such as hoses, oil containers, filters or hydraulic fluids are required. Furthermore, this is a considerable decrease in energy required. The electromechanical steering system, in contrast to the hydraulic system (which requires a constant flow of fluid), only consumes energy when the vehicle is actually being steered.

The fuel consumption is reduced as a result.

If the electromechanical power steering system fails, the power assisted steering system will still work. If the engine is switched off, the power steering does not function and the steering wheel is very hard to turn.

Indicator light or comes on

The indicator light comes on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched on.

If the indicator light (or) does not go out or comes on while you are driving, there is a problem in the electro-mechanical steering. Power steering assist may be reduced (light) or be lost completely (light and three audible warning signals). The steering should be inspected immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer . If the yellow warning light stays off after restarting and driving a short distance, there is no need to contact a authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

If the power assist is reduced or lost, you will find that is necessary to exert more force than normal to steer the vehicle ⇒ ⚠.

With the engine not running (e.g. when the car is being towed), there is also no power assist available.

⚠ WARNING

Turning the steering wheel is very difficult when the power steering system is not working and it is harder to control the vehicle.

- **Never let the vehicle coast with the engine switched off.**
- **If you do not pay attention to the warning lights which have come on, including the warning messages appearing in the display, this could lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle.**

Note

- Do not keep the steering wheel turned all the way to the left or right for more than 15 seconds when the engine is running. Doing so could damage the power steering system.
- If the battery has been disconnected, the yellow indicator light comes on after the ignition is switched on . If must go out after the vehicle is driven a short distance. ◀

Engine management and exhaust system

Applies to vehicles: with gasoline engine

Warning light: Electronic Power Control (EPC) EPC

This warning light monitors the engine management system on gasoline engines.

The warning light EPC (Electronic Power Control) lights up when the ignition is switched on to show that the light is working properly. It should go out when the engine has started running.

If a fault develops in the engine management system while you are driving, this warning light will light up. Have the engine checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop as soon as possible.

There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not pay attention to the warning lights which have come on, including the warning messages appearing in the display, this could lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Catalytic converter

Help the catalytic converter do its job for a long time:

- Always use unleaded gasoline.
- Never run the tank completely empty.
- Do not put in too much engine oil ⇒ page 45, "Adding engine oil".
- Never tow the vehicle to start it, use jumper cables if necessary ⇒ page 100.

If you notice misfiring, uneven running or loss of power when the vehicle is moving, slow down immediately and have the vehicle inspected by the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. These conditions will usually be indicated by an indicator light ⇒ booklet 3.1, chapter "Warning lights." If this happens, raw fuel can get into the exhaust system, damage the catalytic converter and escape into the atmosphere.

⚠ WARNING

A catalytic converter gets very hot and can cause fire causing serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never park where the catalytic converter could come into contact with dry grass or any other flammable materials under the vehicle.**
- **Never apply additional undercoating or rust proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or heat shields.**

Note

- Never drive until the tank is completely empty because irregular fuel supply could cause the engine to misfire. This allows raw, unburned fuel to get into the exhaust system and damage the catalytic converter.
- If the oil level is above level ⇒ page 44, fig. 6 (A), do not start the engine - this could damage the catalytic converter and the engine! See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.
- To avoid damage to the catalytic converter always read and heed the information on ⇒ page 37, "Fuel supply". ▶

For the sake of environment

Even when the emission control system is working perfectly, you may sometimes smell sulfur from the exhaust depending on the amount of sulfur in the fuel you are using. The smell can usually be solved by changing to another brand of gasoline. ◀

Warning light: Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL)

This warning light is part of the On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD).

The MIL is a required indicator to alert the driver to an emission related malfunction. The light comes on when the ignition is switched on and will go out after the engine is started and the idle has stabilized. This is to assure you that the MIL is working properly.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp (MIL) does not go out after the engine is started, or if it comes on while you are driving, there is a malfunction in the engine system.

If the lamp starts blinking, the catalytic converter could be damaged. There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

Continue driving with reduced power and contact the nearest authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. Have the engine checked.

Data Link Connector (DLC) for On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD)

The On-Board-Diagnostics in your vehicle monitors the various components of your emission control system. Each controlled component in your vehicle has been coded. In case of a malfunction the respective component in question will be identified and the fault stored in the form of a code in the control module's memory.

The stored data can only be displayed with special testing equipment (generic scan tool for OBD) to assure an accurate diagnosis.

To connect the special testing equipment, push the plug into the Data Link Connector (DLC) located to the right of the release lever for engine hood.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop can interpret the code and make the necessary correction.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not pay attention to the warning lights which have come on, including the warning messages appearing in the display, this could lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle. ◀

Driving and protecting the environment

Break-in Period

Break-in for a new engine

The engine needs to be broken in during the first 1000 miles (1500 km).

For the first 600 miles (1000 km)

– Do not drive faster than three quarters of top speed shown on the speedometer.

– Do not use full throttle.

– Avoid high engine speeds.

– Do not tow a trailer.

From 600 to 1000 miles (1000 to 1500 km)

– Speeds can be *gradually* increased to the maximum vehicle speed or maximum permissible engine speed (rpm).

During the first few hours of driving, the engine's internal friction is higher than it will be later when all the moving parts have been broken in.

For the sake of environment

If the engine is broken in gently, the life of the engine will be increased and its oil consumption reduced. ◀

Breaking in tires and brake pads

New tires should be broken in carefully for the first 350 miles (560 km). New brake pads should be broken in carefully for the first 150 miles (240 km).

During the first 150 miles (240 km), you can compensate for the reduced braking effect by applying more pressure to the brake pedal. If you need to make an emergency stop, the braking distance will be longer with new brake pads than with brake pads which have been broken in.

⚠ WARNING

New tires and brake pads do not provide maximum grip, control or braking ability.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).**
- **New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 150 miles (240 km) and must be broken in. You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking effect by applying more pressure on the brake pedal.**
- **Never follow other vehicles to closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.** ◀

Braking power and braking distance

Braking power and braking distance are influenced by driving situations and road conditions.

Worn **brake pads** will not provide good braking. The amount of wear and tear on the brake pads depends to a great extent on the conditions under which the vehicle is operated and the way the vehicle is driven. If you do a lot of city driving, drive short distances or have a sporty driving style, we recommend that you have the thickness of your brake pads checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer more frequently than recommended in the service schedule.

If you drive with **wet brakes**, for example after a driving through water, after heavy rainfall or after washing the vehicle, braking power will be reduced and stopping distances will be longer because the brake discs will be wet or in winter maybe even frozen – the brakes must be dried with several careful brake applications.

Brake fluid absorbs water and must be changed every two years. Heavy use of the brakes can cause vapor lock if the brake fluid is too old. Vapor lock reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.

⚠ WARNING

- **New tires and new brake pads do not provide maximum grip, control or braking ability.**
- **To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).**
- **New brake pads do not have the best stopping power for the first 150 miles (240 km) and must be broken in. You can compensate for the slightly reduced braking ability by driving with care and applying more pressure on the brake pedal.**
- **Never follow other vehicles to closely or put yourself into other situations that might require sudden, hard braking especially when the brake pads have not been broken in.**

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Breaking in tires and brake pads" on page 12.**

⚠ WARNING

Overheated brakes will reduce the vehicle's stopping power and increase stopping distances.

- **Always avoid overheating the brakes!**
- **When driving downhill, the brakes have to work hard and heat up quickly.**
- **Before driving down a long, steep hill, always reduce speed and downshift to a lower gear. This will let the vehicle use engine braking and reduce the load on the brakes.**
- **Always change the brake fluid at least every two years. Hard braking with old brake fluid may cause a vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.**
- **A damaged front spoiler or new non standard spoiler can reduce the airflow to the brakes and cause them to overheat.**
- **Always see an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop if you think that you may have damaged the front spoiler.**
- **Be sure to read and heed all WARNINGS and the information ⇒ page 31, "Accessories and parts" before buying accessories.** ◀

Operate your vehicle safely

For driving safely, always follow the specified maintenance intervals in your maintenance booklet ⇒ booklet 1.1 "Maintenance" - especially for changing the brake fluid. Hard use, primarily stop and go driving, operation in very dusty areas, trailer towing as well as other conditions may make it necessary to shorten maintenance intervals – see your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Your vehicle's condition is directly related to driving safety.

Therefore, always be sure to observe the following points before you drive off:

- Check lights and turn signals.
- Check fuel level.
- Make sure that all lights and all windows are clean.
- Adjust the mirrors.
- Make sure that the air intake slots between the engine hood and the windshield are free of leaves, snow and ice.
- Check warning and indicator lights when starting the engine.

Your personal driving style and attitude have a lot to do with safety.

Therefore, for your own safety:

- Wear your safety belts and wear them properly, even if you are just driving in the city or to the corner store ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts."
- Make sure that all passengers wear their safety belts properly, even those sitting in the rear ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts" Passengers not wearing safety belts endanger not only themselves in a crash, but also the driver and other passengers.
- Make sure that children always sit on the rear seat properly restrained by a restraint system appropriate for their size and age.
- Never transport a child in a rear-facing child or infant seat on the front passenger seat ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first."
- Adjust your seat so that you can easily reach all controls while you are as far away from the airbag as possible but not closer than 10 inches (25 cm) ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first" and ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment."
- The seating position is very important for the airbag performance ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."
- Always adjust the head restraints to the correct height. For maximum protection, adjust the head restraint so that the upper edge is as even with the top of your head as possible, but no lower than eye level and so that it is as close to the back of your head as possible ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first."
- Always make sure that the movement of the pedals is not restricted in any way ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Pedals."
- Store luggage and light items properly in the luggage compartment and on the roof ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Luggage compartment" and ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Roof rack."

If you drink, do not drive!

The use of alcohol, drugs and certain medications will seriously impair perception, reactions and driving ability, substantially increasing the risk of an accident, crash and personal injury.

Do not drive if you are tired.

Make frequent rest stops, at least after every two hours of driving.

Always adapt vehicle speed to traffic, road and weather conditions.

Remember, that especially on smooth, slippery roads, vehicle handling and braking depend a great deal on tire adhesion. On wet roads, the front wheels can hydroplane, especially at higher speeds. If this happens, you will then no longer be able to steer or brake properly.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always observe the posted speed limits and common sense. Your good judgment can mean the difference between arriving safely at your destination and being seriously injured in a crash or other kind of accident.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and additional information regarding safety ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first."** ◀

Trailer towing

Technical requirements

Your Volkswagen was designed primarily for passenger transportation. If you plan to tow a trailer, please remember that your car will be performing a service for which it was not primarily intended. The additional load will affect durability, handling, economy and performance.

Trailer towing not only places more stress on the vehicle, it also calls for more concentration from the driver.

For these reasons, always follow the operating and driving instructions given and use common sense.

Trailer hitch

Use a weight-carrying hitch conforming to the gross trailer weight. The hitch must be suitable for your vehicle and trailer and be securely bolted to appropriate place on the vehicle's chassis. Use only a trailer hitch with a removable ball mount. Always check with the trailer hitch manufacturer to make sure that you are using the correct hitch. Never install a "weight distributing" or "load equalizing" trailer hitch on your vehicle. ⇒ ⚠.

Do not use a bumper hitch.

The hitch must be installed so, that it does not interfere with the impact-absorbing bumper system. Do not make any changes to the vehicle exhaust and brake systems. From time to time, check that all hitch-mounting bolts remain securely fastened.

When you are not towing a trailer, remove the trailer hitch ball mount. This prevents the hitch from causing damage should your vehicle be struck from behind.

Engine cooling system

Towing a trailer makes the engine work harder. It is important that the engine cooling system is up to the job. Make sure that the cooling system has enough fluid.

Trailer brakes

If your trailer has its own brakes, check to be sure that it conforms to all regulations. The trailer brake system must never be directly connected to the vehicle's brake system.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains between your vehicle and trailer.

Trailer lights

Trailer lights must meet all regulations ⇒ ⓘ.

Never connect the trailer light system directly to the light system of your vehicle. Be sure to check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer for correct wiring, switches and relays.

Mirrors

If you cannot see the traffic behind you using the regular outside mirrors, then you must install extended mirrors. It's vital that you always have clear vision to the rear.

Maximum power consumption for the trailer

Do not exceed the ratings given in the chart ⇒ ⓘ.

Electrical load	Max. power
Tail lights total	60 watts
Turn signals per side	54 watts
Brake lights total	84 watts
Backup light total	54 watts

⚠ WARNING

An improperly installed or incorrect trailer hitch can cause a trailer to separate from the towing vehicle leading to serious personal injuries.

- **Never install a "weight distributing" or "load equalizing" trailer hitch on your vehicle. The vehicle was not designed for these kinds of trailer hitches. The hitch attachment can fail causing the trailer to tear loose from the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

When you no longer need to tow a trailer, remove the entire trailer hitch. Always seal all bolt holes to prevent water and deadly exhaust fumes from entering the vehicle.

Note

- Do not use a trailer which has LED (light emitting diodes) tail lights. This type of tail light can damage the electrical control unit of your vehicle.
- If the trailer socket is incorrectly connected, damage could result to the vehicles electrical system.
- If the maximum power consumption for the trailer is exceeded ⇒ page 15, damage could result to the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Never connect the electrical system for the trailer directly to the electrical connections for the rear lights or to other unsuitable power sources. Use only a suitable trailer socket to provide power to the trailer. ◀

Operating instructions

Maximum trailer weight

You can only tow typical class 1 or class 2 trailers with your vehicle.

The maximum gross trailer weight and the tongue load must never exceed the specifications listed in ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Never exceed the gross vehicle weight, which is the weight of the vehicle, including driver, passengers, luggage, trailer hitch and tongue weight of the loaded trailer.

At altitudes above 3,000 ft. (1,000 m), reduction of 10% of combined towing weight (vehicle plus trailer) for the beginning of every 3,000 ft. (1,000 m) should be observed.

Trailer load distribution

Be sure the load in the trailer is held securely in place to guard against shifting, be it forward, backward or sideways. A load that shifts can make it hard or even impossible to control your vehicle, particularly in an emergency situation.

With the tow vehicle empty and the trailer loaded, weight distribution is especially bad. If you absolutely must drive with this combination, drive with extra care and at a suitably slow speed.

Tongue load

For best vehicle handling when towing a trailer, adjust the trailer load so that the tongue load is at the maximum allowable or slightly lower. You can get an approximation of the tongue load with a bathroom scale or you can measure the load at a trucking company or weighing station.

The tongue load increases the weight of the rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry ⇒ ⚠.

The maximum tongue load only applies if both of the holes on the outer upright wall of the rear side rail are used to secure the trailer hitch.

Tire pressure

When towing a trailer, inflate the tires of your vehicle to the cold tire pressure listed under "Full load" on the sticker on the open edge of the driver's door. Inflate trailer tires to trailer and tire manufacturers' specifications.

Lights

Always check the headlight settings with the trailer hooked up before driving off. Adjust as necessary so that you can see the road ahead but not blind on coming traffic.

Check and make sure that all vehicle and trailer lights are working properly – especially the brake lights. ▶

Safety chains

Be sure trailer safety chains are properly connected from the trailer to the hitch on the vehicle. Leave enough slack in the chains to turn corners. When you install safety chains, make sure they will not drag on the road while you are driving.

The chains should cross under the trailer tongue to prevent it from dropping to the ground in case of separation from the hitch.

Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)

Always leave the ESP switched on when you tow a trailer. The ESP makes it easier to stabilize the trailer should it start to swerve or sway.

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the extra safety that ESP and ASR can provide tempt you into taking extra risks.

⚠ WARNING

Riding in a trailer is dangerous and may be illegal.

- **A person who is not properly restrained in a moving vehicle risks serious personal injury and even death in a crash.**
- **Never let anyone ride in your vehicle without being properly restrained.**
- **Never allow a passenger to ride in a trailer.**

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weight ratings and maximum permissible trailer weights can result in accidents leading to serious personal injury.

- **Never let the actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible weights. Also never let their combination exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**
- **Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.** ◀

Driving tips

For the best handling of vehicle and trailer, please note the following:

- A "balanced" rig is easier to operate and control. This means that the tow vehicle should be loaded to the extent possible and permissible while keeping the trailer as light as possible under the circumstances. Whenever possible, transfer some cargo to the luggage compartment of the tow vehicle while observing tongue load requirements and vehicle loading considerations.
- The higher the speed, the more difficult it becomes for the driver to control the rig. **Do not drive at the maximum permissible speed** ⇒ ⚠.
- Always apply brakes early. When driving downhill, downshift into lower gear (selector lever position 3, 2 or 1) to use the engine braking effect to slow down the vehicle. Use of the brakes alone can cause them to overheat and fail.
- The cooling effect of the radiator fan cannot be increased by downshifting because fan speed is independent of engine speed. Therefore, when driving uphill, you can always drive in the highest possible gear with low engine speed. If the coolant temperature warning light in the instrument cluster starts flashing in red, pull off the road, stop and let the engine idle for about 2 minutes to prevent a heat buildup and engine damage.

⚠ WARNING

- **Reduce your speed even more under unfavorable load, weather or wind conditions – particularly when going downhill.**
- **Be especially careful when passing other vehicles. Reduce vehicle speed immediately if the trailer shows the slightest sign of swaying.**
- **Never try to stop the swaying by accelerating.**
- **Always heed speed limits. In some areas speed limits for vehicles towing trailers are lower than for regular vehicles.** ◀

Trailer towing tips

Your vehicle handles differently when towing a trailer because of the additional weight and weight distribution. Safety, performance and economy will greatly depend on how carefully you load your trailer and operate your rig.

Before you actually tow your trailer, practice turning, stopping and backing up in an area away from traffic until you learn the feel of your vehicle and trailer unit.

Backing up is difficult and requires practice. Steering while backing up is generally opposite of that when backing your vehicle without a trailer.

Keep more distance between your vehicle and the one in front of you. You will need more room to stop.

To compensate for the trailer, you will need a larger than normal turning radius.

When passing, remember that you cannot accelerate as fast as you normally would because of the added load. Make sure you have enough room to pass. After passing, allow plenty of room for your trailer before changing lanes again.

Avoid jerky starts, sharp turns or rapid lane changes.

Parking

After parking, always block the wheels of both vehicle and trailer. Do not park with a trailer on a slope. If it cannot be avoided, do so only after doing the following:

- Apply foot brake.
- Have someone place chocks under both vehicle and trailer wheels.
- With the chocks in place, slowly release brakes until wheel blocks absorb the load.
- Turn wheels to curb (vehicle facing downhill) or to the street (when facing uphill).
- Apply parking brake firmly.
- Place automatic transmission in P.

If you move the selector lever of the automatic transmission to P before applying the parking brake and before blocking the wheels, you may need more force to move the lever out of the P position.

Restarting

When restarting after parking on a slope, reverse the procedure:

- Start the engine.
- Shift transmission into gear.
- Release the parking brake and slowly move away from the wheel blocks.
- Stop and have someone retrieve the wheel blocks.

Note

- Never tow a trailer during the break-in period of your vehicle.
- If you tow a trailer, your Volkswagen may require more frequent maintenance due to the extra load.
- Always check local regulations regarding trailer towing. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with anti-theft alarm system and a trailer towing set

Linking your trailer to the vehicle's anti-theft alarm system

The anti-theft alarm system will be triggered as soon as the electrical connection between the trailer and your locked vehicle is broken.

The electrical system of your vehicle **must be modified** at the Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop, if you want to integrate your trailer to the vehicle's anti-theft alarm system ⇒ ⓘ.

Connecting your trailer to the anti-theft alarm system

If you vehicle was built to include both the anti-theft alarm system and a trailer towing package, then the trailer towing package (if available) is integrated into the anti-theft alarm system. This ▶

is what you must do if you are going to tow a trailer:

- Insert the trailer connector completely into the vehicle trailer socket.
- Lock the vehicle with the remote key.
- The trailer is now integrated into the anti-theft alarm system

For more information about the anti-theft alarm system ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Anti-theft Alarm System."

Disconnecting your trailer from the anti-theft alarm system

- Unlock the vehicle with the remote key.
- The anti-theft alarm system is now off.

Note

Modifying the electrical system improperly can cause expensive damage to the vehicle's electrical system. We recommend you have your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop perform any service on the electrical system. ◀

Drive economically and help protect the environment

General notes

Fuel consumption depends on your personal driving style.

Fuel economy, environmental impact and wear on the engine, brakes and tires depend largely on three things:

- Personal driving style,
- Conditions of use (weather, road surface),
- Technical conditions.

By adopting an economical driving style and anticipating the traffic ahead, you can easily reduce fuel consumption by 10-15%. This section suggests some ways to reduce the impact on the environment while reducing operating costs at the same time. ◀

Think ahead when driving

A vehicle uses most fuel when accelerating. If you think ahead when driving, you will need to brake less and accelerate less. Wherever possible, let the vehicle roll slowly to a stop, for instance when you can see that the next traffic light is red. ◀

Regular servicing

By having your vehicle serviced regularly by a authorized Volkswagen dealer you can establish the basis for a good fuel economy even *before* you start driving. A well- maintained and serviced engine gives you the benefit of **better fuel efficiency** as well as maximum reliability and a greater resale value.

An engine that is not properly maintained can use up to 10% more fuel than necessary.

Check the **oil level** every time you get gas ⇒ page 44. Oil consumption depends largely on the engine load and engine speed. ◀

Short distances

The engine and catalytic converter must reach their **optimal operating temperature** before you see a significant reduction in exhaust emissions.

A cold engine will use more fuel until it reaches its operating temperature at which point the fuel consumption will improve. Also important is the outside temperature. The colder the outside temperature, the greater the fuel consumption. ◀

Warranty coverages

Your Volkswagen is covered by the following warranties:

- Limited New Vehicle Warranty
- Limited Powertrain Warranty
- Limited Warranty Against Corrosion Perforation
- Emission Control System Warranty
- Emissions Performance Warranty
- California Emissions Control Warranty (USA vehicles only)
- California Emissions Performance Warranty (USA vehicles only)

Detailed information regarding your warranties can be found in your Warranty Booklet. ◀

Cleaning and protection

Regular care and vehicle care products

Regular washing and care help maintain the value of your vehicle.

Regular care

Regular and expert care helps a vehicle to keep its value. This may also be one of the requirements of your New Vehicle Warranty in the event of corrosion repairs or if repainting should be necessary.

The best way to protect the vehicle against environmental contaminants is to wash and wax it *frequently*. The longer things like insects, bird droppings, tree sap, road dirt, industrial deposits, tar, soot or road salt and other aggressive materials stay on the vehicle, the more damage they do to the paint. High temperatures (including strong sunlight) increase corrosive effects.

After roads have been salted it is important to wash the **underbody** of the vehicle thoroughly.

Vehicle care products

Vehicle care products are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer. Keep the product instructions until you have used up the product ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicle care products can be dangerous. Improper use can result in serious personal injury and/or poisoning.

- **Always store vehicle care products in a safe place in original-containers that are securely closed.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**
- **Always keep vehicle care products out of the reach of children.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed all the instructions and all WARNINGS on the package before using vehicle care products.**
- **When using products which give off harmful fumes, always work outdoors or in a well ventilated area.**
- **Never use fuel, turpentine, engine oil, nail polish remover or other volatile fluids for vehicle care. They are poisonous and highly flammable. They could cause fires and explosions!**

⚠ WARNING

Unintended vehicle movement can cause serious personal injury.

- **Always turn off the engine, apply the parking brake firmly and remove the key from the ignition before washing your vehicle, or performing any maintenance or repairs.**

Note

Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the vehicle surface is dry. Using a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning could damage the paint or glass on your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water before removing it.

For the sake of environment

- When buying vehicle care products, try to select those that are not harmful to the environment.
- Never dispose vehicle care products with ordinary household waste. Always follow the manufacturer's instructions and heed all WARNINGS. ◀

Care of vehicle exterior

Automatic car wash

If you have accessories on your vehicle, check with the car wash operator before washing your vehicle. We recommend though, that you fold the outside mirrors to avoid damage.

Vehicle paint is durable enough that the vehicle can normally be washed without problems in an automatic car wash. However, the effect on the paint mainly depends on the type of car wash, the brushes used, the filtering of the wash water, and the type of detergents and wax solutions used, etc. If the paint is scratched or appears dull after going through the car wash, immediately bring this to the attention of the car wash operator.

After the vehicle has been washed, the brake discs and pads will be wet (they could even be icy in the winter) and stopping distances will be longer. Be sure to "dry" the brakes with several careful brake applications before driving off ⇒ page 13.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 13, "Braking power and braking distance".** ◀

Washing by hand

– First soften the dirt with water and rinse off.

– Using a soft sponge, a wash glove or a wash brush, wipe the vehicle in a downward motion using gentle pressure.

– Rinse out the sponge or wash glove regularly.

– Use special cleaners only on hard to remove dirt or grime.

– Use a second sponge or wash glove to wipe down the wheel rims and under the door sills.

– Rinse the vehicle thoroughly with water.

– Dry the painted surfaces carefully with a chamois.

– When it is **cold outside**, make sure you wipe all rubber seals and their contact surfaces dry so that they do not freeze. Use a silicone spray to keep rubber seals pliable.

– **After washing** your vehicle, avoid sudden stops or maneuvers. The brakes have to be "dried out" first by gently applying the brakes a few times ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 13, "Braking power and braking distance".** ▶

⚠ WARNING

Sharp edges under the vehicle can cut exposed skin.

- **Always protect your hands and arms from cuts on sharp metal edges when cleaning the underbody, the inside of the wheel housings etc.**

Note

- Never try to remove dirt, mud or dust if the vehicle surface is dry. Using a dry cloth or sponge for cleaning could damage the paint or glass on your vehicle. Soak dirt, mud or dust with plenty of water before removing it.
- When rinsing the vehicle, do not let water get into the lock cylinders or point the hose at gaps around the doors, hood or tail gate. The water could freeze and make it difficult to open the vehicle.
- To help prevent damage to the paint, do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight.

For the sake of environment

To protect the environment, wash the vehicle only in special wash bays that can handle oily dirt that is washed off the car. ◀

Washing the vehicle with a power washer

Be very careful when using a power washer!

– Always follow the instructions for the power washer, particularly those about the **pressure** and the **spraying distance**.

– Increase the spraying distance for soft materials and painted bumpers ⇒ ⓘ.

– Do not use a power washer to remove ice or snow from windows ⇒ page 25.

– Never use concentrated jet nozzles or so-called "dirt blasters" especially on tires ⇒ ⚠.

– After the vehicle has been washed, the brake discs and pads will be wet (they could even be icy in the winter) and stopping distances will be longer. Be sure to "dry" the brakes with several careful brake applications before driving off ⇒ page 13.

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 13, "Braking power and braking distance".**

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious, invisible and permanent tire damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

- **Never wash tires with a jet that sprays the water out in a direct stream even at a distance even for a very short amount of time.**

Note

- Water temperature should not be more than 140° F (60° C).
- If you use a power washer, be sure to keep it a safe distance from the Parking Assistance sensors[1] in the front and rear bumpers. If you hold it too close to the sensors, you could damage them. ▶

[1] Where applicable

- To prevent possible damage to your vehicle, hold the power washer far away from soft materials, such as rubber hoses, plastic parts, etc. This also applies to painted bumpers. The closer you hold the power washer to these materials, the greater is the force against them. ◀

Waxing the vehicle

Waxing your vehicle regularly protects the paint.

Apply wax to your vehicle if water does not form small drops and run off when the paint is *clean*.

Good quality *hard wax* is available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

A good coat of wax helps to protect the paint from environmental pollution and more aggressive dirt ⇒ page 21, "Regular care and vehicle care products". It also helps to protect against minor scratches.

Even if a **wax solution** is used regularly at the car wash, it is advisable to protect the paint with a coat of hard wax at least twice a year.

Note

To prevent damage: Do not wax or polish headlights and rear lights. ◀

Polishing the paint

Polishing helps to restore paint gloss.

Polishing is necessary if the paint has lost its shine, and you cannot get the gloss back with wax. Your authorized Volkswagen dealer has polish that is right for your vehicle.

The vehicle must be waxed after polishing if the polish used does not contain wax compounds to seal the paint ⇒ page 24, "Waxing the vehicle".

Note

To prevent damage to the paint:

- Do not wax or polish matte finishes and plastic parts.
- Do not wax or polish your vehicle if it is dusty or dirty or in a sandy or dusty environment.

Note

To prevent damage: Do not wax or polish headlights and rear lights. ◀

Caring for plastic parts

Solvents will damage plastic parts.

If you cannot clean plastic parts by normal washing, clean them with special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning products.

Note

Cleaning products that contain solvents will damage plastic parts. ◀

Cleaning windows and outside mirrors

Cleaning windows

– Dampen the windows with commercially available, alcohol-based glass cleaner.

– Dry the windows with a clean chamois or a lint-free cloth.

Removing snow

– Use a small brush to remove snow from the windows and mirrors.

Removing ice

– Use a de-icer spray.

Use a clean cloth to dry the windows. The chamois leather, which was used to wipe paint surfaces, contains oily residue from protective agents and would smear the glass ⇒ ⚠.

If possible use a de-icing spray to remove ice. If you have to use an ice scraper, push it only in one direction – away from you ⇒ ⓘ.

Use window cleaner or a silicone remover to remove rubber, oil, grease and silicone deposits.

Wax deposits have to be removed with a special cleaner. Wax deposits on the windshield could cause the wiper blades to rub. A window cleaner specifically for removing wax will stop the blades from rubbing if added to the windshield wash water. Grease removing cleaners will not remove wax deposits.

⚠ WARNING

Poor visibility increases the risk of collisions and other accidents.

- **Always make sure all windows are clear of ice, snow, and condensation for good visibility – out the windshield, side and rear windows.**

ⓘ Note

- Never use warm or hot water to remove snow and ice from windows and mirrors. This could cause the glass to crack!
- The heating elements for the rear defogger are on the inside of the rear window. To prevent damage, do not put stickers over the heating elements on the inside of the rear window.
- Never move the ice scraper back and forth to prevent dirt from being ground against the glass when you pull the scraper back towards you. ◀

Cleaning windshield wiper blades

Wiper blades should be cleaned regularly.

Clean wiper blades are important so that you can see.

– Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the windshield wiper blades.

– Use window cleaner to clean the windshield wiper blades. Use a sponge or a cloth to remove stubborn dirt.

ⓘ Note

Before cleaning the windshield wiper blades see ⇒ page 25, "Cleaning windshield wiper blades". ◀

Care of rubber gaskets

If rubber gaskets are well maintained, they will not freeze as easily.

– Use a soft cloth to remove dust and dirt from the rubber gaskets.

– Spray rubber gaskets with silicone or use another vehicle care product to keep them soft and prevent freezing.

The rubber seals on the doors, windows etc. will remain pliable and last longer if they are treated with a suitable care product (for example silicone spray).

Caring for rubber seals will also prevent premature aging and leaks. The doors will be easier to open. If rubber seals are well maintained, they will not freeze as easily in winter. ◀

Locks

Lock cylinders can freeze up in winter.

To de-ice the door lock cylinder we recommend using a special spray to replenish lubricating oils and provide anti-corrosion protection. Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance.

Note

The use of door lock de-icers containing grease solvents can cause the lock cylinders to rust. ◀

Cleaning chrome parts

– Clean chrome parts with a damp cloth.

– Polish chrome parts with a soft, dry cloth.

You can also use special **chrome cleaner**. Chrome cleaners will help remove surface grime and stains from chrome surfaces.

Note

To prevent scratching chrome surfaces:

- Do not use an abrasive care product on chrome.
- Do not clean or polish chrome parts that are dirty or dusty or clean or polish them in a sandy or dusty environment. ◀

Cleaning alloy wheels

Every two weeks

– Wash salt and brake dust off alloy wheels.

– Use an acid free detergent to clean the wheels.

Every three months

– Apply a hard wax compound to the wheels.

Light alloy wheels require regular care to keep them looking nice. It is important to remove road salt and brake dust by regularly washing the wheels, otherwise the finish will dull and they will be hard to clean.

Always use an acid-free detergent for alloy wheels.

Do not use vehicle polish or other abrasive products. If the protective coating is damaged, for example by stone impact, the damaged area should be repaired immediately. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of power washers can cause serious, invisible and permanent tire damage leading to tire failure and loss of vehicle control.

- **Never wash tires with a jet that sprays the water out in a direct stream even from a distance or for a very short time.**

⚠ WARNING

Wet brakes or brakes coated with ice or road salt react slower and need longer stopping distances.

- **Carefully apply brakes for a test.**
- **Always dry brakes and clean off ice coatings and salt coatings with a few cautious brake applications.**
- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS** **⇒ page 13, "Braking power and braking distance".** ◀

Chassis

The underbody of the vehicle is coated to help protect it from corrosion and damage.

The undercoating could be damaged during normal use but, particularly when driving off-road. We recommend that the undercoating on the vehicle and the protective coatings on the suspension be inspected, and repaired if necessary, before and after the winter season.

Repair work and additional undercoating should be carried out only by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

The exhaust system gets very hot when the vehicle is driven and can cause fire resulting in serious personal injury.

- **Never apply additional undercoating or rust proofing on or near the exhaust manifold, exhaust pipes, catalytic converter or the heat shields.** ◀

Cleaning the engine compartment

Be especially careful when cleaning the engine compartment!

Anti-corrosion treatment

The engine compartment is treated at the factory to help prevent corrosion ⇒ page 39.

Good corrosion protection is particularly important in the winter where road salt is used. To prevent salt damage, the entire engine compartment should be thoroughly cleaned before and after the salting period.

Your authorized Volkswagen dealer has the right cleaners and preservatives and the necessary equipment to apply them correctly. We recommend having this work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Corrosion protection is usually removed when the engine compartment is cleaned with grease solvents. Whenever the engine is cleaned, make sure that corrosion protection is applied to all surfaces, seams, joints and components in the engine compartment.

Plenum

Remove leaves from the plenum in front of the windshield under the engine hood. Removing leaves and debris regularly helps prevent the water drain holes from becoming blocked, and it helps to prevent debris from getting inside the vehicle through the heating and ventilation ducts.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39 before working in the engine compartment.
- Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the engine hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.
- When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the engine hood:
  - Remove the key from the ignition.
  - Apply the parking brake firmly and put the selector in P (Park).
  - Keep children and others away from the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can result in serious personal injury. Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly - even when the engine has been switched off for a longer period of time and the key has been removed from the ignition.

For the sake of environment

Fuel, grease and oil deposits can run off when the engine is washed. The polluted waste water must pass through an oil separator before disposal. Have the engine cleaned only by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or other qualified workshop that has the necessary equipment to protect the environment. ◀

Care of the vehicle interior

Cleaning plastic parts and the instrument panel

– Use a clean, damp cloth to clean plastic parts and the instrument panel.

– If this does not work, use a special **solvent-free** plastic cleaning product.

⚠ WARNING

Using solvents on surfaces where airbags are located can change the way airbags deploy in a crash.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never clean the instrument panel and the surfaces above airbag modules with cleaning products containing solvents.
- Products containing solvents will change the properties of the plastics and may cause plastic parts to break and fly around when the airbag deploys in a crash causing injury.

Note

Cleaning products that contain solvents will damage plastic materials. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with wooden interior trim

Cleaning wooden trim

– Clean the wooden trim with a clean moist cloth.

– If this does not provide satisfactory results, use a *gentle* soap solution.

Note

Cleaning products that contain solvents will damage plastic materials. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with fabric trim and cloth seat covers

Cleaning cloth seat covers and fabric trim

Cloth seat covers and fabric trim on the doors, headliner etc. can be cleaned with special cleaners or with dry foam and a soft brush. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with leather seat covers

Cleaning leather

Normal cleaning

– Moisten a cotton or woolen cloth with water and wipe over the leather surfaces.

Removing stubborn dirt

– Stubborn dirt can be removed using cloth moistened with a mild soap solution (pure liquid soap: two tablespoons diluted in one quart (liter) of water).

– Do not let the water soak through the leather or soak into the seams.

– Then wipe off with a soft, dry cloth.

Leather care

– The leather should be treated regularly (about twice a year) with a special leather-care product.

– Apply these products very sparingly.

– Then wipe off any excess with a soft, dry cloth.

Because of the high quality leather used in your vehicle, its natural properties have certain sensitivity to grease and dirt, etc. A degree of care is required in everyday use and when maintaining leather.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the vehicle is left standing in the sun for long periods, protect the leather against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. However, slight color variations in high-quality natural leather are normal.

Note

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on leather.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by experts that have special knowledge and experience with leather cleaning. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Alcantara seat covers

Cleaning Alcantara®

Removing dust and dirt

– Moisten a cloth and wipe down the seat covers.

Removing stains

– Moisten a cloth with lukewarm water.

– Dab at the stain. Start at the outside and work inward.

Do not use leather cleaning products on Alcantara® seat covers.

You may use a suitable shampoo on dust and dirt.

Dust and grit in the pores and seams can scratch and damage the surface. If the car is left standing in the sun for long periods, the Alcantara® should be protected against direct sunlight to prevent it from fading. However, slight color variations will arise in normal use. ▶

Note

- Do not use solvents, wax polish, shoe cream, spot removers or similar products on Alcantara®.
- To avoid damage, stubborn stains should be removed by a specialist cleaning company. ◀

Cleaning safety belts

A dirty safety belt can prevent a safety belt from working properly.

Keep safety belts clean and check all safety belts for damage regularly.

Cleaning safety belts

– Carefully pull the dirty safety belt out of the retractor and leave it spooled out.

– Clean the dirty safety belts with a *gentle* soap solution.

– Let the safety belt fabric dry.

– Do not roll up the safety belt until it is completely dry.

The automatic belt will not be able to roll back properly if there is dirt on the belt.

⚠ WARNING

Damaged safety belts reduce the overall effectiveness of the safety belts and increase the risk of serious personal injury and death whenever a vehicle is being used.

- **Damaged safety belts must be replaced, they cannot be repaired.**
- **Never use chemical cleaning agents, solvents or any substance that may damage or weaken the safety belt webbing or any other**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

parts of the safety belt. Never let the belts come into contact with corrosive fluids.

- **Immediately have damaged safety belts replaced with the correct replacement belts by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. Replacement after a crash may be necessary even if a safety belt does not have visible damage.**
- **Check the condition of all safety belts at regular intervals. If you notice that the belt webbing, hardware, retractor or buckle of any of the safety belts is damaged, the belt must immediately be replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.**
- **Never attempt to repair a damaged safety belt yourself. Never remove or modify the safety belts in any way.**
- **Be sure to read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safety belts."**

Note

After cleaning the safety belts, always allow them to dry completely before letting them roll up into the retractor to prevent the retractor from being damaged. ◀

Accessories, new parts, repairs and modifications

Accessories and parts

Always consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer before purchasing accessories and parts for your vehicle.

Your vehicle is designed to offer a high standard of active and passive safety.

Please consult an authorized Volkswagen dealer for advice before installing accessories, replacement parts or other equipment.

Authorized Volkswagen dealers have the latest information from the manufacturer and can recommend accessories and parts that are suitable for your vehicle and personal requirements. They can also help answer questions you might have regarding official regulations.

We recommend you only use approved **Volkswagen accessories** and **genuine Volkswagen parts**®. These parts and accessories have been evaluated by Volkswagen for suitability, reliability and safety. The Volkswagen dealerships have the necessary experience and facilities to ensure that the parts are installed properly.

Volkswagen cannot assume responsibility for any after-market non-Volkswagen parts used, even if these parts have been approved by an official testing agency or are covered by an official certificate or seal of approval.

⚠ WARNING

Improper vehicle equipment or modifications can cause damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **In the interest of safety, we urge you to use only authorized Volkswagen accessories and genuine Volkswagen parts® that have been designed to be used on your vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly.

- **Never place or attach accessories or other objects (such as cup holders, telephone brackets, note pads, large, heavy or bulky objects) on the doors, on the windshield, over or near the area marked "AIRBAG" on the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat backrests, roof areas above the doors or between those areas and yourself.**
- **Objects on or near the surfaces where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury in a crash, especially when the airbags inflate.**
- **Be sure to read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."** ◀

Repairs and technical modifications

Repairs and modifications must always be carried out according to the manufacturer's specifications.

Unauthorized modifications to the electronic components or software in the vehicle may cause malfunctions ⇒ ⚠. Electronic components are linked together in networks and other systems may be negatively affected by improper modifications or improperly installed accessories. This can seriously impair safety and lead to excessive wear of components.

Changing the vehicle's suspension system can change the way that the airbag system performs in a crash. For example, using tire-rim combinations not approved by Volkswagen, lowering the vehicle, changing the stiffness of the suspension, including the springs, suspension struts, shock absorbers can change the forces that are measured by the airbag sensors and sent to the control unit. Some suspension changes can, for example, increase the force levels measured by the sensors and make the airbag system deploy in crashes in which it would not deploy if the changes had not been made. Other kinds of changes may reduce the force levels measured by the sensors and prevent the airbag from deploying when it should.

We recommend that all necessary work be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer using genuine Volkswagen parts®.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly performed modifications or other work that is not properly performed on your vehicle can cause malfunctions leading to accidents and serious personal injury.

- **Never install suspension components that do not have the same performance characteristics as the components originally installed on your vehicle. Never use tire-rim combinations that have not been approved by Volkswagen.**

⚠ WARNING

Improper care, servicing and repair procedures can increase the risk of personal injury and death by preventing an airbag from deploying when needed or deploying an airbag unexpectedly.

- **Changing the vehicle's suspension including use of unapproved tire-rim combinations can change airbag performance and increase the risk of serious personal injury in a crash.**
- **Be sure to read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."** ◀

Cellular phones and CB radios

You will need an outside antenna for cellular phones and CB radios.

Volkswagen has approved your vehicle for use with cellular phones and CB radios providing the following conditions:

- correct installation of outside antenna,
- transmitting power is no more than a maximum of 10 watts.

An outside antenna is needed to give the equipment its optimal range and to prevent interference with electronics in the vehicle.

If you want to use a cellular phone or a CB radio with a transmitting power greater than 10 watts, first check with a authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Cellular phones and CB radios should be installed only by a qualified workshop or by your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Carefully follow the operating instructions for your cellular telephone or CB radio.

⚠ WARNING

Driver distraction causes accidents, collisions and serious personal injury!

- **Never let yourself be distracted by setting, adjusting or using the cellular phone or CB radio.**
- **Use the cellular phone or CB radio only if road, traffic and weather conditions permit and you will not be distracted from your driving.**
- **Always set volume levels so that you can clearly hear horns, sirens and other warning sounds outside the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **In areas with no or inadequate cellular phone network service and occasionally in tunnels, garages and underpasses as well, a telephone call cannot be put through – no emergency calls either!**
- **Using a cellular telephone or CB radio inside the vehicle without having a separate outside antenna can be dangerous to your health and that of your passengers because the electromagnetic radiation energy that these devices emit may be above established limits.**
- **Always switch off completely cellular phones or CB radios while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Never attach anything, including accessories (for example cup holders or telephone brackets) to the airbag covers or within the airbag deployment zone ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Airbag system."**
- **Objects on or near the surfaces where airbags are located can come loose and cause serious personal injury if the airbag deploys.**

Note

Improper installation of cellular telephones, CB radios or other electronic components can cause other vehicle systems to malfunction. The most common causes of faults are:

- no external antenna,
- incorrectly installed external antenna,
- transmitting power in excess of 10 watts. ◀

Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules

Your vehicle is **not equipped** with an Event Data Recorder (EDR), installed by some manufacturers for the express purpose of capturing data for retrieval after an accident or crash event. EDR's are sometimes called "crash recorders."

Some state laws restrict the retrieval or downloading of data stored by EDR's that were installed in a vehicle for the express purpose of retrieving data after an accident or crash event without the Owner's consent.

Although your vehicle is not equipped with an EDR, it is equipped with a number of electronic control modules for various vehicle systems such as, for example, engine function, emission control, as well as for the airbags and safety belts.

These electronic control modules also record vehicle-related data during normal vehicle operation for diagnostic and repair purposes. The recording capacity of the electronic control modules is limited to data (no sound is recorded) and only a small amount of data is actually recorded over a very limited period of time and stored when a system fault or other condition is sensed by a control unit. Some of the data then stored may relate to vehicle speed, direction, braking as well as restraint system use and performance in the event of a crash or other condition. Stored data can only be read and downloaded with special equipment.

If your vehicle is equipped with the necessary OnStar® telemetry equipment and you have subscribed to the appropriate OnStar service, your vehicle's location will be transmitted to the OnStar service center. Additionally, the occurrence of an incident in which airbag deployment has been registered will be automatically signaled to the OnStar service center to enable emergency service or other assistance to be dispatched to your location if needed. For more information refer to your Telematics Service Agreement with OnStar. ◀

Checking and Filling

Filling the tank

The fuel filler flap opens from inside the vehicle.

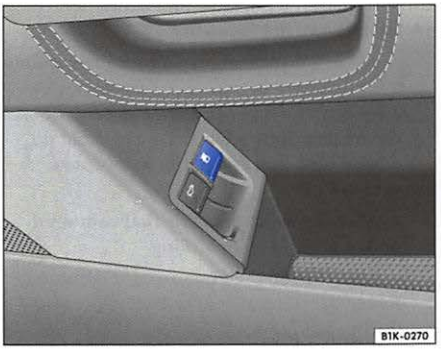


Fig. 2 Detail of the driver door: the fuel filler flap release button

Fig. 3 Open fuel filler flap with filler cap attached to the flap

The engine and the cellular phone[2] must be turned off when refueling.

Opening the fuel filler flap

– Pull the switch in the driver door up ⇒ fig. 2. The fuel filler flap is released.

– Open the fuel filler flap and turn the tank cap counter-clockwise.

– Hook the filler cap to the top of the filler flap ⇒ fig. 3.

Closing the fuel filler flap

– Screw on the fuel filler neck clockwise until it you hear it click into position.

– Always make sure the tank cap is screwed on all the way clockwise.

– Close the fuel filler flap. Make sure you hear it click into place.

The fuel filler flap is at the rear of the vehicle on the right rear quarter panel.

When the indicator light comes on and the text **PLEASE REFUEL!** appears in the instrument cluster, there are still about 1.6 gallons (7 liters) of gas in the tank. A warning chime will also sound.

The automatic filler nozzle should switch itself off when the tank is "full." Do not try to put in more gas after the pump stops. Topping off the tank in this way will fill the expansion chamber in the gas tank and causes the fuel to overflow when the temperature rises.

The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap. For more information on fuel ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Fuel filler cap not closed properly

An indicator light[3] (if available) in the instrument cluster will come on if the fuel filler cap is not properly closed. If the indicator light or ▶

[2] Where applicable

[3] Where applicable

display comes on, turn off the engine and tighten the fuel filler cap properly.

Once the cap is properly tightened, the display will go out when the ignition is turned on again and the check cycle is complete. This may take a few minutes to complete.

If the light comes on unlock the fuel filler flap, unscrew the fuel filler cap and twist the fuel filler cap clockwise until you hear a definite "click."

Once the cap is properly and completely closed and the ignition has been switched on again the warning message will disappear after about 10 minutes.

⚠ WARNING

Improper refueling or handling of fuel can cause fire, explosion and severe burns.

- **Always make sure the fuel cap is screwed on all the way. This prevents fuel from spilling out or from evaporating.**
- **Fuel is highly flammable and can cause severe burns and other injuries.**
- **Failure to shut the engine off while refueling and/or to insert the pump nozzle fully into the car's filler neck could cause fuel overflow and fuel spray. Fuel spray and overflowing fuel are dangerous because they can cause fire or serious injury.**
- **For safety reason the engine must be turned off when refueling.**
- **Never use a cellular telephone or CB radio while refueling. The electromagnetic radiation can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors and cause a fire.**
- **Never get back into your vehicle while refueling. If in exceptional circumstances you must get back in your vehicle while refueling, make certain that you close the door and touch metal to discharge static electricity before touching the filler nozzle again. Static electricity can cause sparks that can ignite fuel vapors released during refueling.**
- **Never smoke or have an open flame anywhere in or near your vehicle when refueling or filling a portable fuel container.**

⚠ WARNING

- **For your safety, we strongly recommend that you do not travel with a portable fuel container in your vehicle. The container, full or empty may leak and could cause a fire, especially in a crash.**
- **If, under exceptional circumstances, you must transport a portable fuel container, please observe the following:**
  - **Never fill a portable fuel container while it is anywhere in or on the vehicle (for example, in the luggage compartment, or on the trunk). Static electricity can build up while filling and can ignite fuel vapors causing a fire.**
  - **Always place a portable fuel container on the ground before filling.**
  - **Always keep the filler nozzle completely inside the portable container before and during filling.**
  - **If filling a portable container made of metal, the filler nozzle must always be in contact with the container. This will help prevent static electricity from discharging and cause a fire.**
  - **Never spill fuel inside the vehicle or luggage compartment. Fuel vapors are highly flammable.**
  - **Always observe local and state / provincial laws regarding the use, storage and transportation of fuel containers.**
  - **Make certain the fuel container meets industry standards (ANSI / ASTM F852–86).**

(!) Note

- Remove fuel spills from the paint immediately to prevent paint damage.
- Never run the tank completely dry. An irregular gas supply could cause misfiring. As a result, unburned gas could get into the catalytic converter and cause damage.

For the sake of environment

Do not try to put in more fuel after the automatic filler nozzle has switched off; this may cause fuel to over flow and pollute the environment particularly when it gets hot outside. ▶

Tips

Remember to refuel when the tank is 1/4 full to reduce the risk of running out of fuel, especially in remote areas. ◀

Fuel supply

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Gasoline

The correct gasoline grades are listed on a sticker inside the fuel filler flap.

Octane rating

Octane rating indicates a gasoline's ability to resist engine damaging "knock" caused by pre-ignition. Therefore, buying the correct grade of gasoline is very important to help prevent possible engine damage and a loss of engine performance.

The recommended gasoline octane rating for your engine can be found on a label located on the inside of the fuel filler flap. This rating may be specified as AKI (CLC) or RON (ROZ).

Gasolines most commonly used in the United States and Canada have the following octane ratings that can usually be found on the filler pump:

- Premium Grade: 91 – 96 AKI
- Regular Grade: 87 – 90 AKI

Unleaded gasoline

Unleaded gasoline is available throughout the USA, Canada, and in most European countries. We recommend that you do not take your vehicle to areas or countries where unleaded gasoline may not be available.

Gasoline containing alcohol or MTBE

You may use unleaded gasoline blended with alcohol or MTBE (methyl tertiary butyl ether; commonly referred to as oxygenates) if the blended mixture meets the following criteria:

Blend of gasoline methanol (wood alcohol or methyl alcohol):

- Anti-knock index must be 87 or higher,
- Blend must contain no more than 3% methanol,
- Blend must contain more than 2% co-solvents.

Blend of gasoline and ethanol (grain alcohol or ethyl alcohol):

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher,
- Blend must not contain more than 10% ethanol.

Blend of gasoline and MTBE:

- Anti-knock index must be 87 AKI or higher,
- Blend must contain not more than 15% MTBE.

Seasonally adjusted gasoline

Many gasolines are blended to perform especially well for winter or summer driving. During seasonal change-over, we suggest that you fill up at busy gas stations where the seasonal adjustment is more likely to be made in time.

Note

- Do not use any fuel with octane ratings lower than 87 AKI or 91 RON otherwise expensive engine damage will occur.
- Do not use leaded gasoline! Using leaded gasoline will severely damage your vehicle's catalytic converter and its ability to reduce exhaust emissions.
- Methanol fuels that do not meet these requirements may cause corrosion and damage to plastic and rubber components in the fuel system.
- Do not use fuels that fail to meet the criteria specified above. ▶

- If you are unable to determine whether or not a particular fuel blend meets the specifications above, ask your service station or its fuel supplier.
- Do not use fuel for which the contents cannot be identified.
- Fuel system damage and performance problems resulting from the use of fuels different from those specified above are not the responsibility of Volkswagen and are not covered under the New Vehicle or the Emission Control System Warranties.

For the sake of environment

Just one tank full of leaded gas will seriously reduce the efficiency of the catalytic converter.

Tips

If you notice a loss of fuel economy or driveability and performance problems using one of these fuel blends, we recommend that you switch to unblended fuel. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with a gasoline engine

Gasoline additives

Gasoline additives improve the quality of the gasoline.

Gasoline quality influences engine behavior, efficiency, performance and service life. For this reason you should always use good quality gasoline containing additives. These additives will help to prevent corrosion, keep the fuel system clean and prevent deposits from building up in the engine.

If good quality gasoline with additives is not available, or if engine problems arise, additives may be added to the gasoline.

You can also buy gasoline additives separately and add them to the gasoline yourself if you have problems starting or if the engine does not run smoothly.

Not all gasoline additives are effective. We recommend you use only genuine Volkswagen gas additives for gasoline engines. These additives are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer. You will also receive information on how to use them.

Do not mix other gas additives with the gas. ◀

Working in the engine compartment

Safety is job No. 1 when working in the engine compartment

Special care must be taken when working on the engine or on components in the engine compartment.

Before starting any work on the engine or in the engine compartment:

1. Move the gearshift lever into neutral (Manual transmission) or the selector lever to **P** (Automatic transmission).

2. Apply the parking brake firmly.

3. Switch off the engine and remove the key from the ignition.

4. Wait for the engine to cool down.

5. Keep children and others away from the vehicle.

6. Open the engine hood.

All service fluids, spark plugs, batteries etc. are constantly being developed and improved. Authorized Volkswagen dealers are kept up-to-date by the manufacturer. For this reason we recommend that you have these replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. Always read the notes below. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a hazardous area ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- **Engine exhaust, some of its constituents, and certain vehicle components contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects and reproductive harm. In addition, certain fluids contained in vehicles and certain products of component wear contain or emit chemicals known to the State of California to cause cancer and birth defects or other reproductive harm.**
- **Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

⚠ WARNING

The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- **Always use extreme caution when doing any work in the engine compartment. Always follow commonly accepted safety practices and use common sense. Never risk personal injury.**
- **Never perform any work in the engine compartment unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct technical information and the correct tools! If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**
- **Never open the engine hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.**
- **Always let the engine cool down completely before carefully opening the engine hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.**
- **When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the engine hood:**
  - **Apply the parking brake firmly and put the gearshift lever into neutral (Manual transmission) or the selector to P (Automatic transmission).**
  - **Remove the key from the ignition.**
  - **Keep children and others away from the vehicle.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can result in serious personal injury. Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly - even when the engine has been switched off for a longer period of time and the key has been removed from the ignition.
- Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. A hot engine will heat the coolant and put it under pressure. Removing a cap that is under pressure can result in serious personal injury and/or burns.
- Always protect face, hands and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.
- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
- Never spill fluids on hot engine parts or hot exhaust system. Spilled fluids can cause a fire!
- Never short-circuit the electrical system, especially where the jumper cables are attached – the batteries could explode!
- Never leave any objects in the engine compartment, for example cleaning rags and tools. Objects left behind can cause malfunctions and even fires.
- Never work under the vehicle unless you have safely secured the vehicle from moving. If you must work under the vehicle with the wheels on the ground, always make sure the vehicle is on level ground, the wheels are blocked from moving and the key is not in the ignition.
- Always support your vehicle with safety stands if you have to work underneath it. The jack supplied with the vehicle is not strong enough for this purpose and can collapse causing serious personal injury.
- If you have to perform a check or repair when the engine is running, there are more risks from the rotating parts, such as the drive belts, generator, radiator fan, etc., and from the high-voltage ignition system. Always use extreme care:

⚠ WARNING (continued)

  - Never touch the electrical wiring of the ignition system.
  - Always make sure that jewelry, loose clothing and long hair do not get caught in rotating engine parts. Before starting any work remove jewelry, tie back and cover hair, and do not wear clothing that can hang down and get caught in moving engine parts.
  - Always use extreme caution if the accelerator pedal has to be depressed to perform a check. The vehicle could move suddenly, even if the parking brake is applied.
- If work on the fuel system or the electrical system is necessary:
  - Always disconnect the batteries. Make sure the vehicle is unlocked when disconnecting the batteries, or the alarm will go off.
  - Never smoke.
  - Never work near heaters, water heaters of other open flames.
  - Always have an approved fire extinguisher nearby.
- To avoid electrical shock and personal injury while the engine is running or being started:
  - never touch ignition cables,
  - never touch other components of the high voltage electronic ignition system,
  - never touch the gas discharged (Xenon) headlights wiring.

Note

When changing or topping off service fluids, make absolutely certain that you fill the fluids into the correct reservoirs. Using incorrect fluids will result in serious malfunctions and engine damage!

For the sake of environment

Service fluid leaks are harmful to the environment. Regularly check the ground underneath your vehicle. If you find spots of oil or other fluids, have your vehicle checked by your authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. ◀

Opening the engine hood

The engine hood is released from inside the vehicle.

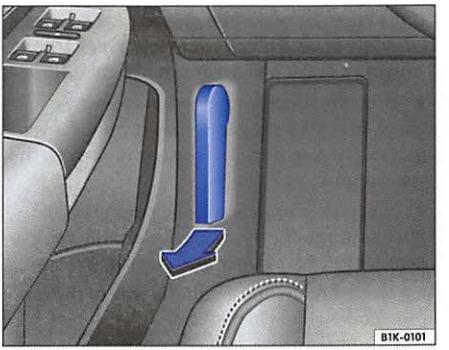


Fig. 4 Detail of the footwell: the release lever for the engine hood is located in the footwell on the driver side

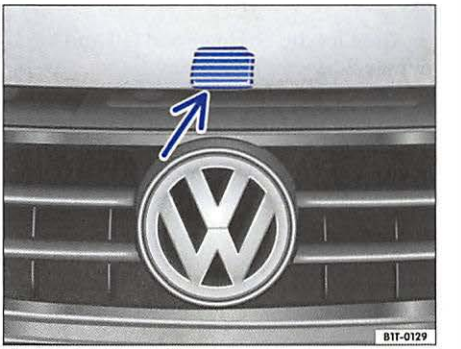


Fig. 5 Detail of the radiator grill: release lever for opening the engine hood

Before you open the engine hood, make sure that the windshield wiper arms are folded-up against the windshield so that the hood will not be damaged when the hood is opened.

– Pull the release lever underneath the instrument panel in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 4. The engine hood is released from its latch by a spring mechanism ⇒ ⚠.

– Lift the engine hood up at the release lever ⇒ fig. 5(arrow) and open the hood until it is held up by the gas-filled strut.

Warning light: Open engine hood

With the ignition on, the warning light indicates that the engine hood is open. The warning light must go out when the engine hood is fully closed (to the second latch).

If there is a display in the cluster, it is visible even when the ignition is not switched on. After the vehicle has been locked, the display must go out after about 15 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ◀

Closing the engine hood

– Pull the engine hood down until the pressure from the strut is reduced.

– Then let the engine hood fall and latch in place - *do not press down!* ⇒ ⚠.

If the engine hood does not close properly, open it again and close it properly. When the engine hood is properly closed, you can see that it fits flush with the other body parts.

⚠ WARNING

If the engine hood is not closed properly, it could fly up and block your view while driving causing a crash and serious personal injuries.

- **After closing the engine hood, always check that the safety latch has properly engaged. The engine hood must be flush with the surrounding body parts.**
- **If you ever notice that the engine hood latch is not properly secured when the vehicle is moving, stop at once and close it.**
- **Never let anyone get in the way of the engine hood when closing it.** ◀

Engine oil

Engine oil specifications

The engine oil used must conform to exact specifications.

Your engine was factory filled with an all-season high quality engine oil that meets Volkswagen oil standards and has a viscosity grade of SAE 5W-40. You can use this oil over all temperature ranges for normal driving.

If you need to add oil between oil changes, use only a high quality synthetic-based oil with correct specifications that expressly complies with **Volkswagen oil quality standard 502 00.** If engine oil viscosity grade SAE 5W-40 is not available, you can also use SAE 5W-30 as long as it meets **Volkswagen oil quality standard 502 00.**

At the time this manual was printed, engine oils available in the U.S. that meet **Volkswagen oil standard 502 00** are synthetic engine oils. This does not mean, however, that every synthetic engine oil will meet Volkswagen oil standard 502 00. So always be sure that you use an approved oil.

To assure that the oil you use is of the highest quality required by your vehicle, the following terms must appear on the oil container singly or in combination with other designations:

Gasoline engine

- VW 502 00

General recommendations

If SAE 5W-40 or 5W-30 viscosity grade oil is not available in your area, be sure to always use a viscosity grade suitable for the climate and seasonal conditions that exist where the vehicle is operated. Always make sure that the oil meets the quality standards listed above. ◀

Engine oil consumption

In order to provide effective lubrication and cooling of internal engine components, all internal combustion engines use a certain amount of oil. Oil consumption varies from engine to engine and may change significantly over the life of the engine. Typically engines which have a break-in period, use more oil during the break-in period than they do after the break-in period, when oil consumption has stabilized.

Volkswagen recommends that you use the type of oil that meets the specifications described ⇒ page 42, "Engine oil specifications".

Under normal conditions, the rate of oil consumption depends on the quality of the oil as well as its viscosity, the RPM's (revolutions per minute) at which the engine is operated, the outside temperature, the road conditions as well as the amount of oil dilution by condensation water or fuel residue and by the oxidation level of the oil. As engines wear, oil consumption may increase over time until replacement of worn engine parts may become necessary.

Because of all of these variables, it is not possible to specify a standard or "normal" rate of oil consumption. **For that reason, we urge you to check the oil level in your engine at regular intervals, preferably every time you refuel, and always before going on a long trip.**

The oil pressure light is not an indicator of low engine oil level. If the warning light does not go out or flashes while driving (above 1500 engine RPM) a buzzer will sound. It indicates that the oil pressure is too low. Stop the engine immediately, check the engine oil level and add oil if necessary. If the engine oil level is normal, but the light continues to flash, do not continue to operate the vehicle. Engine damage may occur.

If you believe your engine uses excessive amounts of oil, we recommend that you consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer so that the cause of your concern can be properly diagnosed. Keep in mind that the accurate measurement of oil consumption requires great care and may take some time. Your Volkswagen dealer has instructions how to measure oil consumption accurately.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

- The engine in your vehicle depends on oil to lubricate and cool all of its moving parts. Therefore the engine oil must be checked regularly and kept at the required level.
- Make it a habit to have the engine oil level checked every time you refuel.
- Lack of engine oil may cause severe engine damage. ◀

Checking the engine oil level

The engine oil dipstick indicates the level of the oil.

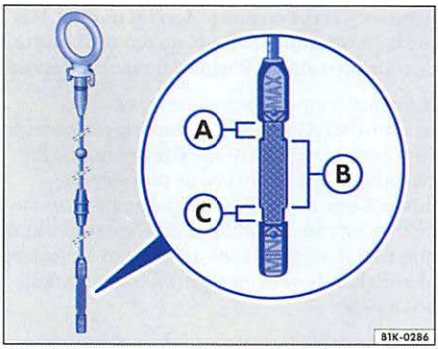


Fig. 6 Engine oil dipstick with engine oil level marks

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39.

– If the yellow indicator light in the instrument cluster comes on, check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add the correct engine oil.

– Stop the engine and wait a few minutes for the oil to return to the oil pan.

– Raise the engine hood ⇒ page 41.

– Pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean with a rag.

– Reinsert dipstick; push it all the way in. If there is a projection on the engine oil dipstick, make sure it lines up with the projection on the guide tube.

– Pull the dipstick out again and check the oil level.

– After checking the oil level, please make sure that the dipstick is pushed back in all the way.

The position of the dipstick is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Ⓐ You **must not** add oil ⇒ fig. 6.

Ⓑ You **can** add oil. The oil level may go into the A range, but not above the A range.

Ⓒ You **must** add oil. After adding oil, make sure that the oil level is somewhere within the B range.

Warning light : Engine oil level too low

If the yellow warning light in the instrument cluster **comes on**, switch off the engine and check the engine oil level as soon as possible and add the correct oil ⇒ page 45. There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

If the yellow warning light **flashes**, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the oil level sensor checked. There may be a message in the instrument cluster advising you of the necessary action to take.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not pay attention to the warning lights which have come on, including the warning messages appearing in the display, this could lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

Note

If the engine oil level is above level Ⓐ, do not start the engine – this could damage the catalytic converter and the engine! Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. ▶

Tips

Illustration ⇒ page 44, fig. 6 shows the oil dipstick. Depending on the model, your oil dipstick may look different or have a different color from the one shown in the illustration. The markings on the dipstick are the same for all models. ◀

Warning light: Engine oil pressure

This warning symbol indicates that the engine oil pressure is too low.

If this warning light starts to flash, and three warnings sound, switch off the engine and check the oil level. Top off with engine oil if necessary ⇒ page 42.

There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

If the warning light flashes even though the oil level is correct, *do not* drive on. Do not let the engine idle. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

If you ignore the illuminated warning light and the accompanying texts and warning messages, injuries or vehicle damage may result.

Tips

The oil pressure warning symbol is not an oil level gauge. Check the oil level regularly, preferably every time you get gas. ◀

Adding engine oil

Top off gradually with small amounts of oil.

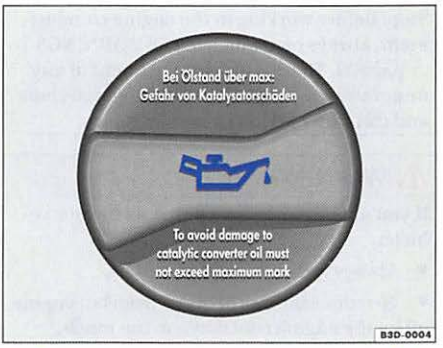


Fig. 7 In the engine compartment: engine oil filler cap

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39.

– Turn off the engine.

– Unscrew the oil cap ⇒ fig. 7 from the cylinder head cover. You will see the oil can symbol on top of the oil cap. If you are not sure, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer for assistance.

– Top off oil in small amounts (not more than a half quart/liter at a time), using the correct oil that expressly complies with Volkswagen oil quality standard 502 00 ⇒ page 42.

– To avoid filling too much oil, wait a while and check the oil level before adding more.

– As soon as the oil level is in area ⇒ page 44, fig. 6 (B), carefully screw the oil cap back on and insert the oil dipstick all the way. Otherwise oil could leak out when the engine is running. ▶

The location of the oil filler cap is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data".

Engine oil additives

Volkswagen does not recommend the use of oil additives. They may adversely affect your New Vehicle Warranty.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Spilled oil is a fire hazard.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **The oil filler cap must be properly secured to prevent oil from being sprayed on the hot engine and exhaust system when the engine is running.**

Note

If the oil level is above level ⇒ page 44, fig. 6 Ⓐ, do not start the engine - this could damage the catalytic converter and the engine! See an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

For the sake of environment

Do not let the oil level get above area Ⓐ. Otherwise oil can be drawn in through the crankcase breather and escape into the atmosphere through the exhaust system. ◀

Changing the engine oil

The engine oil must be changed at the intervals listed in the Maintenance Booklet.

The engine oil must be changed according to the intervals specified in your Maintenance booklet ⇒ booklet 1.1.

This is very important because the lubricating properties of oil decrease gradually during normal vehicle use. If you are not sure when you have your oil changed, ask your authorized Volkswagen Service Advisor.

Under some circumstances the engine oil should be changed more frequently. Change oil more often if you drive mostly short distances, operate the vehicle in dusty areas or mostly under stop-and-go traffic conditions, or when you use your vehicle where temperatures stay below freezing point for long periods.

Detergent additives in the oil will make fresh oil look dark after the engine has been running for a short time. This is normal and is not a reason to change the oil more often than recommended.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

If you must change the engine oil in your vehicle:

- **Always wear eye protection.**
- **To reduce the risk of burns from hot engine oil let the engine cool down to the touch.**
- **When removing the oil drain plug with your fingers, stay as far away as possible. Always keep your forearm parallel to the ground to help prevent hot oil from running down your arm.**
- **Drain the oil into a container designed for this purpose, one large enough to hold at least the total amount of oil in your engine.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Engine oil is poisonous. Keep it well out of the reach of children.**
- **Continuous contact with used engine oil is harmful to your skin. Always protect your skin by washing thoroughly with soap and water.**

For the sake of environment

- Before changing the oil, first make sure you know where you can properly dispose of the old oil.
- Always dispose of used engine oil properly. Never dump it on garden soil, in wooded areas, into streams or down sewage drains.
- Recycle used engine oil by taking it to a used engine oil collection facility in your area, or contact a service station.
- Because of the problem of proper disposal, along with the special tools and necessary expertise required, we strongly recommend that you have your oil changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. ◀

Coolant

Coolant specifications

Coolant is a mixture of water and at least 40% coolant additive.

The cooling system must be filled with a mixture of water and at least 40% of Volkswagen coolant additive G 12 plus or an additive with the specification TT-VW 774 F (purple in color).

This mixture gives the necessary frost protection down to -13° F (-25° C) and protects the alloy parts of the cooling system against corrosion. It also prevents from scalding and raises the boiling point of the coolant.

The concentration of coolant must *always* be at least 40% – even if frost protection is not required.

If greater frost protection is needed in very cold climates, the proportion of the antifreeze additive G 12 plus can be increased. However, the percentage of coolant additives must not exceed 60%, as this would reduce the frost protection. It would also reduce the cooling effect. A mixture with 60% coolant additive will give frost protection to about -40° F (-40° C).

⚠ WARNING

Coolant is poisonous!

- **Always keep the coolant in its original container stored in a safe place.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always keep drained coolant out of the reach of children.**
- **The coolant additive G 12 plus must be added in sufficient quantities to give enough anti-freeze protection at the coldest temperatures that can be expected where the vehicle will be used.**
- **At extremely cold temperatures, the coolant could freeze, causing the vehicle to break down. The heater would also not work and vehicle occupants could be without protection at sub-freezing temperatures!**

Note

- Other additives may give considerably inferior corrosion protection. The resulting corrosion in the cooling system can lead to a loss of coolant, causing serious damage to the engine.
- The coolant additive G 12 plus (purple) can be mixed with the additive G 12 (pink) or with the additive G 11. G 12 plus can be recognized in the expansion tank because it is purple. The coolant G 12 plus has been mixed with a different coolant to the ones named above if the fluid in the expansion tank is brown! The coolant must be changed as soon as possible if this is the case! ▶

Serious functional problems or engine damage could be caused otherwise! ◀

Warning light: Engine coolant level / temperature

The warning symbol lights up if the coolant temperature is too high or if the coolant level is too low.

There is a fault if:

- The warning symbol does not go out again after a few seconds.
- The warning symbol lights up or flashes while the vehicle is moving. Three warnings sound ⇒ ⚠.

This means that either the coolant level is too low or the coolant temperature is too high.

There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

Coolant level too low

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. If the needle is in the normal range, top off with the proper coolant at the earliest opportunity ⇒ ⚠.

Coolant temperature too high

First look at the coolant temperature gauge. The coolant temperature is too high if the needle is over to the far right on the dial. **Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine and wait for it to cool down.** Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is correct, the overheating may be caused by a radiator fan fault. Check the radiator fan fuse and have it replaced if necessary ⇒ page 90.

If the warning light lights up again after driving on for a short distance, **stop the vehicle and switch off the engine**. Contact an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop.

Only when towing a trailer

If you have to climb a long grade with very high outside temperatures in a low gear at high engine rpm, keep an eye on the coolant temperature gauge ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Instrument panel". If the warning light in the instrument cluster flashes, stop and allow the engine to cool down for a few minutes at idle. For more information ⇒ page 15.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Hot steam or coolant can cause serious burns.

- **Never open the engine hood if you see steam or coolant escaping from the engine compartment. Always wait until you no longer see or hear steam or coolant escaping from the engine.**
- **Always let the engine to cool down completely before carefully opening the engine hood. Hot components will burn skin on contact.**
- **When the engine has cooled down and you are ready to open the engine hood:**
  - **Remove the key from the ignition.**
  - **Apply the parking brake firmly and put the selector in P (Park, automatic transmission) or Neutral (manual transmission).**
  - **Keep children and others away from the vehicle.**
- **Never reach into the area around or touch the radiator fan. Contact with the blades can result in serious personal injury.**
- **Always remember that the radiator fan is temperature-controlled and can turn on suddenly - even when the engine has been switched off for a longer period of time and the key has been removed from the ignition.**
- **Never unscrew the coolant expansion tank cap when the engine is hot. A hot engine will** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

heat the coolant and put it under pressure. Removing a cap that is under pressure can result in serious personal injury and/or burns.

- Always protect face, hands and arms from hot escaping coolant or steam by covering the cap with a large, thick rag.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Turn the cap slowly and very carefully in a counter-clockwise direction while applying light downward pressure on the top of the cap.
- Never spill antifreeze or coolant on the exhaust system or hot engine parts. Under some conditions, the ethylene glycol in engine coolant can catch fire. ◀

Checking the coolant level and topping off

The correct coolant level is important for correct functioning of the engine cooling system.

Fig. 8 In the engine compartment: coolant expansion tank

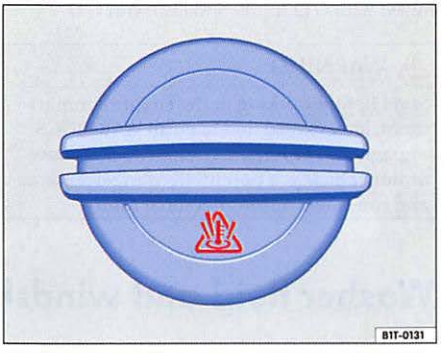


Fig. 9 In the engine compartment: cap of coolant expansion tank

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. If the coolant level drops too low, a warning text is displayed in the instrument cluster and the engine coolant level/temperature warning light lights up.

Opening the coolant expansion tank

– Switch off the engine and allow it to cool.

– To prevent scalding, cover the cap ⇒ fig. 9on the expansion tank with a thick cloth and carefully unscrew the cap ⇒ ⚠.

Checking coolant level

– Look at the side of the coolant expansion tank with the marks and read off the coolant level.

– If the level is below the "MIN" mark, top off with coolant ⇒ fig. 8.

Topping off coolant

– Only use **new** coolant that meets the required specifications ⇒ page 47.

– Do not fill above the upper mark.

Closing the coolant expansion tank

– Reinstall the cap *tightly*. ▶

The position of the coolant expansion tank is shown in the corresponding engine compartment overview ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data."

Make sure that the coolant meets the required specifications ⇒ page 47. Do not use a different type of additive if coolant additive G 12 plus is not available. In this case use only water and bring the coolant concentration back up to the correct level as soon as possible by topping off with the specified additive ⇒ page 47.

Always top off with *new* coolant.

Do not fill above the "MAX" mark. Otherwise the excessive coolant will be pressed out of the cooling system when the engine is hot.

The coolant additive G 12 plus (purple) may be mixed with G 12 (pink) and also with G 11.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

- When mixed with other incorrect additives the color of G 12 plus will change to brown. If this happens, immediately change the coolant. Otherwise it will result in engine damage!
- If a lot of coolant has been lost, wait for the engine to *cool down* before topping off with cold coolant to help prevent damage to the engine. Large coolant losses are sign of leaks in the cooling system. Have the cooling system checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop to reduce the risk of engine damage.
- Do not add any type of radiator leak sealant to your vehicle's engine coolant. Adding radiator repair fluid may adversely affect the function and performance of your cooling system and could result in damage not covered by your New Vehicle Limited Warranty. ◀

Washer fluid and windshield wiper blades

Topping off washer fluid

The water for cleaning the windshield should always be mixed with windshield washer fluid.

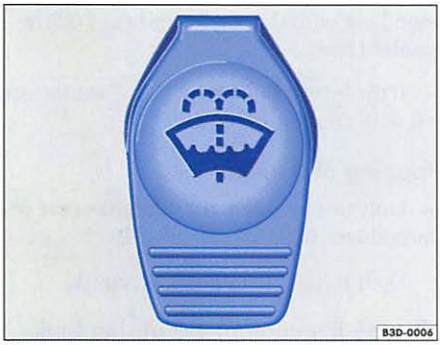


Fig. 10 In the engine compartment: blue cap of windshield washer fluid container

The indicator light in the instrument cluster will come on when the washer fluid level in the reservoir is too low. There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take. At the next opportunity top up the reservoir.

The windshield washer fluid container located in the engine compartment supplies washer fluid to both the **windshield washer and headlight washing system**.

Stop! Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39.

The location of the container is shown in the corresponding engine compartment overview ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data." ▶

Since regular water is usually not adequate for cleaning the windshield, add a cleaning solution to the water. Please follow the dilution instructions on the package.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

Note

Do not use engine coolant, anti-freeze or any other solutions that can damage the vehicle paint. ◀

Changing windshield wiper blades

Damaged wiper blades must be replaced immediately.

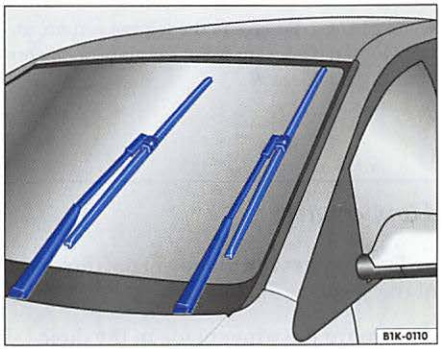


Fig. 11 Windshield wiper blades in Service position

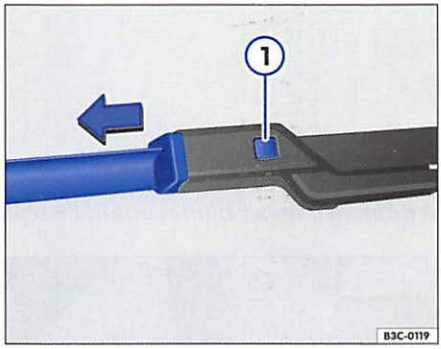


Fig. 12 Illustration of principle: Changing front wiper blade

Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. Change them when worn.

Changing windshield wiper blades

– Switch the ignition on briefly and switch it back off again.

– Within 10 seconds of switching off the ignition, push the windshield wiper lever down to the brief wiping position. The windshield wipers will then move up and stop in the "Service position" ⇒ fig. 11so that you can easily access the wiper blades.

– Lift the wiper arm away from the windshield. Do not pull the arm by the blade.

– Hold the release button down ⇒ fig. 12 ① and at the same time pull the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow.

– Install a new wiper blade **of the same length and type** on the wiper arm and press the wiper blade in the opposite direction to the arrow.

– Put the wiper arms back against the windshield. The windshield wiper arms will return to their original position when you turn on the ignition and operate the windshield wiper lever or when you drive faster than 3 mph (5 km/h). ▶

Replacement wiper blades are available from your authorized Volkswagen dealer.

If the windshield wipers rub, or if they are damaged they should be replaced, or cleaned if they are dirty.

If this does not produce the desired results, the setting angle of the windshield wiper arms may be incorrect and should be checked and adjusted if necessary by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Worn or dirty wiper blades will reduce visibility and increase the risk of accident leading to serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always clean the windshield wiper blades and all windows regularly.**
- **Always make sure to change the wiper blades once or twice a year.**

Note

- Damaged or dirty windshield wipers can scratch the windshield.
- Never use gasoline, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar products to clean the windows. This could damage the windshield wiper blades.
- Never move the windshield wiper or windshield wiper arm manually - this could cause damage!
- To prevent damage to the wiping system, always loosen blades frozen to the glass before operating the wipers. ◀

Changing the rear wiper blade

A damaged wiper blade should be replaced immediately.

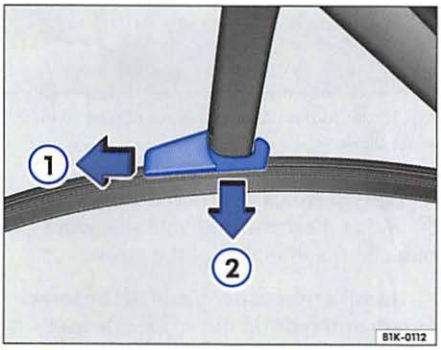


Fig. 13 Replacing rear wiper blade

Check the condition of the wiper blade at regular intervals and replace when necessary.

Changing wiper blade

– Lift the wiper arm away from the rear glass.

– Release the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 13 ①.

– Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow ②.

– Slide a new wiper blade **of the same length and design** onto the wiper arm in the opposite direction to the arrow Ⓐ.

– Lock the wiper blade by moving it against the direction of the arrow ① until it engages.

– Fold the wiper arm back.

You can purchase windshield wiper blades from Volkswagen Service®.

If the wiper blade chatters, if should be replaced if damaged or cleaned if it is dirty.

If this doesñt help, the tilt of the windscreen wiper arm can be adjusted. This must be checked and adjusted where necessary by a qualified dealership. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Only drive if you have clear vision through all the windows.

- **Clean the wiper blades and all the windows regularly.**
- **Replace the wiper blades once or twice annually.**

Note

- A defective or dirty wiper blade can scratch the rear glass.
- Never clean the glass panel with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar fluids. This can damage the wiper blades.
- Never move the wiper or the wiper arm with your hand - you can damage it. ◀

Brake fluid

Checking brake fluid level

The brake fluid reservoir has a yellow cap.

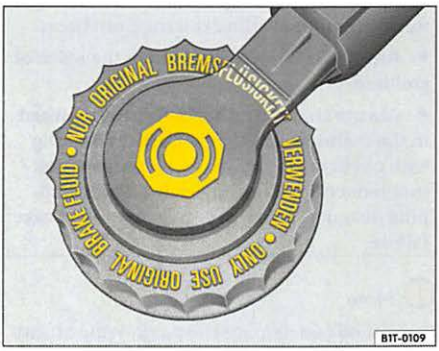


Fig. 14 In the engine compartment: cap for the brake fluid reservoir

To get a true reading, the vehicle must be on level ground. Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39.

– Read the fluid level in the transparent brake fluid reservoir. It should always be between the "MIN" and "MAX" mark.

The location of the brake fluid reservoir is shown in the corresponding engine compartment overview ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data." The brake fluid reservoir has a yellow cap ⇒ fig. 14.

The brake fluid level drops slightly when the vehicle is being used and as the brake pads are automatically adjusted as they wear down.

However, if the level goes down noticeably in a short time, or drops below the "MIN" mark, there may be a leak in the brake system. If the brake fluid level drops too low, the warning text **STOP. BRAKE FLUID. STOP VEHICLE!** is displayed in the instrument cluster and the brake system warning light (!) lights up. If this happens, immediately take the vehicle to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the brake system inspected.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ◀

Changing the brake fluid

The brake fluid must be changed every two years.

We recommend that you have the brake fluid changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer.

Stop! Before opening the engine hood, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39.

Brake fluid absorbs moisture. Over time, it will absorb water from the air. If the water content in the brake fluid is too high, the brake system could corrode. Too much water in the brake fluid also considerably reduces the boiling point of the brake fluid. Very heavy use of the brakes with old brake fluid may cause vapor lock. Vapor lock reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.

For this reason the brake fluid **must** be replaced every two years.

Only use brake fluid with the specification US standard FMVSS 116 DOT 4. The brake fluid must be new.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Brake failure can result from old or incorrect brake fluid.

- **Use only brake fluid that meets SAE specification J1703 and conforms to Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard 116.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always check with your authorized Volkswagen dealer to make sure that you are using the correct brake fluid.**
- **The correct brake fluid is also listed on the label on the brake fluid reservoir.**

⚠ WARNING

Brake fluid is poisonous.

- **Always store brake fluid in the closed original containers in a safe place.**
- **To reduce the risk of poisoning, never use empty food or beverage containers that might mislead someone into drinking from them.**
- **Always keep brake fluid out of the reach of children.**
- **Always change the brake fluid as required in the maintenance booklet. Heavy braking with old brake fluid may cause a vapor lock that reduces braking power, increases stopping distances and can even cause total brake failure.**

Note

Brake fluid can damage the paint. Wipe off any brake fluid from the paint immediately.

For the sake of environment

Brake fluid must be drained and disposed of in the proper manner observing environmental regulations. ◀

Vehicle battery

Location of battery

The battery is maintenance-free and is checked during the inspection service.

The position of the vehicle battery (protected by a cover) is shown in the corresponding engine compartment diagram ⇒ booklet 3.3 "Technical Data".

Warning notes on handling battery

	Always wear eye protection!
	Battery acid is very corrosive and caustic. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection!
	Fires, sparks, open lights and smoking are prohibited!
	A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is under charge.
	Always keep children away from acid and battery!

⚠ WARNING

Working on the battery or the electrical system in your vehicle can result in serious acid burns, fires or electrical shock. Always read and heed the following WARNINGS and safety precautions before working on the battery or the electrical system.

- Before working on the electrical system, always switch off the ignition and all electrical consumers and disconnect the negative (–) cable from the battery. When a light bulb is changed, always switch off the light.
- Turn off the anti-theft alarm by unlocking the vehicle before you disconnect the battery to prevent the alarm from going on.
- Always keep children away from acid and battery.
- Always wear eye protection. Never let battery acid or lead particles contact your eyes, skin and clothing.
- Sulfuric battery acid is very corrosive and can cause damage to unprotected skin and

⚠ WARNING (continued)

blindness. Always wear protective gloves and eye protection. To reduce your risk of injury, never tilt the battery, as this could spill acid through the vents and make burn you.

- When disconnecting the battery from the vehicle electrical system, always disconnect the negative cable (–) first and then the positive cable (+).
- A highly explosive mixture of gases is given off when the battery is being charged.
- Always avoid fires, sparks, open flame and smoking. Always avoid generating sparks and electrostatic charges when handling cables and electrical equipment. Never short-circuit the battery poles. High-energy sparks can cause serious personal injury.
- Always switch off all electrical consumers before reconnecting the battery. Reconnect the plus cable (+) first and then the negative cable (–). Never reverse the polarity of the connections. This could cause fire.
- Never charge a frozen battery, or one that has thawed. This could result in explosions and chemical burns! Always replace a battery that has frozen. A discharged battery can freeze at temperatures around 32° F (0° C).
- Always make sure that the vent hose is connected to the battery.
- Never use damaged battery – they can explode! Immediately replace damaged battery.
- If you get battery acid in your eyes or on your skin, immediately rinse with cold water for several minutes and seek medical attention immediately. If you ingest any battery acid, seek medical attention immediately.

⚠ WARNING

California Proposition 65 Warning:

- Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead components, chemicals known to the State of California to ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

cause cancer and reproductive harm. Wash hands after handling.

Note

- Do not disconnect the battery if the ignition is switched on or if the engine is running. This could damage the electrical system or electronic components.
- Do not expose the battery to direct sunlight for long periods of time, ultraviolet rays can damage the battery housing.
- If the vehicle is left standing in the cold for a long time, protect the battery from frost. They will be damaged if they "freeze." ◀

Warning light: Generator

This warning light signals a fault in the generator.

The warning light lights up when the ignition is switched on. It should go out when the engine starts running.

If the warning light lights up while driving, the generator is no longer charging the battery. You should immediately drive to the nearest Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

However, you should avoid using electrical equipment that is not absolutely necessary because this will drain the battery further. The voltage of the vehicle electrical system can be read off the voltmeter.

There may be a message in the instrument cluster informing you or advising you of the necessary action to take.

⚠ WARNING

If you do not pay attention to the warning lights which have come on, including the warning messages appearing in the display, this could lead to personal injury or damage to your vehicle. ◀

Charging and replacing vehicle battery

All work with vehicle battery requires special knowledge.

Have the battery checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop between regular maintenance intervals if you often drive short distances or if the vehicle is not driven for long periods.

If the battery has discharged and you have problems starting the vehicle, the battery might be damaged. If this happens, we recommend you have the vehicle battery checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer where it will be properly recharged or replaced.

Charging vehicle battery

The charging of the vehicle battery should left to an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop, because your vehicle is equipped with special battery that must be charged in a controlled environment.

Replacing a battery

The battery have been specially developed for their locations and they have special dimensions and safety features.

Genuine Volkswagen batteries meet the maintenance, performance and safety specifications for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

- **Always use only maintenance-free or cycle-free, leak-proof batteries with the same specifications and dimensions as the original equipment battery. Specifications are listed on the battery housing.**
- **Before starting any work on the battery, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Location of battery" on page 55.** ▶

For the sake of environment

Batteries contain toxic substances including sulfuric acid and lead. They must be disposed appropriately and not with ordinary garbage.

Tips

After connecting a battery and switching on the ignition, the ESP indicator light comes on continuously. It goes out when the vehicle is driven straight for a short distance at 15 mph (20 km/h). ◀

Tires and wheels

General notes

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle.

Tires may be the least appreciated and most abused parts of a motor vehicle. Tires are, however, one of the most important parts of a vehicle, particularly considering the comparatively small patch of rubber on each tire that assures that all-important contact between you, your vehicle and the road.

Maintaining the correct tire pressure, making sure that your vehicle and its tires do not have to carry more weight than they can safely handle, avoiding damage from road hazards and regularly inspecting tires for damage including cuts, slashes irregular wear and overall condition are the most important things that you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure including tread separation and blowouts.

Avoiding damage

If you have to drive over a curb or similar obstacle, drive very slowly and as close as possible at a right angle to the curb.

Always keep chemicals including grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid off the tires.

Inspect the tires regularly for damage (cuts, cracks or blisters, etc.). Remove any foreign bodies embedded in the treads.

Storing tires

Mark tires when you remove them to indicate the direction of rotation. This ensures you to be able to mount them correctly when you reinstall them.

When removed, the wheels or tires should be stored in a cool, dry and preferably dark place.

Store tires in a vertical position if they are not mounted on rims, in a horizontal position if they are mounted on rims.

New tires

New tires have to be broken in ⇒ ⚠ in "Breaking in tires and brake pads" on page 12.

The tread depth of new tires may vary, according to the type and make of tire and the tread pattern.

Hidden damage

Damage to tires and rims is often not readily visible. If you notice unusual vibration or the vehicle pulls to one side, this may indicate that one of the tires has been damaged. The tires must be checked immediately by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

Unidirectional tires

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, that point in the direction the tire is designed to rotate. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary so that these tires can develop their optimum characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning resistance. For more information ⇒ page 86, "Unidirectional tires".

Rims with threaded rim ring[4)]

Light-alloy wheels with a bolted rim ring consist of several parts. These parts are screwed to- ▶

[4)] Where applicable

gether with special screws and a specific technique. This ensures good function, prevention of leaks, safety and true running. For this reason, damaged rims should be replaced and you should never repair or dismantle them ⇒ ⚠.

Rims with screw-on decorative covers[4)]

Light-alloy wheels can be furnished with interchangeable decorative covers that are attached to the rim with self-locking screws. If you would like to replace damaged wheel covers, contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

New tires or tires that are old, worn or damaged cannot provide maximum control and braking ability.

- **New tires tend to be slippery and must be broken in. To reduce the risk of losing control, a collision and serious personal injuries, drive with special care for the first 350 miles (560 km).**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Driving with worn or damaged tires can lead to loss of control, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.**
- **To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes and serious personal injuries, never loosen the bolts on wheels with bolted rim rings.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at low speed.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**
- **If you notice unusual vibration or if the vehicle pulls to one side when driving, always stop as soon as it is safe to do so and check the wheels and tires for damage.** ◀

Glossary of tire and loading terminology

Accessory weight

Means the combined weight (in excess of those standard items which may be replaced) of automatic transmission, power steering, power brakes, power windows, power seats, radio, and heater, to the extent that these items are available as factory-installed equipment (whether installed or not).

Aspect ratio

Means the ratio of the height to the width of the tire in percent. Numbers of 70 or lower indicate a short sidewall for improved steering response and better overall handling on dry pavement.

Bead

Means the part of the tire that is made of steel wires, wrapped or reinforced by ply cords and that is shaped to fit the rim.

Bead separation

Means a breakdown of the bond between components in the bead.

Cord

Means the strands forming the plies in the tire.

Cold tire inflation pressure

Means the tire pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer for a tire of a designated size that has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds in the three hour period before the tire pressure is measured or adjusted.

Curb weight

Means the weight of a motor vehicle with standard equipment including the maximum capacity of fuel, oil, and coolant, air conditioning and additional weight of optional equipment.

Extra load tire

Means a tire design to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire. ▶

Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR")

Means the load-carrying capacity of a single axle system, measured at the tire-ground interfaces.

Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR")

Means the maximum total loaded weight of the vehicle.

Groove

Means the space between two adjacent tread ribs.

Load rating (code)

Means the maximum load that a tire is rated to carry for a given inflation pressure. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

Maximum load rating

Means the load rating for a tire at the maximum permissible inflation pressure for that tire.

Maximum loaded vehicle weight

Means the sum of:

(a) Curb weight,
(b) Accessory weight,
(c) Vehicle capacity weight, and
(d) Production options weight.

Maximum (permissible) inflation pressure

Means the maximum cold inflation pressure to which a tire may be inflated. Also called "maximum inflation pressure."

Normal occupant weight

Means 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the number of occupants seated in the vehicle up to the total seating capacity of your vehicle.

Occupant distribution

Means distribution of occupants in a vehicle.

Outer diameter

Means the overall diameter of an inflated new tire.

Overall width

Means the linear distance between the exteriors of the sidewalls of an inflated tire, including elevations due to labeling, decorations, or protective bands or ribs.

Ply

Means a layer of rubber-coated parallel cords.

Production options weight

Means the combined weight of those installed regular production options weighing over 5 lbs. (2.3 kg) in excess of those standard items which they replace, not previously considered in curb weight or accessory weight, including heavy duty brakes, ride levelers, roof rack, heavy duty battery, and special trim.

Radial ply tire

Means a pneumatic tire in which the ply cords that extend to the beads are laid at substantially 90 degrees to the center line of the tread.

Recommended inflation pressure

See ⇒ page 58, "Cold tire inflation pressure".

Reinforced tire

Means a tire designed to operate at higher loads and at higher inflation pressures than the corresponding standard tire.

Rim

Means a metal support for a tire or a tire and tube assembly upon which the tire beads are seated.

Rim diameter

Means nominal diameter of the bead seat. If you change your wheel size, you will have to purchase new tires to match the new rim diameter.

Rim size designation

Means rim diameter and width.

Rim width

Means nominal distance between rim flanges.

Sidewall

Means that portion of a tire between the tread and bead.

Speed rating (letter code)

Means the speed at which a tire is designed to be driven for extended periods of time. The ratings range from 93 mph (150 km/h) to 186 mph (298 km/h). These ratings are listed in the table ⇒ page 74. You may not find this information on all tires because it is not required by law.

The speed rating letter code, where applicable, is molded on the tire sidewall and indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒ ⚠ in "Winter tires" on page 77 ⇒ page 74. ▶

Tire pressure monitoring system[5)]

Means a system that detects when one or more of a vehicle's tires are underinflated and illuminates a low tire pressure warning telltale.

Tread

Means that portion of a tire that comes into contact with the road.

Tread separation

Means pulling away of the tread from the tire carcass.

Tread wear indicators (TWI)

Means the projections within the principal grooves designed to give a visual indication of the degrees of wear of the tread. See ⇒ page 72, "Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)" for more information on measuring tire wear.

Uniform Tire Quality Grading

Is a tire information system developed by the United States National Highway Traffic Safety Administration (NHTSA) that is designed to help buyers make relative comparisons among tires. The UTQG is not a safety rating and not a guarantee that a tire will last for a prescribed number of miles or perform in a certain way. It simply gives tire buyers additional information to combine with other considerations, such as price, brand loyalty and dealer recommendations. Under UTQG, tires are graded by the tire manufacturers in three areas: tread wear, traction and temperature resistance. The UTQG information on the tires, molded into the sidewalls.

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN)

This is the tire's "serial number." It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 1801 mean that the tire was produced in the 18th week of 2001. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Vehicle capacity weight

Means the rated cargo and luggage load plus 150 lbs. (68 kilograms) times the vehicle's total seating capacity as listed on the label attached to the open edge of the driver's door.

Vehicle maximum load on the tire

Means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the maximum loaded vehicle weight and dividing by two.

Vehicle normal load on the tire

Means that load on an individual tire that is determined by distributing to each axle its share of the curb weight, accessory weight, and normal occupant weight (distributed in accordance with table below ⇒ page 60) and dividing by two.

Occupant loading and distribution for vehicle normal load for various designated seating capacities

Designated seating capacity, number of occupants	Vehicle normal load, number of occupants	Occupant distribution in a normally loaded vehicle
2 through 4	2	2 in front.
5	3	2 in front, 1 in back seat.

5) Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

Cold tire inflation pressure

Tire pressure affects the overall handling, performance and safety of a vehicle.

Fig. 15 Approximate location of the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door and example of a tire pressure label

Tire pressure generally refers to the amount of air in a tire that it needs it to do its job and safely carry the combined load of the entire vehicle and its contents. Tire pressure is measured in kilopascals (kPa), the international measuring unit and in pounds per square inch (PSI). Tire pressure is based in part on the vehicle's design and load limit – the greatest amount of weight that the vehicle can carry safely and the tire size. The proper tire pressure is frequently referred to as the "recommended cold tire inflation pressure." Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up because of internal friction when it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold." It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

Maintaining proper tire pressure is one of the most important things you can do to help avoid sudden tire failure. Underinflated tires are a major cause of sudden tire failure. Keeping tires at the right pressure is also important for safe and responsive vehicle handling, traction, braking and load carrying. **Tire pressures are particularly important when the vehicle is being driven at higher speeds, and then especially when heavily loaded even within the permissible load-carrying capacities approved for your vehicle.**

The recommended tire pressures for your Volkswagen depend on the kind or tires on your vehicle and the number of passengers and/or amount of luggage you will be transporting.

The tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door on your Volkswagen lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the vehicle at its maximum capacity weight and tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

See the illustration ⇒ page 61, fig. 15 for the location of the label on the open edge of the driver's door (color of the actual label and exact location on the vehicle will vary slightly).

On Canada vehicles, there is also tire pressure in French on the fuel filler flap.

The table below lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the Volkswagen models covered by your Owner's Literature at the vehicle's maximum capacity weight and the tire sizes installed on the respective models as original equipment, or as a factory option.

Tire	Tire pressure front		Tire pressure rear	
	PSI	kPa	PSI	kPa
225/45 R 17 91 H	35	245	35	245
225/40 R 18 92 Y	35	245	35	245

Because technical changes may be made to vehicle equipment during the model year, always compare the tire size designation on the tire pressure label on your vehicle with the tires on your vehicle. Make sure that the tire size information on the vehicle label is the same as the size of the tires on the vehicle. This is especially important if the vehicle belongs to someone else or you bought the vehicle with different rims/tires or you bought the vehicle as a previously owned vehicle.

Remember, your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating ("GVWR"). The Gross Axle Weight Rating ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles. The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label on the driver's door latch pillar. The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the tire pressure label ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**

⚠ WARNING

- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can lead to a serious or fatal accident.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or underinflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.** ◀

Applies to vehicles: with Tire pressure monitoring system (USA market only)

US models: Tire pressure monitoring system (!) – warning light

The tire pressure monitoring system will warn the driver of significant loss of pressure.

Each tire, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tires of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tire inflation pressure label, you should consult the appropriate section of this Owner's manual to determine the proper tire inflation pressure.) When the low tire pressure telltale (warning light) is illuminated, one or more of your tires is significantly under-inflated. You should stop and check your tires as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tire causes the tire to overheat and can lead to tire failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tire tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction telltale to indicate when the ▶

system is not operating properly. When the malfunction telltale (warning light) is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of incompatible replacement tires on the vehicle. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement tires are compatible with the TPMS.

Description

The tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) checks the tire pressures of all four road wheels and warns the driver in the event of a loss of pressure by means of symbols in the instrument cluster displays.

The system uses sensors at the wheels. Radio signals from the sensors are transmitted to the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS). The sensors are parts of the air valve.

A visual and audio warning will signal a rapid or other significant loss of pressure while the vehicle is moving.

Warnings

Display	Meaning	Action
(!) and warning **LOW TIRE!**	This warning shows a rapid loss of inflation pressure in at least one tire.	Stop immediately! Inspect all the wheels for external damage and foreign bodies and check the tire pressure for all the wheels. If it is not necessary to change a wheel on the spot, you can proceed at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop ⇒ ⚠.
(!) and warning **TIRE PRESSURES TOO LOW!**	The warning indicates that at least one tire is at a critical pressure at least 0.4 bar lower than the recommended pressure.	Check the tire pressure at all four wheels immediately. If it is not necessary to change a wheel on the spot, you can proceed at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop ⇒ ⚠.
Warning **CHECK TIRE PRESSURES!**	After the ignition is switched on, a slow loss of pressure is indicated in at least one tire.	Check the tire pressure at all four wheels immediately ⇒ ⚠.
(!)	There is a malfunction in the system.	Consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the problem corrected ⇒ ⚠.
(!) comes on briefly while you are driving	There is a communication problem between a sensor and the system. Operation can be temporarily disrupted by interference from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. radio equipment, cellular phone).	No action is necessary.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or under-inflation can lead sudden tire failure, loss of con-

⚠ WARNING (continued)

trol, collision, serious personal injury or even death.

- **When the warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.**
- **Incorrect tire pressure and/or under-inflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or under-inflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.**
- **The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The applicable pressure values are located on a sticker on the driver's side door ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.**
- **Only when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct pressure, the TPMS can work correctly.**
- **The use of incorrect tire pressure values can lead to accidents or other damage. Therefore it is essential that the driver observe the specified tire pressure values for the tires and the correct pressures for the function of the TPMS.**
- **Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.**
- **Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**
- **If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required.**
- **When replacing tires or wheel rims on vehicles equipped with TPMS always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS regarding ⇒ page 57, "Tires and wheels".**

Note

- Missing valve stem caps can result in damage to the valve and sensors in the tire pressure monitoring system. To prevent this, always drive with valve stem caps that are the equivalent of those installed at the factory. The caps must be screwed down tightly. Do not use metal valve stem caps.
- When switching to different tires, make certain that the valves and the sensors are not damaged.

For the sake of environment

Under-inflated tires will also increase the fuel consumption.

Tips

- The tire pressure monitoring system checks the tires for the factory recommended inflation pressures. The recommended values are on the sticker on the open edge of the driver's door ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.
- If you are driving on tires other than those installed at the factory, have the inflation pressures entered in the pressure monitoring system by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop if they are different. Only one value can be saved in the system for partial or full load.
- The tire pressure monitoring system shuts itself off if a set of tires without wheel sensors is mounted on the vehicle and it cannot receive sensor signals. As soon as the system receives at least one sensor signal, it switches itself on again.
- Check tire pressures at regular intervals, even though you have the monitoring system. Inspect the tires for damage (punctures, cuts, tears and blisters). Remove foreign bodies from the tire tread.
- If sensors have to be replaced, have the valves changed at the same time.
- Discrepancies may occur between the pressures read on the pressure gauge when inflating the tires and the pressures read by the tire pressure sensors. The electronic tire pressure monitoring system is more accurate.
- When the TPMS determines that the air pressure in one or more tires is too low, check the tire pressure thoroughly using a pressure gauge. Low pressure in a tire often cannot be determined by looking at the tire. This applies especially for low profile tires.
- When there is a rapid or excessive loss of pressure while driving, you are immediately given a visual and audible warning. ◀

Applies to vehicles: not for the USA models

Canada models: Tire pressure monitoring system (!) – warning light

The tire pressure monitoring system helps the driver to keep track of tire pressures.

Fig. 16 Section of the center console: button for tire pressure monitoring display

The tire pressure monitoring system keeps track of air pressure at the four wheels while you are driving using sensors on the tires and alerts the driver if there is a loss of pressure with a visual or audible warning.

Status inquiry

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 16 briefly to display the status (partial or full load) for monitoring tire pressures in the instrument cluster display.

Adjusting load condition

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 16 for more than two seconds to inform the system of vehicle load condition. You can select between "Partial load" and "Full load".

Switching on

– Press the button ⇒ fig. 16 for about two seconds to switch the tire pressure monitoring system on. The system is in "Partial load" status after it is switched on. The system switches on automatically as soon as a signal is received from a sensor.

Switching off

– Press the button ⇒ page 65, fig. 16 for longer than ten seconds to switch the tire pressure monitoring system off. The system switches off automatically if no sensor signal is received after the vehicle has been stationary for about twenty minutes.

The system operates with the aid of sensors at the wheels. The tire pressure monitoring system receives a wireless transmission of these message from the sensors. In the event of a rapid or severe loss of pressure while you are driving, you are immediately given a visual and/or acoustic warning. ▶

Displays in the instrument cluster

Display	Meaning	Action
(!) and warning **LOW TIRE!**	This warning shows a rapid loss of inflation pressure in at least one tire.	Stop immediately! Inspect all the wheels for external damage and foreign bodies and check the tire pressure for all the wheels. If it is not necessary to change a wheel on the spot, you can proceed at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop ⇒ ⚠.
(!) and warning **TIRE PRESSURES TOO LOW!**	The warning indicates that at least one tire is at a critical pressure at least 0.4 bar lower than the recommended pressure.	Check the tire pressure at all four wheels immediately. If it is not necessary to change a wheel on the spot, you can proceed at reduced speed to the nearest qualified workshop ⇒ ⚠.
Warning **CHECK TIRE PRESSURES!**	After the ignition is switched on, a slow loss of pressure is indicated in at least one tire.	Check the tire pressure at all four wheels immediately ⇒ ⚠.
(!)	There is a malfunction in the system.	Consult your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop and have the problem corrected ⇒ ⚠.
(!) comes on briefly while you are driving	There is a transmission problem between a sensor and the system. Operation can be temporarily disrupted by superposition from transmitters in the vicinity of the vehicle working in the same frequency range (e.g. radio equipment, cellular phone).	No action is necessary.

Acoustic warning signals may be given in addition to the display in the instrument cluster.

Load condition

Following each change in the load condition of the vehicle, you have to check or adjust tire pressures. You can find the tire pressure recommended for your vehicle on the sticker on the open edge of the driver's door ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

You must communicate the load condition to the system for the tire pressure monitoring system to operate correctly. Press the button ⇒ page 65, fig. 16 for longer than two seconds to toggle between the load conditions **Partial load** and **Full load**.

If you press the button ⇒ page 65, fig. 16 briefly, the monitoring status is shown in the display.

Spare wheel

If the vehicle is equipped from the factory with a spare wheel in the same tire/wheel size combination as the four road wheels, the spare wheel also has a compatible sensor.

New wheels

If you want to replace the wheels installed on the vehicle at the factory, make sure that the new wheels are equipped with sensors which are compatible with the factory-installed tire pressure monitoring system. The valve in each tire is equipped with a sensor which measures the pressure in the tire and transmits it to the tire pressure monitoring system. New wheels with sensors are *recognized* and integrated into the system. For recognition to take place, the vehicle must be driven for a while above 15 mph (25 km/h) after it has stood for about 20 minutes. ▶

If you are using tires with different inflation pressures than those recommended by the factory, the tire pressure values must be reprogrammed. Please contact your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

If you mount wheels which do not have sensors or have incompatible sensors, the system cannot *recognize* the wheels. The tire pressure monitoring system is not able to measure inflation pressure. A malfunction is displayed.

Storing tires

The sensors send signals to the tire pressure monitoring system only while you are driving.

Declaration of compliance

Siemens VDO declares that the product S122215002A is in full conformity with the essential requirements and the other relevant provisions of directive 1999/5/EG.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressures and/or under-inflation can lead to a serious or fatal accident.

- **Incorrect tire pressure and/or under-inflation can cause increased tire wear and can affect the handling of the vehicle and stopping ability.**
- **Incorrect tire pressures and/or under-inflation can also lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of vehicle control.**
- **Always make sure that all tires are properly inflated to the tire pressures for the tires on the vehicle and the kind of driving you plan to do.**

⚠ WARNING

The driver is responsible for the correct tire pressures for all tires on the vehicle. The applicable pressure values are located on a sticker on the driver's side door ⇒ page 61.

- **Only when all tires on the vehicle are filled to the correct pressure, the TPMS can work correctly.**
- **The use of incorrect tire pressure values can lead to accidents or other damage. Therefore it is essential that the driver observe the specified tire pressure values for the tires and**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

the correct pressures for the function of the TPMS.

- **When the warning symbol appears in the instrument cluster, stop and inspect the tires.**
- **If the tire is not flat and you do not have to change a wheel immediately, drive at reduced speed to the nearest service station to check the tire pressure and add air as required ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.**

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can result in a sudden tire failure loss of control, collision, serious personal injury and even death.

- **Always inflate tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.**
- **Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **Excessive speed and/overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure and loss of control.**
- **If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**

Note

- Missing valve stem caps can result in damage to the valve and sensors in the tire pressure monitoring system. To prevent this, always drive with valve stem caps that are the equivalent of those installed at the factory. The caps must be screwed down tightly. Do not use metal valve stem caps.
- When switching to different tires, make certain that the valves and the sensors are not damaged.

For the sake of environment

Low tire pressures also increase fuel consumption.

Tips

- The tire pressure monitoring system checks the tires for the factory recommended inflation ▶

pressures. The recommended values are on the sticker on the open edge of the driver's door ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

- If you are driving on tires other than those installed at the factory, have the inflation pressures entered in the pressure monitoring system by a Volkswagen Service® facility if they are different. Only one value can be saved in the system for partial or full load.
- The tire pressure monitoring system shuts itself off if a set of tires without wheel sensors is mounted on the vehicle and it cannot receive sensor signals. As soon as the system receives at least one sensor signal, it switches itself on again.
- Check tire pressures at regular intervals, even though you have the monitoring system. Inspect the tires for damage (punctures, cuts, tears and blisters). Remove foreign bodies from the tire tread.
- If sensors have to be replaced, have the valves changed at the same time.
- Discrepancies may occur between the pressures read on the pressure gauge when inflating the tires and the pressures read by the tire pressure sensors. The electronic tire pressure monitoring system is more accurate. ◀

Checking tire pressure

The correct tire pressure for the tires originally installed on your vehicle is listed on the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door.

The recommended tire pressures are on the tire pressure label and in the table ⇒ page 61, "Cold tire inflation pressure". This means that the pressure must be checked and adjusted when the tire has not been driven for more than a couple of miles (kilometers) at low speeds during the previous three hours. Air in the tires expands when the tire heats up as a result of internal friction as it flexes in use. The tire pressure is higher when the tire has warmed up than when it is "cold."

It is the inflation pressure in a "cold" tire that counts. Therefore, you should never let air out of a warm tire to match "Cold tire inflation pressure" recommendations ⇒ page 61. The tires would then be underinflated and could fail suddenly.

The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen lists the recommended cold tire inflation pressures for the new, original equipment tires that were on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. For the location of the label ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

Most tires lose air naturally over time. They can also lose some air if you drive over a pothole or hit a curb while parking. It is usually not possible to see whether the radial tires used today are underinflated just by looking at them.

Therefore, be sure to check tire pressures at least once a month and always before going on a long trip. Make sure to take the number of people and the amount of luggage into account when adjusting tire pressure for a trip – even one that you would not consider to be "long." See ⇒ page 70, "Tires and vehicle load limits" for more important information.

Vehicles that have full hub caps have valve extenders instead of dust caps. To check tire pressure or add air, you do not need to remove the extender. Be sure to reinstall valve dust caps after checking or adjusting tire pressure.

Always use an accurate tire pressure gauge when manually checking and adjusting inflation pressures. Check all of the tires and be sure not to forget the spare wheel. If the pressure in any tire is too high when the tire is "cold," let air our of the tire slowly with the edge of the tire gauge and keep checking the pressure until you reach the pressure that is correct for the load (passengers and luggage) and kind of driving you plan to do.

If the pressure in any tire is too low, note the difference between the pressure in the cold tire and the pressure you need and add the air that you need to reach the correct pressure for the vehicle load (passengers and luggage) for the tires on your vehicle as listed on the on your vehicle and in this manual and the kind of driving you plan to do. ▶

Never exceed the maximum inflation pressure listed on the tire sidewall for any reason.

Remember that the vehicle manufacturer, not the tire manufacturer, determines the correct tire pressure for the tires on your vehicle

It is important to check the tire pressure when the tires are cold.

Vehicle without TPMS[6)]

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door.
- Place the air pressure gauge on the dust caps - there is no need to remove them.
- The tire pressures should only be checked when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.

Vehicle with TPMS[6)]

- Read the required tire pressure from the tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door.
- Turn the valve stem cap counter-clockwise to remove it from the tire valve.
- Place the air pressure gauge on the valve.
- The tire pressures should only be checked and adjusted when the tires are cold. The slightly raised pressures of warm tires must not be reduced.
- Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying.
- Reinstall the valve stem cap on the valve.

When should I check the tire pressure?

The correct tire pressure is especially important at high speeds. The pressure should therefore be checked at least once a month and always before starting a journey. Do not forget to check the tire pressure on the spare wheel[7)] ⇒ page 81.

When should I adjust the tire pressures?

Adjust the tire pressure to the load you are carrying. After changing a wheel or replacing wheels you have to adjust the tire pressures on all wheels. In addition on vehicles with TPMS, you should specify new tire pressures ⇒ page 65.

⚠ WARNING

Incorrect tire pressure can result in a sudden tire failure loss of control, collision, serious personal injury and even death.

- **Always fill tires to the recommended and correct tire pressure before driving off.**
- **Driving with underinflated tires bend more, letting them get too hot resulting in tread separation, sudden tire failure tire failure and loss of control.**
- **Excessive speed and/or overloading can cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.**
- **If the tire pressure is too low or too high, the tires will wear prematurely and the vehicle will not handle well.**

Note

Driving without valve stem caps can cause damage to the tire valves and sensors on vehicles with tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)[6)]. To prevent this, always make sure that factory installed valve stem caps on all wheels are securely mounted on the valve.

For the sake of environment

Your car will have a higher fuel consumption and unnecessary exhaust emissions with underinflated tires.

Tips

For vehicles with TPMS:

- You may find differences between the pressure readings from a hand-held pressure gauge and the pressure readings displayed in the instrument cluster. The tire pressure monitoring system is more accurate.
- When the TPMS determines that the air pressure in one or more tires is too low, check the tire pressure thoroughly using a pressure gauge. Low pressure in a tire often cannot be determined by ▶

6) Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

7) Where applicable

looking at the tire. This applies especially for low profile tires. ◀

Tires and vehicle load limits

There are limits to the amount of load or weight that any vehicle and any tire can carry. A vehicle that is overloaded will not handle well and is more difficult to stop. Overloading can not only lead to loss of vehicle control, but can also damage important parts of the vehicle and can lead to sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation that can cause the vehicle to crash.

Your safety and that of your passengers also depends on making sure that load limits are not exceeded. Vehicle load includes everybody and everything in and on the vehicle. These load limits are technically referred to as the vehicle's **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** ("GVWR").

The "GVWR" includes the weight of the basic vehicle, all factory installed accessories, a full tank of fuel, oil, coolant and other fluids plus maximum load. The maximum load includes the number of passengers that the vehicle is intended to carry ("seating capacity") with an assumed weight of 150 lbs. (68 kg) for each passenger at a designation seating position and the total weight of any luggage in the vehicle. If you tow a trailer, the weight of the trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer must be included as part of the vehicle load.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** ("GAWR") is the maximum load that can be applied at each of the vehicle's two axles.

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating and the Gross Axle Weight Rating are listed on the safety compliance sticker label on the driver's door latch pillar. Your Vehicle has 5 seating positions, 2 in the front and 3 in the rear for total seating capacity of 5. Each seating position has a safety belt ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first."

The fact that there is an upper limit to your vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating means that the total weight of whatever is being carried in the vehicle (including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of the loaded trailer) is limited. The more passengers in the vehicle or passengers who are heavier than the standard weights assumed mean that less weight can be carried as luggage.

The tire pressure label on your Volkswagen also lists the maximum combined weight of all of the occupants and luggage or other cargo that the vehicle can carry. For the location of the tire pressure label ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

⚠ WARNING

Overloading a vehicle can cause loss of vehicle control, a crash or other accident, serious personal injury, and even death.

- **Carrying more weight than your vehicle was designed to carry will prevent the vehicle from handling properly and increase the risk of the loss of vehicle control.**
- **The brakes on a vehicle that has been overloaded may not be able to stop the vehicle within a safe distance.**
- **Tires on a vehicle that has been overloaded can fail suddenly, including a blowout and sudden deflation, causing loss of control and a crash.**
- **Always make sure that the total load being transported – including the weight of a trailer hitch and the tongue weight of a loaded trailer – does not make the vehicle heavier than the vehicle's Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.** ◀

Determining correct load limit

Use the example below to calculate the total weight of the passengers and luggage or other things that you plan to transport so that you can make sure that your vehicle will not be overloaded.

Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit

1. Locate the statement "THE COMBINED WEIGHT OF OCCUPANTS AND CARGO SHOULD NEVER EXCEED XXX KG OR XXX LBS" on your vehicle's placard (tire inflation pressure label) ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from "XXX" kilograms or "XXX" pounds ⇒ page 61, fig. 15.

4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lbs. passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)

5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.

6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle.

– Check the tire sidewall (⇒ page 73, fig. 19) to determine the designated load rating for a specific tire. ◀

Tire service life

The service life of tires depends on a lot of different things including proper installation and balancing, correct tire pressure and driving style.

Fig. 17 Tire tread: tread wear indicators (TWI)

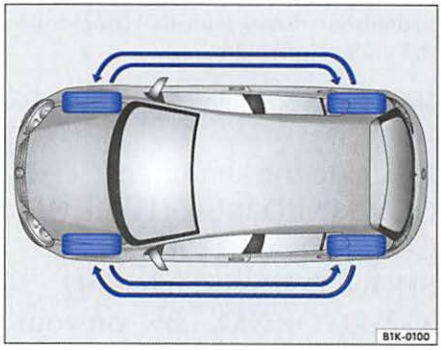


Fig. 18 Rotating tires for more even wear

Tread Wear Indicator (TWI)

The original tires on your vehicle have 1/16 inch (1.6 mm) high "wear indicators" ⇒ fig. 17 running across the tread. Depending on the make, there will be six to eight of them evenly placed around the tire. Marks on the tire sidewall (for example "TWI" or other symbols) indicate the positions of the tread wear indicators. Worn tires must be replaced. Different figures may apply in other countries ⇒ ⚠.

Tire pressure

Incorrect tire pressure causes premature wear and can cause sudden tire blow-out. For this reason, tire pressure must be checked at least once a month ⇒ page 68.

Driving style

Driving fast around curves, heavy acceleration and hard braking increase tire wear.

Rotating tires for more even wear

If the front tires are worn considerably more than the rear ones, rotate them as shown ⇒ fig. 18. All the tires will then last for about the same amount of time.

All four tires should have the same amount of wear. All four wheels must have the same rolling circumference.

Wheel balancing

The wheels on new vehicles are balanced. However, various situations during everyday driving can cause them to become unbalanced, resulting in vibrations you can usually feel through the steering wheel.

Unbalanced wheels must be rebalanced to avoid excessive wear on steering, suspension and tires. A wheel must also be rebalanced when a new tire is installed.

Incorrect wheel alignment

Incorrect wheel alignment can cause excessive tire wear, impairing the safety of the vehicle. If tires show excessive wear, have the wheel alignment checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

⚠ WARNING

Sudden tire failure can lead to loss of control, a crash and serious personal injury!

- **Never drive a vehicle when the tread on any tire is worn down to the wear indicators.**
- **Worn tires are a safety hazard, they do not grip well on wet roads and increase your risk of "hydroplaning" and loss of control.**
- **Always keep chemicals that can cause tire damage, such as grease, oil, gasoline and brake fluid away from tires.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control. ◀

New tires and replacing tires and wheels

New tires and wheels have to be broken in.

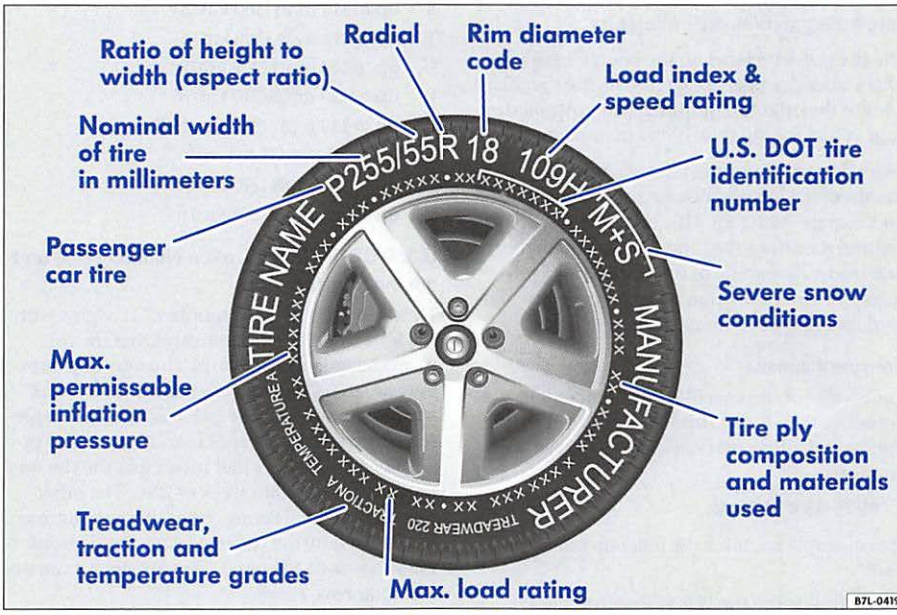


Fig. 19 Tire specification codes on the sidewall of a tire

The tires and rims are essential parts of the vehicle's design. The tires and rims approved by Volkswagen are specially matched to the characteristics of the vehicle and can make a major contribution to good road holding and safe handling when in good condition and properly inflated ⇒ ⚠.

We recommend that all work on tires and wheels be performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer. They are familiar with recommended procedures and have the necessary special tools and spare parts as well as the proper facilities for disposing of the old tires.

Authorized Volkswagen dealers have the necessary information about technical requirements for installing or changing tires and rims.

Replacing tires and wheels

Tires should be replaced at least in pairs and not individually (for example both front tires or both rear tires together).

On vehicle with TPMS[8)] read and heed the information ⇒ page 75, "Replacing tires or rims on ▶

vehicles equipped with Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)[8]".

Always buy replacement radial tires that have the same specifications as the tires approved for your vehicle by Volkswagen. Replacement tires must always have the same load rating specification as the original equipment or approved optional tires listed in the table ⇒ page 61.

Volkswagen-approved specification tires are specially matched to your vehicle and its load limits, and can contribute to the important road holding, driving characteristics, and safety of the vehicle. The table (⇒ page 61) lists specifications of the tires approved for the Volkswagen models covered by your Owner's Literature.

The tire pressure label on the open edge of the driver's door ⇒ page 61, fig. 15 lists the specifications of the original equipment tires installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured.

Federal law requires tire manufacturers to place standardized information on the sidewall of all tires ⇒ page 73, fig. 19. This information identifies and describes the fundamental characteristics, the quality grade of the tire and also provides a tire identification number for safety standard certification and in case of a recall.

Tire specifications

Knowledge of tire specifications makes it easier to choose the correct tires. Radial tires have the tire specifications marked on the sidewall, for example:

P225/45 R 17 91 W

This example contains the following information:

P Indicates the tire is for passenger cars

225 Nominal tire width in mm of the tire from sidewall edge to sidewall edge. In general, the larger the number, the wider the tire

45 Height/width ratio in percent (aspect ratio)

R Tire construction: Radial

17 Rim diameter code (in inches)

91 Load rating code

W Speed rating letter code

M+S (or "M/S") Indicates that the tire has some mud and snow capability

The tires could also have the information of direction of rotation ⇒ page 86.

Speed rating letter code

The speed rating letter code on the wheels indicates the maximum permissible road speeds ⇒ ⚠ in "Winter tires" on page 77.

P up to 93 mph (150 km/h)

Q up to 99 mph (158 km/h)

R up to 106 mph (170 km/h)

S up to 110 mph (180 km/h)

T up to 118 mph (190 km/h)

U up to 124 mph (200 km/h)

H up to 130 mph (210 km/h)

V up to 149 mph (240 km/h)[9]

Z over 149 mph (240 km/h)[9]

W up to 168 mph (270 km/h)[9]

Y up to 186 mph (298 km/h)[9]

U.S. DOT Tire Identification Number (TIN) and tire manufacture date

This is the tire's "serial number." It begins with the letters "DOT" and indicates that the tire meets all federal standards. The next two numbers or letters indicate the plant where it was manufactured, and the last four numbers represent the week and year of manufacture. For example, the numbers 1801 mean that the tire was produced in the 18th week of 2001. The other numbers are marketing codes that may or may not be used by the tire manufacturer. This information is used to contact consumers if a tire defect requires a recall.

Tire ply composition and materials used

The number of plies indicates the number of layers of rubber-coated fabric in the tire. In general, the greater the number of plies, the more weight a tire can support. Tire manufacturers also must indicate the materials in the tire, which include steel, nylon, polyester, and others. ▶

---

8) Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

9) For tires with a maximum speed capability over 149 mph (240 km/h), tire manufacturers sometimes use the letters "ZR."

Maximum Load Rating

This number indicates the maximum load in kilograms and pounds that can be carried by the tire. Tire quality grading for tread wear, traction, and temperature resistance.

Tire quality grading for tread wear, traction, and temperature resistance

Tread wear, traction and temperature grades ⇒ page 76, "Uniform tire quality grading".

Maximum Permissible Inflation Pressure

This number is the greatest amount of air pressure that should ever be put in the tire under normal driving conditions.

Replacing tires or rims on vehicles equipped with Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)[8)]

The air valve on all four tires (not on the spare wheel) is equipped with a sensor, which constantly monitors the air pressure inside the tire, and then transmits this information to the TPMS[8)]. If you are going to replace the wheel rims on your vehicle, make sure the new rims also have these sensors. The sensors must be compatible with the TPMS system on your vehicle.

If you install rims, which do not have the sensors, or have sensors which are not compatible, then the TPMS will not work properly. In this case, the TPMS would not be able to monitor the tire pressure or warn you if it is necessary.

- All sensors must be replaced at specific intervals.
- Whenever you change sensors, you have to install new valves.
- Always drive with the valve stem caps securely mounted. We recommend using factory installed valve stem caps. Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer to replace lost valve stem caps.

The installation of replacement tires with steel cord body plies in the tire sidewall may cause malfunction of the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS), and is not recommended (cord material information in molded on the tire sidewall).

Additionally, if your vehicle was originally equipped with run-flat tires, replacing them with tires that are not identical to those originally fitted may cause malfunction of the TPMS, and is not recommended. Run-flat tires should not be used to replace regular tires.

Always check your TPMS indicator after replacing one or more tires on your vehicle. If the TPMS malfunction indicator is on, your TPMS is not working properly. Your replacement tire might be incompatible with your TPMS system, or some component of the TPMS may be damaged.

⚠ WARNING

- **Using incorrect or unmatched tires and / or wheels or improper tire and wheel combinations can lead to loss of control, collision and serious personal injury.**
- **Always use tires, rims and wheel bolts that meet the specifications of original factory-installed tires or other combinations that have been specifically approved by the vehicle manufacturer.**
- **Tires age even if they are not being used and can fail suddenly, especially at high speeds. Tires that are more than 6 years old can only be used in an emergency and then with special care and at lower speeds.**
- **Never mount used tires on your vehicle if you are not sure of their "previous history." Old used tires may have been damaged even though the damage cannot be seen that can lead to sudden tire failure and loss of vehicle control.**
- **All four wheels must be fitted with radial tires of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern. Driving with different tires reduces vehicle handling and can lead to a loss of control.**
- **If the spare wheel is not the same as the tires that are mounted on the vehicle - for example with winter tires - only use the spare wheel for a short period of time and drive with extra care. Refit the normal road wheel as soon as safely possible.**
- **Never drive faster than the maximum speed for which the tires on your vehicle are rated because tires that are driven faster than their rated speed can fail suddenly.**
- **Overloading tires cause heat build-up, sudden tire failure, including a blowout and sudden deflation and loss of control.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Temperature grades apply to tires that are properly inflated and not over or underinflated.**
- **For technical reasons it is not always possible to use wheels from other vehicles – in some cases not even wheels from the same vehicle model.**
- **If you install wheel trim discs on the vehicle wheels, make sure that the air flow to the brakes is not blocked. Reduced airflow to the brakes can them to overheat, increasing stopping distances and causing a collision.**
- **To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes and serious personal injuries, never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings.**

Note

- For technical reasons, it is not generally possible to use the wheel rims from other vehicles. This can hold true for wheels of the same vehicle type.
- If the spare wheel is different from the tires that you have mounted on your vehicle (for example winter tires or wide profile tires), then use the spare wheel for a short period of time only and drive with extra care. Replace the flat tire with the tire matching the others on your vehicle as soon as possible.

Note

On vehicles with TPMS[B]:

- When installing new tires, be careful not to damage the valves or sensors.
- Never drive without the valve stem cap. The valves and sensors could get damaged.
- If the sensors must be replaced, then the valve must also be replaced at the same time.
- The sensors must be replaced in scheduled intervals ⇒ booklet 1.1 "Maintenance."

For the sake of environment

Dispose of old tires in accordance with the local requirements. ◀

Uniform tire quality grading

- Tread wear
- Traction AA A B C
- Temperature A B C

Quality grades can be found where applicable on the tire side wall between tread shoulder and maximum section width ⇒ page 73, fig. 19.

For example: Tread wear **200**, Traction AA, Temperature A.

All passenger car tires must conform to Federal Safety Requirements in addition to these grades.

Tread wear

The *tread wear* grade is a comparative rating based on the wear rate of the tire when tested under controlled conditions on a specified government test course.

For example, a tire graded 150 would wear one and one half (1 1/2) times as well on the government course as a tire graded 100.

The relative performance of tires depends upon the actual conditions of their use, however, and may depart significantly from the norm due to variations in driving habits, service practices and differences in road characteristics and climate.

Traction AA, A, B, C

The *traction* grades, from highest to lowest, are AA, A, B and C. Those grades represent the tire's ability to stop on wet pavement as measured under controlled conditions on specified government test surfaces of asphalt and concrete. A tire marked C may have poor traction performance ⇒ ⚠.

Temperature A, B, C

The *temperature* grades are A (the highest), B, and C, representing the tire's resistance to the generation of heat and its ability to dissipate heat when tested under controlled conditions on a specified indoor laboratory test wheel.

Sustained high temperature can cause the material of the tire to degenerate and reduce tire life, and excessive temperature can lead to sudden tire failure. ▶

The grade C corresponds to a level of performance which all passenger car tires must meet under the Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standard No. 109. Grades B and A represent higher levels of performance on the laboratory test wheel than the minimum required by law ⇒ ⚠.

⚠ WARNING

The traction grade assigned to this tire is based on straight-ahead braking traction tests, and does not include acceleration, cornering, hydroplaning or peak traction characteristics.

⚠ WARNING

The temperature grade for this tire is established for a tire that is properly inflated and not overloaded. Excessive speed, underinflation, or excessive loading, either separately or in combination, can cause heat buildup and possible tire failure. ◀

Winter tires

Winter tires can improve vehicle handling on snow and ice. At temperatures below 45° F (7° C) we recommend changing to winter tires.

In some heavy snow areas, local governments may require true winter or "snow" tires, those with very deeply cut tread. These tires should only be used in pairs and be installed on all four wheels. Make sure you purchase snow tires that are the same size and construction type as the other tires on your vehicle.

We strongly recommend that you always equip all four wheels on your vehicle with correctly fitted winter tires or all-season tires, when winter road conditions are expected. This also improves the vehicle's braking performance and reduces stopping distances.

Summer tires provide less grip on ice and snow.

Winter tires (snow tires) must have the same specification and must always be fitted on all four wheels.

If you want to use the tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)[10], compatible sensors must be installed on all four winter tires ⇒ page 75.

Ask your authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop for permitted **winter tire sizes**. Use only radial winter tires.

Winter tires lose their effectiveness when the tread is worn down to a depth of 4 mm (0.157 inch).

Only drive with winter tires under winter conditions. Summer tires handle better when there is no snow or ice on the roads and the temperature is above 45° F (7° C).

If you have a flat tire, see notes on spare wheel ⇒ page 73, "New tires and replacing tires and wheels".

Please always remember that winter tires may have a lower speed rating than the tires originally installed on your vehicle at the time it was manufactured. Please see ⇒ page 59, "Speed rating (letter code)" for a listing of the speed rating letter codes and the maximum speed at which the tires can be driven.

The speed rating letter code (⇒ page 59) is on the side wall of the tire ⇒ page 73, fig. 19.

⚠ WARNING

Winter tires have maximum speed limits that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed. Always know the maximum speed before driving off. Never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific winter tires. This will cause damage to the tires leading to an accident and serious personal injury to you and your passengers.

⚠ WARNING

Driving faster than the maximum speed for which the winter tires on your vehicle were de- ▶

[10] Where applicable (TPMS = Tire pressure monitoring system)

⚠ WARNING (continued)

signed can cause sudden tire failure including a blowout and sudden deflation, loss of control, crashes and serious personal injuries. Have worn or damaged tires replaced immediately.

- **Winter tires have maximum speed rating that may be lower than your vehicle's maximum speed.**
- **Never drive faster than the speed for which the winter or other tires installed on your vehicle are rated.**

⚠ WARNING

Always adjust your speed and driving style to road, traffic and weather conditions. Never let the good acceleration of the winter tires tempt you into taking extra risks. Always remember:

- **Drive carefully and reduce your speed on icy and slippery roads, even winter tires cannot help under black ice conditions.**

For the sake of environment

Use summer tires when weather conditions permit. They are quieter, do not wear as quickly and reduce fuel consumption. ◀

Snow chains – individualize for each vehicle

Snow chains may be fitted only to the front wheels, and only to certain tire sizes.

The snow chains must have low-profile links and must not be thicker than 15 mm, including the lock.

Remove wheel center covers and trim discs before putting snow chains on your vehicle ⇒ ⓘ. For safety reasons cover caps must then be fitted over the wheel bolts. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers.

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong snow chains for your vehicle or installing them incorrectly can increase the risk of loss of control leading to serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Snow chains are available in different sizes. Always make sure to follow the instructions provided by the snow chain manufacturer.**
- **When driving with snow chains never drive faster than the speed permitted for your specific snow chains.**
- **Always observe local regulations.**

Note

- Remove snow chains before driving on roads not covered with snow to avoid damaging tires and wearing the snow chains down unnecessarily.
- Snow chains, which come into direct contact with the wheel rim, can scratch or damage it. Therefore, make sure that the snow chains are suitably covered. ◀

Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts must always be tightened to the correct torque.

The design of wheel bolts is matched to the factory installed rims. If different rims are fitted, the correct wheel bolts with the right length and correctly shaped bolt heads must be used. This ensures that wheels are fitted securely and that the brake system functions correctly.

In certain circumstances, you may not use wheel bolts from a different vehicle – even if it is the same model ⇒ page 31.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.

- **Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened.**
- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.

- **Only use wheel bolts that belong to the wheel rim being installed.**
- **Never use different wheels bolts on your vehicle.**
- **Always maintain the correct tightening torque for the wheel bolts to reduce the risk of a wheel loss. If the tightening torque of the wheel bolts is too low, they can loosen and come out when the vehicle is moving. If the tightening torque is too high, the wheel bolts and threads can be damaged and the wheel can become loose.**

Note

The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 88 ft/lbs (120 Nm). After changing a wheel, the torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench – preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop. ◀

What do I do now?

Vehicle tools and spare wheel

Location

The vehicle tool kit and spare wheel are in the trunk under the trunk floor mat.

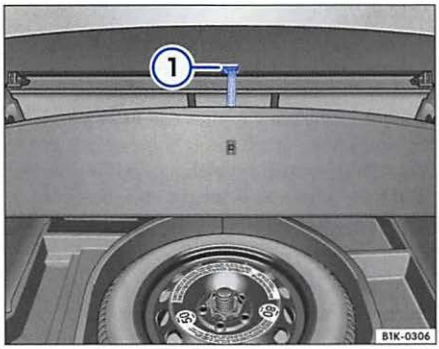


Fig. 20 Floor covering lifted up

Lift up the floor panel and attach it to the hook on the upper edge of the luggage compartment ⇒ fig. 20 ①.

The vehicle jack only fits in the foam insert if it has wound back to its original position after use.

⚠ WARNING

Vehicle tools and a wheel that has not been securely stowed can fly around the inside of the vehicle during hard braking or in a crash and cause serious personal injury.

- **Always make sure that the spare wheel and the tools are stored securely in the luggage compartment.** ◀

Vehicle tool kit

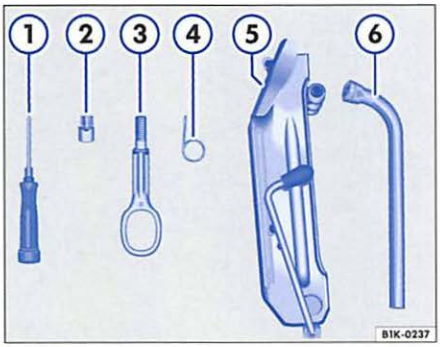


Fig. 21 Vehicle tool kit. Some of the items shown come only with certain models.

The tool kit contains the following items ⇒ fig. 21:

① The screwdriver is in the lug wrench and its blade is reversible.

② Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

③ Towing eye, removable

④ Wire hook for pulling off the wheel bolt caps

⑤ Jack for changing a wheel. Before you put the jack back into the tool box make sure it is completely retracted.

⑥ Lug wrench for wheel bolts

Adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts

We recommend you carry the wheel bolt adapter in the vehicle tool kit at all times. The anti-theft wheel bolt **code number** is stamped on the front of the adapter. You will need this number to replace the adapter if it is lost. Note the code number of the adapter for the anti-theft wheel bolt and keep it in a safe place - but not in your vehicle. ▶

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened wheel bolts can become loose, causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury.

- Never tighten the wheel bolts with a hexagonal socket in the screwdriver handle because you will not be able to tighten the bolts to the required torque.
- Always use the lug wrench and tighten the wheel bolts securely.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never use the factory supplied jack for this model to lift other vehicles or any other heavy objects.
- Your vehicle jack is designed for changing wheels on your vehicle only, not for working underneath it. If you have to work underneath the vehicle, always use safety stands to support the vehicle.
- Always properly secure the vehicle jack and tool kit in the luggage compartment. Loose items in the vehicle can fly around the inside of the vehicle during hard braking or in a crash causing serious personal injury.
- Before you raise your vehicle with the jack, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ ⚠ in "Raising the vehicle" on page 85. ◀

Spare wheel

The spare wheel is located in the luggage compartment, under the floor panel.

Fig. 22 In the luggage compartment: handwheel for securing the spare wheel

Removing the spare wheel

– Open the luggage compartment lid.

– Hook the floor panel into the upper edge of the luggage compartment ⇒ page 80, fig. 20 ① so that you have both hands free when removing the spare wheel.

– Unscrew the handwheel in the middle of the spare wheel ⇒ fig. 22 by turning it to the left.

Storing the tire that has been changed

– Hook the floor panel into the upper edge of the luggage compartment ⇒ page 80, fig. 20 ①.

– Lay the changed tire with the rim down into the spare wheel well so that the hole in the middle of the rim lies directly over the screw.

– Screw the handwheel onto the screw by turning it to the right until the tire is secured.

– Unhook the floor panel and pull it back down onto the bottom of the luggage compartment.

– Close the luggage compartment lid. ▶

⚠ WARNING

- The spare wheel may be smaller than the original tire. The smaller spare wheel is identified with a sticker and the words "50 mph" or "80 km/h". These words identify the maximum permissible speed for driving with this tire.
- The spare wheel must be returned to the spare wheel well as soon as the standard road wheel can be replaced.
- Do not use the spare wheel if it is damaged or if it has worn down to the wear indicators.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If the spare wheel is more than 6 years old, use it only in an emergency and with extreme caution and careful driving.
- The spare wheel must always be secured with the wheel bolts provided by the factory.
- After installing the spare wheel, the tire pressure must be checked as soon as possible ⇒ page 68.

Note

Make sure that the spare wheel or the tire that has been changed is firmly secured in the luggage compartment with the handwheel. ◀

Changing a wheel

Getting started

Park vehicle in a safe place before changing a wheel.

– If you have a flat tire or puncture, park the vehicle as far away from the flow of traffic as possible on a firm, even surface ⇒ ⚠.

– Turn off the engine. Turn on the emergency flasher.

– Apply the parking brake firmly **and** engage a gear or put the selector in **P**.

– All passengers must leave the vehicle. They should wait in a safe place (for example behind a guard rail or other safety barrier).

– Block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed with suitable objects.

– If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle.

– Remove the spare wheel and the vehicle tools from the luggage compartment.

⚠ WARNING

Changing a wheel, especially on the side of the road, can be dangerous. To help reduce the risk of serious personal injury:

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to change the wheel.
- Turn on the emergency flasher and set up another warning device about 27 yards (25 meters) behind the vehicle to warn approaching traffic.
- Always make sure that the ground is level and firm, if necessary use a sturdy board under the jack.
- When one wheel is lifted off the ground putting the selector lever in P will not prevent sudden vehicle movement.
- Always apply the parking brake firmly and firmly engage a gear or put the selector lever in P to help prevent the vehicle from moving suddenly and slipping off the jack.
- Always block the wheel opposite the wheel being changed with both folding chocks or similar objects. ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- If you are towing a trailer, always unhitch it from your vehicle before starting to change the wheel.
- Always use a jack that has been approved by the manufacturer for your vehicle.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never use other jacks, even if they have been approved for use on other Volkswagen models.
- To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes and serious personal injuries, never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings. ◀

Applies to vehicles: with wheel bolt caps

Removing the caps from the wheel bolts

The caps must be removed from the wheel bolts before the wheel bolts are unscrewed.

Fig. 23 Detail of wheel: removing the wheel bolt caps

– Take the wire hook from the vehicle tools ⇒ page 80, fig. 21 ④.

– Insert the hook through the opening in the cap ⇒ fig. 23.

– Use the wire hook to remove the caps.

The caps protect the wheel bolts and must be replaced after changing the wheel.

Please note that the anti-theft wheel bolt has its own separate cap. This cap only fits anti-theft wheel bolts. It does not fit the standard wheel bolts. ◀

Loosening the wheel bolts

Use the special adapter to loosen the anti-theft wheel bolts. The adapter is in the vehicle tool kit.

Fig. 24 Changing the wheel: loosening the wheel bolts

Fig. 25 Changing a wheel: anti-theft wheel bolt and adapter

Loosening wheel bolts

– Slide the **lug wrench** as far as possible over the wheel bolt.

– Hold the end of the lug wrench ⇒ fig. 24 and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn counter-clockwise ⇒ ⚠.

Loosening anti-theft wheel bolts

– Take the adapter for anti-theft wheel bolts out of the vehicle tool kit ⇒ page 80, fig. 21 ②.

– Slide the adapter ⇒ page 84, fig. 25 as far as possible onto the anti-theft wheel bolt.

– Slide the lug wrench as far as possible over the adapter.

– Hold the end of the lug wrench and turn the wheel bolt *one* turn counter-clockwise.

Loosening wheel bolts

If the wheel bolt is very tight, you may be able to loosen it by carefully pushing down the end of the wrench with your foot.

⚠ WARNING

- **Loosen the wheel bolts only about one turn before raising the vehicle with the jack.**
- **Only use the lug wrench that is supplied with the vehicle to loosen the wheel bolts.**
- **To reduce the risk of losing control, crashes and serious personal injuries, never loosen the screws on rims with threaded rim rings ⇒ page 57.** ◀

Raising the vehicle

Raise the vehicle only on the appropriate jack points for the vehicle jack.

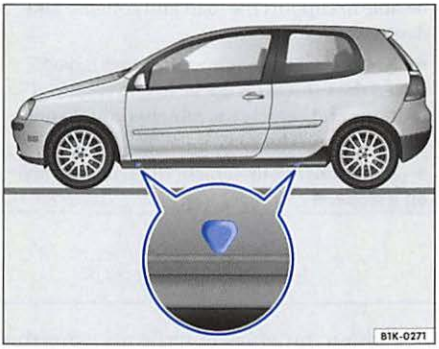


Fig. 26 The jack points for the vehicle jack

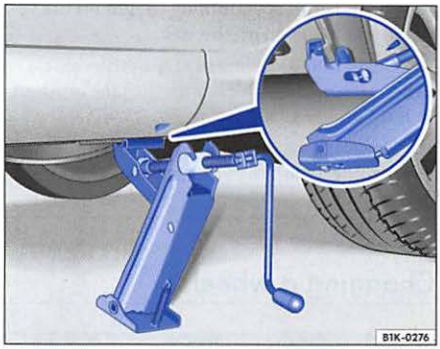


Fig. 27 Jack at left rear

Do not jack up the vehicle until all the wheel bolts on the wheel being changed have been loosened ⇒ page 84.

Jacking up the vehicle

1. Park the vehicle safely with the parking brake.

2. Switch off the engine.

– Move the gearshift lever into a gear or move the selector lever into position P.

3. Locate the jack point ⇒ fig. 26 ⇒ ⚠ closest to the wheel that has to be changed.

4. Raise the jack under the jack point until it fits under the vehicle.

5. Make sure that the stand of the jack is in full contact with the ground.

6. Adjust the jack and continue cranking up the handle until it is in position around the vertical rib underneath the vehicle ⇒ fig. 27 ⇒ ⚠.

7. Crank up the jack until the wheel is off the ground.

The jack must be positioned only at the jack points for the vehicle jack shown ⇒ page 85, fig. 26. Always use the jack point closest to the wheel you are working on.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of your vehicle jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the jack leading to serious personal injury. To reduce the risk of injury caused by the vehicle falling off the jack:

- **Always set up the jack on firm, level ground. Soft ground under the jack may cause the vehicle to slip off the jack. If necessary use a large, strong board or similar support. On a hard, slippery surface (such as tiles) use a rubber mat or something similar to prevent the jack from slipping.**
- **Always position the jack only at the jack points for the vehicle jack ⇒ page 85, fig. 26.**
- **Before you raise your vehicle, always make sure the jack claw properly grasps the vertical rib under the sill so that the jack does not slip off when you are raising the vehicle ⇒ page 85, fig. 27.**
- **If you are towing a trailer, unhitch it from your vehicle before raising the vehicle. Always apply the trailer brakes firmly and make sure the trailer cannot move unintentionally.**
- **Always keep passengers, especially children at a safe distance while using the vehicle jack and also make sure there are no persons under the vehicle. Children at play could**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

knock the vehicle off the jack or hide under a vehicle.

- Never support your body weight on the vehicle when it is up on the jack.
- Never allow anyone to stay in the vehicle when raising the vehicle with the jack or when it is up on the jack.
- Never let anyone place any part of their body underneath the vehicle when supported by the jack.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never support your vehicle on cinder blocks, bricks or other objects. These may not be able to support the load and collapse suddenly.
- Never start the engine when you have raised the vehicle on the jack. The engine vibrations and vehicle movements could knock the vehicle off the jack.
- Never raise your vehicle when it is parked on a slope. ◀

Changing a wheel

Fig. 28 Changing a wheel: removing the wheel bolts

Removing the wheel

– Using the hex socket in the screwdriver ⇒ fig. 28 to remove previously loosened wheel bolts.

– Then remove the other wheel bolts as described above.

– Take off the wheel.

Mounting the spare wheel

– Mount the spare wheel.

– Install the wheel bolts and tighten them *lightly* using the hex socket in the screw driver.

– Lower the vehicle on the jack.

– Tighten the wheel bolts firmly using the lug wrench. Tighten the wheel bolts in diagonal sequence, for example, tighten the top bolt and then the opposite bolt closest to the ground and continue tightening the bolts until all have been firmly and securely tightened. Do not tighten the bolts in clockwise or counter-clockwise sequence.

– Use the adapter when tightening the anti-theft wheel bolt.

– Install the wheel bolt caps.

– Please note that the anti-theft wheel bolt has its own separate cap. This cap only fits anti-theft wheel bolts. It does not fit the standard wheel bolts.

Unidirectional tires

Unidirectional tires must be correctly mounted all around.

A unidirectional tire can be identified by arrows on the sidewall, that point in the direction the tire is designed to rotate. You must follow the specified direction of rotation. This is necessary so that these tires can develop their optimum characteristics regarding grip, road noise, wear and hydroplaning resistance.

If you have to mount a tire opposite to its proper direction of rotation, please drive carefully since the tire no longer possesses its optimal handling characteristics when mounted on the wrong side of the vehicle. This is particularly important ▶

in wet conditions. In order to fully exploit the benefits of unidirectional tires again, you should immediately replace or change the tire in order to restore the correct direction of rotation.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly tightened or maintained wheel bolts can become loose causing loss of control, a collision and serious personal injury:

- **Always keep the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs clean so the wheel bolts can turn easily and be properly tightened.**
- **Never grease or oil the wheel bolts and the threads in the wheel hubs. They can become loose while driving if greased or oiled, even if tightened to the specified torque.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Always read and heed all WARNINGS and other important information ⇒ page 79, "Wheel bolts".**

Note

- The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 88 ft/lbs (120 Nm). The torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench - preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and difficult to turn, they must be replaced before you have the torque checked or have the bolts tightened to the proper torque.
- Have the damaged tire replaced with a tire of the same brand, specifications and tread pattern. ◀

After changing a wheel

– Properly secure the vehicle jack and tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ ⚠.

– Properly secure the spare wheel in the luggage compartment.

– If you are towing a trailer, hitch the trailer to your vehicle securely again.

– Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked with a torque wrench as soon as possible ⇒ page 86 .

– Have the tire pressures of all four wheels checked at the next gas station. If the TPMS detect an underinflated tire, follow the instructions ⇒ page 62 or ⇒ page 65 .

– Have the damaged tire replaced with a tire with the same brand, specifications and tread pattern.

⚠ WARNING

Always properly secure the vehicle jack and tool kit in the luggage compartment. Properly secure the flat tire in the luggage compartment. Loose items in the vehicle can fly around the inside of the vehicle during hard braking or in a crash causing serious personal injury.

Note

- The specified torque for the wheel bolts is 88 ft/lbs (120 Nm). The torque must be checked as soon as possible with a torque wrench - preferably by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.
- If you notice that the wheel bolts are corroded and hard to turn, they must be replaced before you have the torque checked or have the bolts tightened to the proper torque. ◀

Emergency closing or opening

Emergency locking all doors

If the remote key or the central locking malfunctions, all doors can be locked or unlocked manually.

Fig. 29 There is an emergency lock (covered by a weatherstrip) in the edge of the left rear door

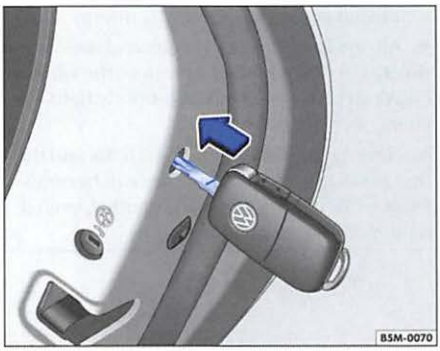


Fig. 30 Using the car key to emergency lock the vehicle

If there is a fault with central locking, you can lock all doors manually. This does not trigger the anti-theft warning system.

Locking the front passenger door and the rear doors

– Open the door.

– Pull back the weatherstrip on the edge of the door that is identified by a lock 🔒 ⇒ fig. 29.

– Fold out the key bit.

– Insert the key horizontally into the opening and press the small white lever forward ⇒ fig. 30.

– Reattach the weatherstrip.

– Close the door completely.

– Check whether the door is locked.

– Repeat the procedure for the other doors.

– Have the vehicle inspected immediately by a qualified dealership.

Locking and unlocking the driver's door (for vehicles without an anti-theft alarm)

– You can manually lock and unlock the doors of the vehicle by inserting the key into the lock on the driver's door.

Locking and unlocking the driver's door (for vehicles with an anti-theft alarm)

– You can manually lock and unlock the driver's door of the vehicle by inserting the key into the lock. All other doors remain locked. The anti-theft warning system remains activated.

If the central locking is operational, the entire vehicle is also locked or unlocked when the driver's door is locked or unlocked. ▶

⚠ WARNING

- Always stop the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and move the vehicle a safe distance off the road where it is safe to lock all doors in an emergency. Turn on the emergency flasher to warn approaching traffic.
- Never close a door without first making sure that it is safe to do so. You can injure yourself or other people. Always make certain that no one is in the way of the door that is being closed.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle when locking the door. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle in an emergency. For example, depending on the time of year, people trapped in the vehicle can be exposed to very high or low temperatures.

Tips

- You can unlock the passenger's door and the rear doors from the inside again if you pull the door opening lever **once**. Pulling on the opening lever a second time opens the door. ◀

Inside emergency opening handle for the rear lid

In an emergency the rear lid can be opened from inside the luggage compartment.

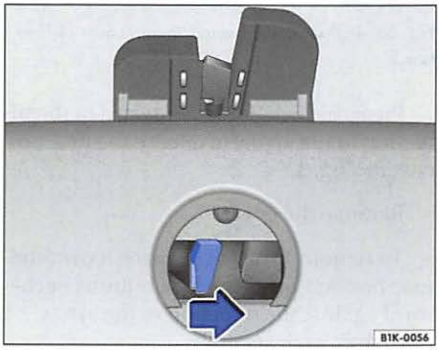


Fig. 31 Emergency unlocking of the rear lid

– Fold the rear seatback forward ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Rear seat."

– Remove any items of luggage from the luggage compartment to enable you to access the interior trim of the rear lid.

– Remove the round covering from the interior trim of the rear lid.

– Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow ⇒ fig. 31 to release the rear lid.

⚠ WARNING

A child or other person trapped in the luggage compartment of a vehicle can be seriously injured and even die.

- Never leave your vehicle unattended or let children play around your vehicle, especially with the trunk lid left open. A child could crawl into the vehicle through the luggage compartment and pull the lid shut becoming trapped and unable to get out. Being trapped in a vehicle can lead to serious personal injury, especially when it is very hot or cold.
- Never leave children, disabled persons or anyone who cannot help themselves in the vehicle. The doors can be locked using the remote control key or the power lock button. This could result in people being trapped in the vehicle.
- Heat build-up in the passenger compartment and luggage compartment of a parked vehicle can result in temperatures in the vehicle that are much higher than the outside temperatures, particularly in summer. Temperatures can quickly reach levels that can cause unconsciousness and death, particularly to small children. ◀

Fuses

Changing a fuse

Fuse boxes are on left side of the instrument panel and behind fuse box covers in the engine compartment.

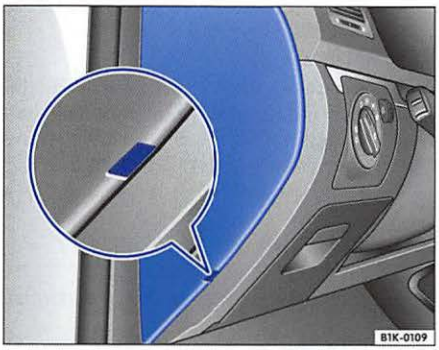


Fig. 32 Instrument panel, left: cover of fuse box A

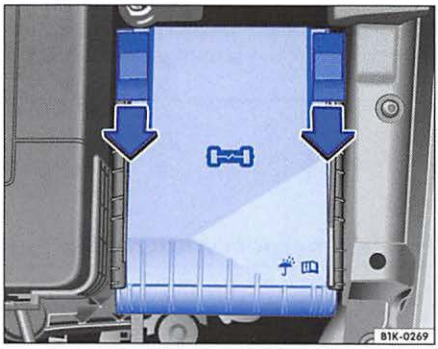


Fig. 33 In the engine compartment: cover of fuse box B

Fuse box A located in the left side of the instrument panel

– Turn off the ignition and the concerning component.

– Insert the flat blade of a screwdriver into the opening of the fuse box cover ⇒ fig. 32.

– Pry off the cover.

– Check the respective fuse.

– Use the fuse tables to find out the location of the blown fuse ⇒ page 92.

– If the fuse is blown (the metal strip is melted), replace it with a new fuse of the *same* amp rating (same color and same marking).

Fuse box B in the engine compartment

– Turn off the ignition and the concerning component.

– Open the engine hood.

– Push the lock buttons forward in the direction of the arrow to release the fuse box cover ⇒ fig. 33.

– Remove the cover.

– To **remount** the cover, place it over the fuse box and press the lock buttons backward against the direction of the arrow until they latch securely.

The individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. We recommend you carry several spare fuses at all times. These are available from authorized Volkswagen dealers.

Color coding of fuses

Color	Amp rating
light brown	5
brown	7.5
red	10
blue	15
yellow	20
clear	25

Color	Amp rating
green	30
orange	40

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong fuse and attempting to repair a fuse or using something instead of a fuse can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- **Never repair a damaged fuse.**
- **Never replace a fuse with one that has a higher amp rating. Always make sure the replacement fuse has the *same* amp rating as the fuse being replaced.**
- **Never replace a blown fuse with a metal object to connect the fuse contacts – even not temporarily.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

Note

- To avoid damaging the electrical system, turn off all lights and accessories and remove the ignition key before replacing a fuse.
- If a new fuse blows after a short time, you must have the electrical system checked by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop as soon as possible. ◀

Fuse boxes

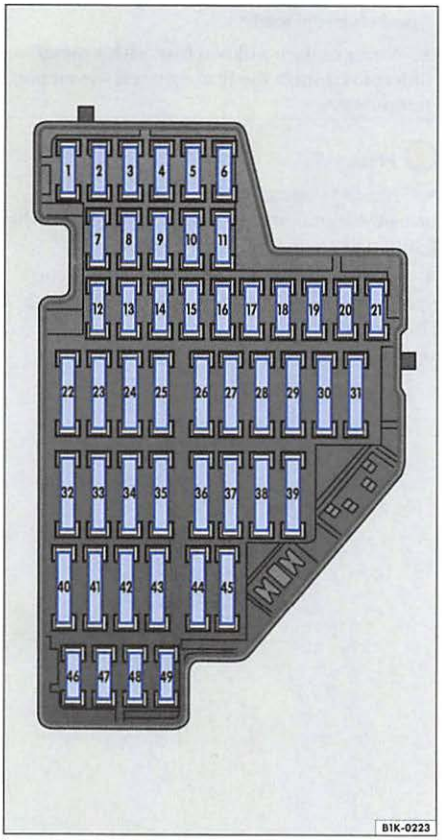


Fig. 34 Fuses in fuse box A in the instrument panel

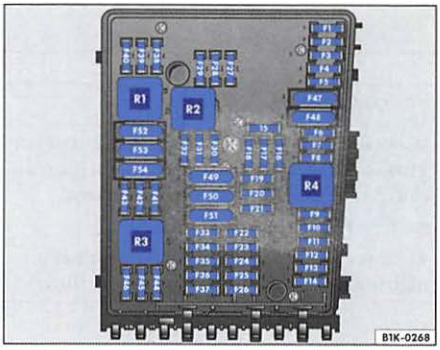


Fig. 35 Fuses in fuse box B in the engine compartment

Fuse table

The table shows the fuse locations for the major electrical consumers ⇒ ⚠. The right hand columns contain the insert location, the figures in brackets indicate the ampere rating for the fuse. It is possible that one electrical consumer can have more than one fuse (also in separate fuse boxes).

There is room for replacement fuses in each fuse box.

There are additional fuses in the vehicle. Have these replaced by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

Fuses in the fuse box A in the instrument panel	
Electrical consummer	**Fuse number** (ampere rating in brackets)
ABS	**8** (5), **20** (5)
Brake-light switch	**2** (5)
Central locking for front doors	**12** (10)
Cigarette lighter	**24** (25)
Fan	**22** (40), **40** (40)
Fuel pump	**27** (15)

Heated seats	4 (5), **37** (30), **46** (5)
Power windows for front	**23** (30)
Power windows for rear	**32** (30)
Rear window de-fogger	**25** (25)
Rear window wiper	**41** (15)
Rear 12-volt socket	**26** (20)
Sunroof	**33** (25)

Fuses in the fuse box B in the engine compartment	
Electrical consummer	**Fuse number** (ampere rating in brackets)
ABS	**F1** (30), **F2** (30)
Backup light left	**F47** (40), **F48** (40)
Backup light right	**F47** (40), **F48** (40)
Brake light left	**F48** (40)
Brake light right	**F47** (40)
Turn signal left	**F47** (40), **F48** (40)
Turn signal right	**F47** (40), **F48** (40)
Fog lights	**F47** (40), **F48** (40)
Headlight left	**F47** (40)
Headlight right	**F48** (40)
Horn	**F5** (15)
Radiator fan	**F38** (10)
Radio	**F19** (15)
Sound system	**F18** (20)
Windshield wipers	**F31** (30)

⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong fuse and attempting to repair a fuse or using something instead of a fuse can cause a fire and serious personal injury.

- **Always read and heed the information and all WARNINGS ⇒ page 90, "Changing a fuse".** ◀

Changing a light bulb

Warning light: Bulb failure

The check light illuminates when an exterior lighting bulb has failed.

The indicator light lights up in the instrument cluster when a vehicle exterior lighting bulb, (e.g. left high beam) has failed.

If the vehicle is delivered from the factory with a trailer hitch and the trailer is correctly attached to the trailer socket, certain bulbs on the trailer are also monitored.

Bulb monitoring with trailer attached The trailer lighting is constantly monitored for a bulb failure. The check light illuminates if a bulb in the rear light of the trailer has failed

The following bulbs are monitored:

- Common failure of all turn signals on one side
- Failure of the rear light on one side (on some models also failure of the license plate light).
- Failure of both brake lights ◀

Changing light bulbs

Light bulbs should be changed by a qualified technician only.

Light bulbs should be changed only by qualified technicians. In many cases changing a light bulb involves removing other parts of the car to get to the burnt-out light bulb, particularly those in the front of the vehicle that can only be reached through the engine compartment.

We recommend that light bulbs only be changed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or qualified workshop.

Before changing a light bulb, you must switch off the light (light switch in O position), and turn the signal lever must be in the neutral position.

Always replace burnt-out light bulbs with identical light bulbs with same specifications. The specifications are printed on the light bulb, either on the glass bulb or on the metal base.

It is advisable to always carry a box of replacement light bulbs in your vehicle at all times. The box should contain at least those light bulbs that are important for traffic safety. See your Volkswagen dealer for recommended light bulbs.

Additional light bulb specifications

Some light bulbs in the headlights or in the reverse lights can have factory-set specifications that differ from conventional light bulbs. The corresponding model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself.

LL = LongLife bulbs with a longer life compared to conventional light bulbs.

Blue = Light bulbs with bluish-white light, suitable for gas discharge lights (Xenon/Bi-Xenon lights).

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS

⚠ WARNING (continued)

⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

- **Gas discharge lamps (Xenon) get power from a high voltage source that can cause serious personal injury and even death if handled improperly.**
- **H7 light bulbs are under high pressure and can explode if handled improperly.**
- **Always have a qualified technician replace burnt-out light bulbs, especially gas discharge lamps (Xenon) and H7 light bulbs.**

⚠ WARNING

Never remove the headlight unless you know exactly how to carry out the job and have the correct tool and light bulbs.

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**
- **There are parts with sharp edges on the headlight housing in the engine compartment and on the rear light housings. Wear hand protection when you replace bulbs.**

(!) Note

- Do not touch glass bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints can cloud the outer surface of the bulb when heated, thus affecting the reflection, and thus reducing the power of illumination.
- A bulb can only be replaced by a bulb of the same type. The model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself. ◀

Changing the headlights, front turn signal and the side light bulbs

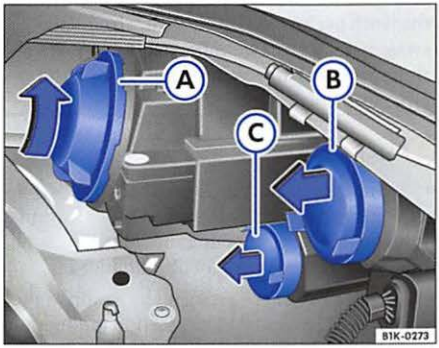


Fig. 36 Cover Ⓐ for low beam, cover Ⓑ for high beam and side light, cover Ⓒ for the turn signal

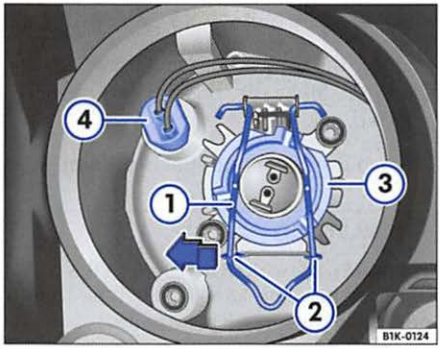


Fig. 37 In the headlight: high beam bulb ③ and position light bulb ④

Changing the low beam light bulb

– Switch the headlights off.

– Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Open the engine hood.

– Turn the cover ⇒ fig. 36 Ⓐ to the left (arrow) and remove the cover.

– Turn the bulb holder to the right and remove the bulb.

– Replace the defective bulb.

– Insert the bulb holder again and turn it to the left.

– Replace the cover by turning to the right.

Changing the high beam light bulb

– Switch the headlights off.

– Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Open the engine hood.

– Pull the cover Ⓑ off in direction of the arrow.

– Disconnect the connector from the bulb holder.

– Move the wire clip ① backward when facing forward and press it out of the catches ② in the direction of the arrow.

– Swing the wire clip upwards.

– Remove the bulb holder from the headlight.

– Replace the light bulb.

– Insert the bulb holder into the headlight. Make sure the catches are on the underside.

– Swing the wire clip downwards before engaging it in the catches ② against the direction of the arrow. Gently pull on the wire clip to ensure it is securely engaged.

– Plug the connector into the bulb holder.

– Push the cover onto the headlight.

Changing the position light bulb

– Switch the headlights off.

– Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Open the engine hood.

– Pull the cover Ⓑ off in direction of the arrow. ▶

– Remove the bulb holder ⇒ page 95, fig. 37 ④ from the headlight.

– Change the bulb.

– Place the bulb holder insert back in the headlight. Make sure the holder is properly inserted.

– Push the cover onto the headlight.

⚠ WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the opening and on the lamp holder. Wear hand protection when you replace bulbs.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**

Note

- Do not touch glass bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints can cloud the outer surface of the bulb when heated, thus affecting the reflection, and thus reducing the power of illumination.
- A bulb can only be replaced by a bulb of the same type. The model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself. ◀

Changing the turn signal light bulb

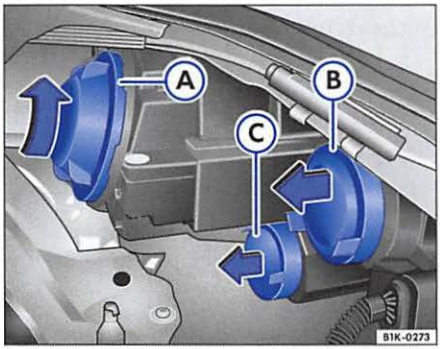


Fig. 38 Cover Ⓐ for low beam, cover Ⓑ for high beam and side light, cover Ⓒ for the turn signal

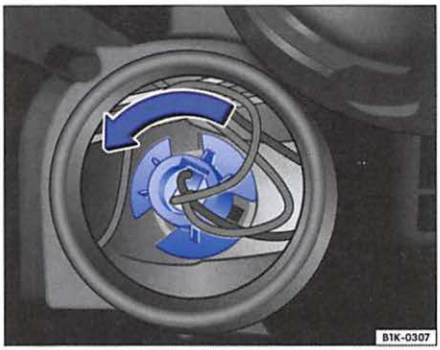


Fig. 39 Removing the bulb holder

– Switch off the light .

– Switch off the ignition.

– Open the engine hood.

– Pull the rubber cover ⇒ fig. 38 Ⓒ off.

– Turn the bulb holder as far as it will go in the direction of the arrow and pull the bulb holder out.

– Replace the defective bulb.

– Insert the bulb holder and turn it as far as it will go in the opposite direction to the arrow.

– Press the rubber cover back into position.

⚠ WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the opening and on the lamp holder. Wear hand protection when you replace bulbs.

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volk-** ▶

⚠ WARNING (continued)

swagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.

Note

- Do not touch glass bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints can cloud the outer surface of the bulb when heated, thus affecting the reflection, and thus reducing the power of illumination.
- A bulb can only be replaced by a bulb of the same type. The model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself. ◀

Changing the bulb for the rear light, turn signal light or brake light

The rear light contains a light bulb for the rear turn signal and a light bulb for the rear brake light.

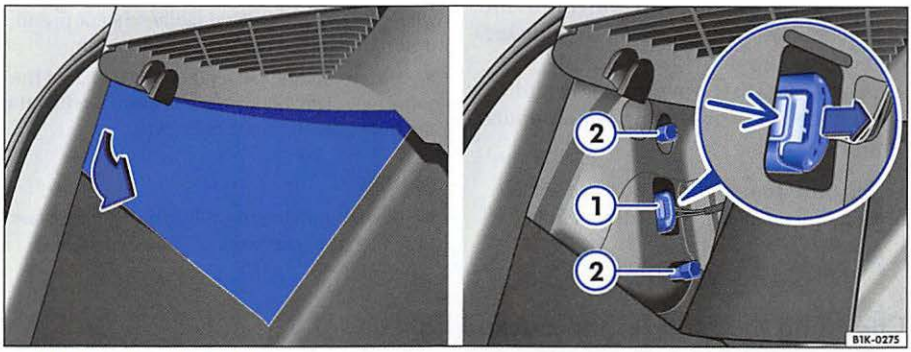


Fig. 40 Removing the tail light

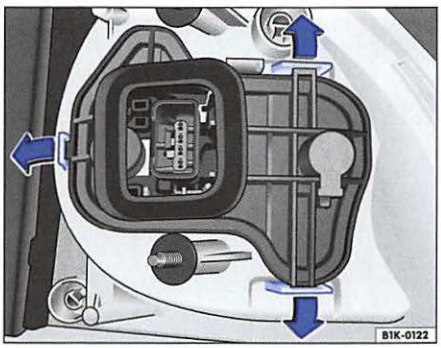


Fig. 41 Tail light: Unlatching bulb holder

To remove the tail light, you need the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit and a 10 x 13mm open ended wrench.

Removing the tail light

– Switch the headlights off.

– Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Open the rear lid.

– Use the flat blade on the screwdriver and pry the cover off in direction of the arrow carefully ⇒ fig. 40 -left illustration-.

– Use the flat blade on the screwdriver and pry the cover off in direction of the arrow carefully ①.

– Using the open ended wrench (13 mm A/F), unscrew and remove the nuts ②.

– Pull the tail light backward out of the side panel of the vehicle. ▶

Replacing light bulb

– Place the tail light removed from the vehicle on a clean, non-abrasive surface.

– Press the tabs in the direction of the arrow and remove the holder from the rear light ⇒ page 97, fig. 41.

– Replace the defective bulb.

– Replace the bulb holder. Make sure the tabs engage correctly.

Installing tail lights

– Insert the tail light into the side section.

– Hold the tail light firmly with one hand to prevent it from falling from the side section when fastening. Place the nuts ⇒ page 97, fig. 40 ② on the screws and tighten the nuts firmly using a open-ended wrench.

– Plug the connector ① into the socket until it engages with an audible click.

– Press the side trim back into position.

⚠ WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the opening and on the lamp holder. Wear hand protection when you replace bulbs.

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**

Note

- Do not touch glass bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints can cloud the outer surface of the bulb when heated, thus affecting the reflection, and thus reducing the power of illumination.
- A bulb can only be replaced by a bulb of the same type. The model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself.

Tips

- When removing the tail lights, take care not to scratch the paintwork of your vehicle. ◀

Changing the bulb for the backup light

The bulbs for the backup lights are in the rear lid.

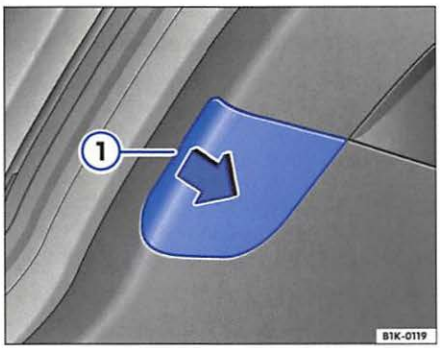


Fig. 42 Remove covering

Fig. 43 Remove light bulb holder

Use the screwdriver from the on-board tool kit to remove the trim.

removing cover

– Open the trunk lid. ▶

– Place the flat blade of the screwdriver into the recess ⇒ fig. 42 ①.

– Pry the cover off carefully in the direction of the arrow.

Replacing light bulb

– Switch the ignition off and remove the key from the ignition lock.

– Turn the lamp holder upwards and pull the lamp holder out along with the light bulb.

– Replace the light bulb.

– Install the lamp holder with the new light bulb.

– Turn the lamp holder against the direction of the arrow back to its original position until it engages.

Installing cover

– Reinsert the cover into the notches.

– Press on the cover until it engages firmly.

⚠ WARNING

There are parts with sharp edges on the opening and on the lamp holder. Wear hand protection when you replace bulbs.

- **If you are uncertain about what to do, have the work performed by an authorized Volkswagen dealer or a qualified workshop. Serious personal injury may result from improperly performed work.**

Note

- Do not touch glass bulb with bare hands. Fingerprints can cloud the outer surface of the bulb when heated, thus affecting the reflection, and thus reducing the power of illumination.
- A bulb can only be replaced by a bulb of the same type. The model identification is either on the bulb base or on the bulb itself. ◀

Jump starting

Jumper cables

The jumper cables must have sufficient wire cross section.

If the engine does not start because the battery is discharged, your vehicle's battery can be connected to the battery of another vehicle to start the engine.

Jumper cables

The wire cross section must be at least 0.038 in^2 (25 mm^2) for gasoline engines.

Note

- Do not let the vehicles touch each other, otherwise current could flow as soon as the plus (+) terminals are connected. If necessary, use longer jumper cables.
- The discharged battery must be properly connected to the vehicle's electrical system. ◀

How to jump start

It is important that the jumper cables are only connected to the special terminals in the engine compartment.

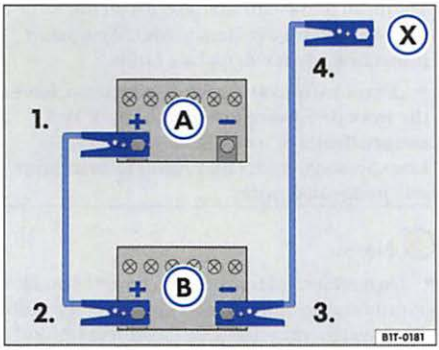


Fig. 44 How to connect the jumper cables

Attaching the jumper cables

1. Switch off the ignition on both vehicles ⇒ ⚠.

2. Connect the *red* jumper cable to the positive ⊕ terminal of the vehicle with the discharged battery ⇒ ⚠.

3. Connect the other end of the *red* jumper cable to the positive terminal ⊕ in the vehicle providing starting assistance.

4. Connect the *black* jumper cable to the negative terminal ⊖ in the vehicle providing assistance.

5. Connect the other end of the *black* jumper cable to the negative ⊖ terminal in the engine compartment of your vehicle. Never connect the jumper cable to the discharged battery itself or to anything near it ⇒ ⚠.

6. Route the cables so that they cannot tangle up with any moving parts in the engine compartment.

Starting the engine

7. Start the engine of the vehicle providing assistance with the booster battery and let it run at idle speed.

8. Start the engine of the vehicle with the discharged battery and wait one or two minutes until the engine is running smoothly.

Removing the jumper cables

9. Before you remove the jumper cables, switch off the headlights (if they are switched on).

10. Turn on the heater blower and rear window heater in the vehicle with the discharged battery. This helps minimize voltage peaks when the jumper cables are disconnected.

11. When the engine is running, disconnect the jumper cables in reverse order to the description given above.

12. Disconnect the *black* ⊖ jumper cable from the vehicle with the discharged battery.

13. Disconnect the *black* ⊖ jumper cable from the vehicle assisting with the booster battery.

14. Disconnect the *red* ⊕ jumper cable from the vehicle assisting with the booster battery.

15. Disconnect the *red* ⊕ jumper cable from the vehicle with the discharged battery.

16. Close the red cap on the plus terminal on your vehicle.

Connect the battery clamps so they have good metal-to-metal contact with the battery terminals.

If the engine does not start, turn off the starter after about 10 seconds and try again after about 30 seconds.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all WARNINGS ⇒ page 39. The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING

Improper use of jumper cables when jump starting a vehicle with a dead battery can cause the battery to explode leading to serious personal injury. To help reduce the risk of battery explosion:

- **Always make sure that the battery providing starting assistance has the same voltage as the discharged battery (12 V) and approximately the same capacity (see battery label).**
- **Never jump start a vehicle with a frozen battery. The battery can explode. If a battery is or has been frozen, replace it.**
- **Batteries give off explosive hydrogen gas. Always keep fire, sparks, open flame and smoking materials away from batteries.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never short out the battery poles by connecting the positive ⊕ and negative ⊖ poles with each other.**
- **Always follow the jumper cables' manufacturer's instructions.**
- **Never connect the negative cable from the other vehicle directly to the negative terminal of the discharged battery. The hydrogen gas from the battery is explosive.**
- **Never attach the negative cable from the vehicle providing starting assistance to parts of the fuel system or to the brake hoses or brake lines.**
- **Never allow the non-insulated parts of the battery clamps to touch. Never allow the jumper cable attached to the positive battery terminal to contact metal parts of the vehicle.**
- **Always route the jumper cables so that they cannot get tangled up with moving parts in the engine compartment.**

(!) Note

- Installing jumper cables improperly can cause expensive damage to the vehicle's electrical system.
- Do not let the vehicles touch each other. Otherwise current could flow between the cars as soon as the plus (+) terminals are connected. ◀

Towing

Front towing eye

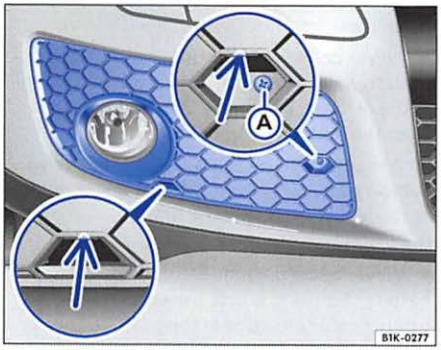


Fig. 45 In the right front bumper: removing the cover

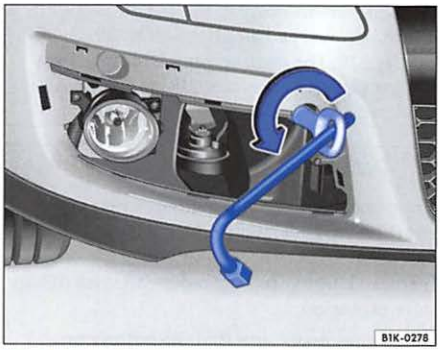


Fig. 46 The front right section of the vehicle: screwing in the towing eye

Take the towing eye, the lug wrench and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment ⇒ page 80.

Installing the towing eye

– Remove the Philips head screw ⇒ fig. 45 Ⓐ

– Reach into the opening -small arrows- with your finger and pull the cover forward to remove it.

– Screw the towing eye in direction of the arrow as far as it will go into the threaded hole ⇒ fig. 46. Use the lug wrench to tighten the towing eye.

– Put the cover and the screw in a safe place in the vehicle.

– When towing operations are complete, unscrew the towing eye clockwise and install the cover.

– Return the towing eye, the lug wrench and the screwdriver to the tool kit.

Follow directions for towing ⇒ page 103. ◀

Rear towing eye

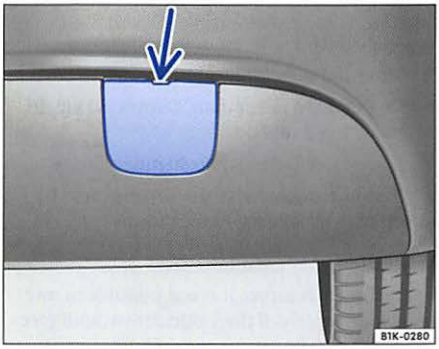


Fig. 47 In the right rear bumper: removing cover

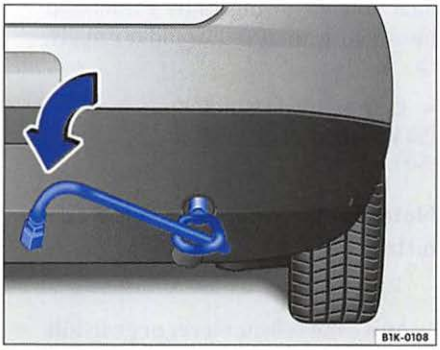


Fig. 48 In the right rear bumper: screwing in the towing eye

Take the towing eye, the lug wrench and the screwdriver out of the vehicle tool kit in the luggage compartment .

Vehicle without factory-installed trailer hitch

– Insert the flat blade of the screwdriver into the slot between the cover and the bumper ⇒ fig. 47.

– Pry the cover off carefully to the rear. It may be necessary to use additional force. Leave the cover hanging on the vehicle.

– Screw the towing eye in direction of the arrow as far as it will go into the threaded hole. Use the lug wrench to tighten the towing eye ⇒ fig. 48.

– When towing operations are complete, unscrew the towing eye clockwise and install the cover.

– Return the towing eye, the lug wrench and the screwdriver to the tool kit.

Follow directions for towing ⇒ page 103.

Vehicle with factory installed trailer hitch

On vehicles which are factory-equipped with a trailer hitch, there is **no** threaded hole for the towing eye behind the cover. The trailer hitch must be used for towing.

Note

Vehicles equipped with a trailer towing equipment cannot use a tow bar to tow another vehicle. Instead, use a tow cable. ◀

General notes

Whenever possible tow with the front wheels off ground

Always observe the following if you use a tow-rope:

Notes for the driver of the towing vehicle

– Turn on the emergency flasher.

– Drive slowly at first until the tow-rope is taut. Then accelerate gradually.

– Press the accelerator slowly. ▶

– Remember that the brake booster and power steering are not working in the vehicle you are towing. Brake earlier and more gently than you would normally ⇒ ⚠.

– Do not drive faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) and further than 30 miles (50 km).

Notes for the driver of the towed vehicle

– Turn on the emergency flasher.

– Move the selector lever or gearshift lever to the neutral position (N).

– Make sure that the tow-rope is taut at all times ⇒ ⚠.

Tow-rope or tow-bar

It is easier and safer to tow a vehicle with a tow-bar. Only use a tow-rope if you do not have a tow-bar.

A tow-rope should be slightly elastic to reduce the loading on both vehicles. Use a tow-rope made of synthetic fiber or similar elastic material.

Attach the tow-rope or the tow-bar only to the towing eyes provided.

Driving style

Towing requires some experience, especially when using a tow-rope. Both drivers must be familiar with the techniques required for towing. Inexperienced drivers should not try to tow another vehicle.

Do not pull too hard with the towing vehicle and avoid jerking the tow-rope. When towing on an unpaved road, there is always a risk of overloading and damaging the anchorage points.

The ignition of the vehicle being towed must be switched on to ensure that the turn signals, horn, windshield wipers and washers work properly.

Keep in mind that the brake booster does not work when the engine is not running. You will have to apply considerably more pressure to the brake pedal than you would normally.

Also the power steering does not work when the engine is not running. You will need more force to steer than you would normally.

Towing vehicles with an automatic transmission

- Move the selector lever to N.
- Do not drive faster than 30 mph (50 km/h) when towing a vehicle.
- Do not tow farther than 30 miles (50 km).
- If a tow truck is used, the vehicle must be towed with all wheels off the ground.

Tow starting

For technical reasons, it is **not** possible to tow start your vehicle, if the vehicle is without electrical power. The engine management systems may not operate properly.

•

Use jumper cables instead ⇒ page 100.

⚠ WARNING

Towing a vehicle changes the way your vehicle handles and brakes. To help reduce the risk of an accident leading to serious personal injury, note the following:

- **The driver of the vehicle that is being towed:**
  - **Will have to press the brake pedal considerably harder than normal because the brake booster is not active. Always be alert not to rear-end the towing vehicle.**
  - **Will have to use considerably more force to turn the steering wheel, because the power steering is not active.**
- **The driver of the vehicle that is towing:**
  - **Must accelerate gradually and gently avoid jerking movements.**
  - **Must brake earlier and more gently than you would normally.**

Tips

- For technical reasons, it is not possible to tow start a vehicle with an automatic transmission.
- If there is no fluid in the vehicle transmission because of a defect, the vehicle must be towed with the drive wheels off the ground.
- If a vehicle with an automatic transmission has to be towed more than 30 miles (50 km), the ▶

vehicle must be professionally towed with the front wheels raised off the ground.

- Inexperienced drivers should not tow another vehicle. ◀

When can your vehicle not be towed?

Your vehicle may not be towed under the following conditions:

- If the transmission malfunctions and there is no transmission fluid.
- If you have to drive farther than 30 miles (50 km).
- If the front or rear axle is lifted off the ground because you damage the drive gear.

In these cases the vehicle must be transported on a car carrier or trailer.

⚠ WARNING

If you still tow your vehicle under these conditions, you could cause an accident or cause damage to the vehicle. This will not be covered by your Limited New Vehicle Warranty.

Note

Do not tow your vehicle behind a recreational vehicle. The Automatic transmission can be severely damaged. This can happen even if the selector lever is in the N (Neutral) position.

Note

- If there is no oil in the transmission because of damage to your vehicle, the vehicle must be moved with a car carrier and all of your vehicle's wheels must be off the ground.
- If the front or rear axle is lifted off the ground, this will serious damage the drive gear.
- If the vehicle has to be towed more than 30 miles (50 km), all wheels must be raised to tow the vehicle. The vehicle must be moved with a car carrier. ◀

Lifting the vehicle

Vehicle lifting points

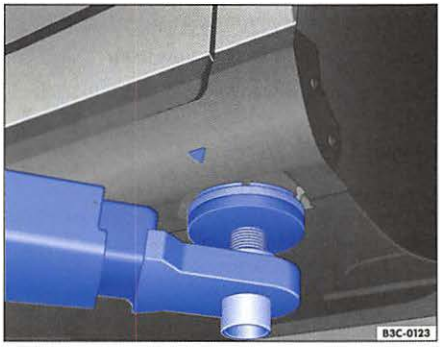


Fig. 49 Lifting with the floor jack: lifting point at front

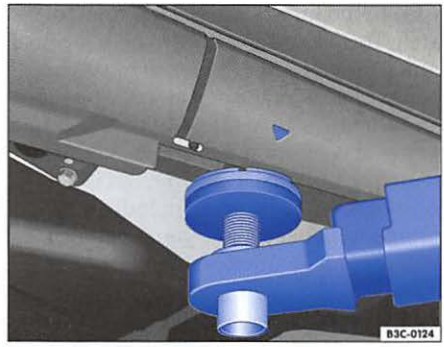


Fig. 50 Lifting with the floor jack: lifting point at rear

Your vehicle may only be lifted by a floor jack at the points shown in the illustrations ⇒ fig. 49 and ⇒ fig. 50.

Using the vehicle jack to lift the vehicle ⇒ page 85. ▶

To prevent damage to the underbody of the vehicle when lifting the vehicle, **rubber pads** must be used.

Before driving onto a floor jack, you must check to make sure that there is enough clearance between low parts of the vehicle and the floor jack.

⚠ WARNING

Improperly lifting your vehicle with a floor jack can cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack and cause serious personal injury:

- **Always lift your vehicle only at the designated lift points shown in the illustrations.**
- **Never allow anyone to stay in the vehicle when it is being lifted or when it is off the ground.**
- **Not using the designated lift points can cause the vehicle to fall off the floor jack when heavy parts such as the engine or transmission are removed.**

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **If you must work under a vehicle raised on a floor jack, always make sure that the vehicle is safely supported on safety stands intended for that purpose that are strong enough to support the weight of the vehicle.**
- **Always make sure that the weight of the vehicle is not heavier than the lifting capacity of the floor jack and safety stands being used.**
- **Never start the engine when you have raised the vehicle on the floor jack. The engine vibrations and vehicle movements could knock the vehicle off the floor jack.**

Note

- Lifting your vehicle at any points other than the designated lifting points can cause serious damage to the vehicle.
- When driving your vehicle on to a hoist, make sure there is sufficient clearance between the hoist and bottom of the vehicle. ◀

Consumer Information

Applicable to U.S. only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, injury, or death, you should inform the NHTSA immediately. You should also notify Volkswagen of America, Inc. If NHTSA receives similar complaints, it may open an investigation, and if it finds that a safety defect exists in a group of vehicles, it may order a recall and remedy campaign. However, NHTSA cannot become involved in individual problems between you, your dealer, or Volkswagen of America, Inc.

Address of NHTSA

Tel.: 1-888-DASH-2-DOT (1-888-327-4236)

From 8:00 AM to 10:00 PM EST, Monday through Friday

Or have a look at:

http://www-odi.nhtsa.dot.gov/ivoq/

and print out the web form and fax it to (202) 366-7882

Or mail it to:

U.S. Department of Transportation
National Highway Traffic Safety Administration
Office of Defects Investigation
NSA-10.01, 400 7th Street, SW
Washington, D.C. 20590 ◀

Applicable to Canada only

If you believe that your vehicle has a defect which could cause a crash, injury, or death, you should inform Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, immediately, You should also notify Volkswagen Canada, Inc.

Address of Transport Canada

Canadian customers who wish to report a safety-related defect to Transport Canada, Defect Investigations and Recalls, you may either call Transport Canada toll-free at:

Phone: 1-800-333-0510 (only from Canada)

or contact Transport Canada by mail at:

Transport Canada, ASFAD
Place de Ville Tower C
330 Sparks Street
Ottawa ON
K1A 0N5

For additional road safety information, please visit the Road Safety website at:

http://www.tc.gc.ca/roadsafety/menu.htm ◀

Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada

Government regulations in the Unites States and Canada require that automobiles meet specific emission regulations and safety standards. Therefore, vehicles built for the U.S.A. and Canada differ from vehicles sold in other countries.

If you plan to take your vehicle outside the continental limits of the United States or Canada, there is the possibility that:

- Unleaded fuels for vehicles with catalytic converter may not be available.
- Fuel may have a considerably lower octane rating. Improper fuel may cause engine damage.
- Service may be inadequate due to lack of proper service facilities, tools or testing equipment.
- Replacement parts may not be readily available.

Note

Volkswagen cannot be responsible for mechanical damage that could result from inadequate fuel, service or parts availability. ◀

Volkswagen Service Repair Manuals

Volkswagen Official Factory service and repair manuals are published as soon as possible after model introduction.

Service and Repair manuals are available from:

Robert Bentley, Inc.

Phone: 1-800-423-4595

From 8:30 AM to 5:00 PM EST, Monday through Thursday.

From 8:30 AM to 5:30 PM EST, Friday

www.bentleypublishers.com

To order service manuals and other Volkswagen Service literature contact:

Volkswagen Technical Literature Ordering Center

1-800-544-8021

From 8:00 AM to 8:00 PM EST, Monday through Friday.

www.vw.ddsltd.com ◀

Alphabetical index

A

ABS 4
Warning light 5
See Anti-lock brake system
Accessories
What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? 31
Address of NHTSA 106
Address of Transport Canada 107
After changing a wheel 87
Alloy wheels
Cleaning 26
Alternator
See Generator
Antifreeze 47
Anti-lock brake system 5
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 4
Anti-theft alarm system
Linking your trailer 18
Anti-theft wheel bolts 84
Auto Safety Hotline 106
Automatic car wash 22

B

BAS 3
Battery
Charging 56
How often should I replace my engine battery? 56
Important information to know before disconnect the battery 55
Replacing 56
What you must do after reconnect the battery 55
Winter conditions 55, 56
Brake assist system 3
Brake booster 2
Brake fluid
Changing 54
How often should the brake fluid be changed? 54
What is the correct brake fluid level? . 53
What kind of brake fluid should I use? 54
Brake pads 13
Brake pads worn
Warning light 2
Brake servo 13
Brake system 53
Warning light 2
Brakes 13
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 13
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 4
Braking distance 13
Break-in period
Engine 12
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? 12
Breaking in
Brake pads 12
Tires 12
Breaking in tires 12
Bulb change 93
Bulb failure 93
Warning light 93
Bumper
Cleaning 23

C

California Proposition 65 Warning 39, 55
Car wash 22
Catalytic converter 9
CB radio 33
Cell phone 33
Cellular phone 33
Changing a bulb 93
Changing a wheel 86
Changing brake pads 12
Changing windshield wiper blades 51
Chassis 27
Check fuel cap 36
Checking engine oil level 44
Checking tire pressure 68
Chrome
Cleaning 26

Cleaning
Alloy wheels 26
Automatic car wash 22
Bumper 23
Chassis 27
Cloth seat covers 29
Engine compartment 27
Exterior 22
Fabric trim 29
Instrument panel 28
Leather 29
Outside mirrors 25
Plastic parts 28
Safety belts 30
Washing the vehicle 22
Windows 25
Windshield 25
Windshield wiper blades 25
Wooden trim 28
Cleaning and protection 21
Cloth seat covers
Cleaning 29
Code number
For anti-theft wheel bolts 80
Cold tire inflation pressure 61
Coolant 47
Level 49
Loss 49
Coolant level
Warning light 48
Coolant temperature
Safety instructions 48
Trailer towing 48
Warning light 48
Crash recorders 34

D

Data Link Connector (DLC) for On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD) 11
Determining correct load limit 71
Differential lock 6
Drive economically 19
Drive economically and help protect the environment 19
Driving outside of the U.S.A. or Canada
Precautions 107

E

EDL 6
See also Electronic Differential Lock
EDS
Warning light 5
Electronic Differential Lock
Warning light 5
Electronic differential lock 6
Electronic Power Control 9
Electronic Stabilization Program (ESP)
How it works 6
Emergency
Locking driver's door 88
Opening lever for the rear lid 89
Unlocking driver's door 88
Emergency closing 88
Emergency locking all doors 88
Emergency opening 88
Emergency unlocking of rear lid 89
Engine
Break-in 12
Engine compartment
Cleaning 27
Precautions you should take when working inside the engine compartment 39
Working in the engine compartment 39
Engine coolant 47
Additives 47
Can I add plain water to the engine coolant? 50
Coolant losses 50
Engine hood 41
How do I unlock the engine hood? 41
Warning light 41
Engine management 9
Engine oil 42
Adding 45
Additives 46
Checking level 44
Consumption 43
Dipstick 44
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? 43
Oil change 46
Specifications 42
Specifications gasoline engine 42
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? 42

When should I check the engine oil level? 43
Where is the oil dipstick 44
Engine oil pressure
Warning light 45
Engine oil sensor
Warning light 44
Environment
Avoiding pollution 23, 36
Cleaning the engine compartment 28
Drive economically 19
Vehicle care products 21
EPC
Warning light 9
See also Electronic Power Control
ESP 6
Button 6, 7
Warning light 7
Event Data Recorder 34
Exhaust gas system
Warning light 11
Exhaust system 9
External aerial 33

F

Fabric trim
Cleaning 29
Fuel filler cap
Warning light 35
Fuse box
In the instrument panel, left 92
In the instrument panel, right 92
Fuse table 92
Fuses 90

G

Gaskets 26
Gasoline 37
Blends 37
Containing alcohol 37
Octane rating 37
Premium 37
Regular 37
Unleaded 37
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? 37
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? 37
Winter or summer tips 37
Gasoline additives 38
Generator
Warning light 56
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 58

H

How could I damage the catalytic converter? 9
How do I know how much oil my engine is consuming? 43
How do I unlock the engine hood? 41
How does moisture or road salt affect the brakes? 13
How often should I check my tire pressures? 69
How often should I replace my engine battery? 56
How often should I wax my car? 24
How often should the brake fluid be changed? 54
How to jump start 100
Hydroplaning 72

I

Important information to know before disconnect the battery 55
Indicator light
See Warning light
Instrument panel
Cleaning 28

J

Jack 85
Jump starting 99, 100
Access positive and negative terminals 100
Jumper cables 99

L

Leather
Cleaning 29
Lifting platform 105

Lifting the vehicle 105
Light change 93
Lock cylinders 26
Locking driver's door in an emergency 88
Locks 26

M

Malfunction Indicator Lamp 11
MIL
See Malfunction Indicator Lamp
Modifications 32

N

New tires and wheels 73
NHTSA 106
Notice about data recorded by vehicle control modules 34

O

OBD 11
Oil 42
Oil change 46
Oil dipstick 44
On-Board-Diagnostic System (OBD) 11
Operate your vehicle safely 14
Operating your vehicle outside the U.S.A. or Canada 107
Outside mirrors
Cleaning 25

P

Paint
Polishing 24
Waxing 24
Parking Assistance
Cleaning sensors 23
Parts 31
Plastic parts 24
Cleaning 28
Power steering 8
Warning light 8
Power washer 23
Premium Gasoline 37

R

Raising the vehicle with the jack 85
Rear lid
Emergency unlocking 89
Rear window heating
Heating element wires 25
Refueling 35
Regular care 21
Regular Gasoline 37
Removing caps to access positive and negative terminals 100
Repair Manuals 107
Repairs 32
Replacing
Wheel rims 75
Replacing tires and wheels 73
Reporting safety defects
Canada 107
United States 106
Rims
Replacing 75
With screw-on decorative covers 58
With threaded rim ring 57
Rubber gaskets 26

S

Safety belts
Cleaning 30
Safety instructions
Coolant temperature 48
Screw-on decorative covers 58
Snow chains 78
Spare wheel 81
Location 80
Spares 31
Speed rating letter code 74
Starting with jumper cables 99
Steps for determining correct load limit 71

T

Tank
Filling the tank 35
Opening the fuel filler flap 35
Technical modifications 32
Threaded rim ring 57

Tire pressure 68
Tire pressure monitoring display (Canada models) 65
Warning light 65
Tire pressure monitoring system
Sensors 75
Tires and wheels 75
Valves 75
Tire pressure monitoring system (US models) 62
Tire service life 72
Tires
Replacing 75
Service life 72
Speed rating letter code 74
Tire Identification Number 74
Tire manufacturing date 74
Tire specifications 74
Tread depth 72
Uniform tire quality grading 76
Winter tires 77
Tires and vehicle load limits 70
Tires and wheels 57
Checking tire pressure 68
Cold tire inflation pressure 61
Dimensions 73
General notes 57
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 58
New tires and wheels 73
Replacing 73
Snow chains 78
Tire pressure monitoring system 75
Tires and vehicle load limits 70
Wheel bolts 79
Winter tires 77
Tools 80
Tow starting 104
Towing 102
General notes 103
When can your vehicle not be towed? 105
Towing eye 102
front 102
rear 103
TPMS
See Tire pressure monitoring system
TPMS (US models)
Warning light 62
Trailer towing 15
Anti-theft alarm system 18
Brakes 15
Coolant temperature 48
Driving tips 17
Operating instructions 16
Safety chains 15, 17
Technical requirements 15
Tire pressure 16
Towing tips 18
Trailer lights 15
Trailer weight 16
Transport Canada 107
Tread Wear Indicator (TWI) 72
Trunk lid
See Rear lid

U

Underbody sealant 27
Unidirectional tires 57, 86
Uniform tire quality grading 76

V

Vehicle
Lifting 105
Vehicle battery 55
Vehicle care
Exterior 22
Vehicle care products 21
Vehicle control modules 34
Vehicle electric system 56
Vehicle phone 33
Vehicle tool kit 80
Location 80
Volkswagen Service Repair Manuals 107

W

Warning light
ABS 5
Brake pads worn 2
Brake system 2
Bulb failure 93
Checking engine oil level 44
Coolant level 48
Coolant temperature 48
EDS 5

Engine hood 41
Engine oil pressure 45
Engine oil sensor 44
EPC 9
ESP 7
Exhaust gas system 11
Fuel filler cap 35
Generator 56
MIL 11
Power steering 8
TPMS (US models) 62
Windshield washer fluid 50
Warning light (Canada models)
Tire pressure monitoring display 65
Washer fluid 50
Washing by hand 22
Washing the vehicle 22
Washing with power cleaners 23
Waxing
How often should I wax my car? 24
Wear indicator 72
What does it mean when I feel a slight vibration on the brake pedal? 4
What if I purchase poor quality fuel? 37
What is the correct brake fluid level? . 53
What is the right way to break-in my vehicle? 12
What kind of brake fluid should I use? 54
What kind of engine oil should I put in my vehicle? 42
What should I do after changing a wheel? 69, 87
What should I do after replacing wheels? 69
What should I do if I want to add an accessory to my vehicle? 31
What should I do if I want to modify my vehicle? 32
What should I do if I want to repair my vehicle? 32
What should I do if the brake warning light comes on? 2, 53
What would happen if I put leaded gasoline in my car? 37
What you must do after reconnect the battery 55
Wheel bolt caps 83
Wheel bolts 84
Torque 79
Wheel changing 82
Wheels 57
Checking tire pressure 68
Cold tire inflation pressure 61
General notes 57
Glossary of tire and loading terminology 58
New tires and wheels 73
Tires and vehicle load limits 70
When can your vehicle not be towed? 105
When should I adjust the tire pressures? 69
When should I check the engine oil level? 43
When should I check the tire pressures? 69
When should I refuel the tank of the vehicle? 37
Where can I find the tire pressures for my car? 68
Where is the oil dipstick 44
Windows
Cleaning 25
Windshield
Cleaning 25
Windshield washer fluid 50
Warning light 50
Windshield wiper blades
Cleaning 25
Windshield wipers
Changing blades 51
Changing the rear wiper blade 52
Winter tires 77
Wooden trim
Cleaning 28
Working in the engine compartment 39

Afterword

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany

© Volkswagen AG

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

3.2 Tips and Advice | Golf GTI
Print status: 11.2005
Art.-Nr.: 262.551.GGR.21 | englisch Nordamerika 12.2005

3.3 Technical Data

Golf GTI

Model year 2006

About this booklet

This booklet contains important information, tips, suggestions and WARNINGS on using your vehicle. The other booklets in the Owner's Literature contain further information that you should be aware of for your own safety and for the safety of your passengers.

Make sure that you always keep the complete Owner's Literature in the vehicle. This is especially important when you lend or sell the vehicle.

This manual describes the **vehicle equipment** at the time of publication. Some of the equipment described will not be available until a later date, or is only available for certain markets.

Some sections of this booklet do not apply to all vehicles. If this is the case, a text at the beginning of the section indicates which vehicles it applies to, for example "Applies to USA models only."

You will find any **Supplements** in the Owner's Literature immediately after the *Alphabetical Index* booklet.

Illustrations may slightly vary from your vehicle. For this reason you should regard illustrations as a general guide.

At the beginning of this booklet, you will find a **table of contents** showing all the items described in this manual in the order they appear.

Directions and positions (for example right, left, front, rear) are always relative to the direction of travel of the vehicle unless stated otherwise.

▶ The section is continued on the next page.

◀ Indicates the **end of a section.**

® Registered trademarks are marked ™ or ®. However, the absence of this symbol does not constitute a waiver of the rights concerning any term.

⇒ ⚠ Cross-reference to a "WARNING" within or outside of a section.

⇒ ⓘ Cross-reference to a "Note" within or outside of a section.

⚠ WARNING

Texts with this symbol contain important information on safety and how to reduce the risk of personal injury or death.

ⓘ Note

Texts with this symbol draw your attention to potential sources of damage to your vehicle.

For the sake of environment

Texts with this symbol contain information about the environment and how you can help protect it.

Tips

Texts with this symbol contain special tips and other information about getting the most out of your vehicle and its features.

Table of contents

General notes 2
What you need to know 2
How are the figures measured? 3

Technical data 5
200 hp gasoline engine 5

General notes

What you need to know

Abbreviations used in this booklet

Abbreviation	Meaning
kW	Kilowatt (engine power)
hp	Horse power (engine power)
rpm	Revolutions per minute (engine speed)
Nm	Newton meters (unit of engine torque)
lb-ft	Foot pounds (unit of engine torque)
in	Inch
qts.	Quarts
CID	Cubic inch displacement
lbs.	Pounds
kg	Kilogram

Vehicle Identification

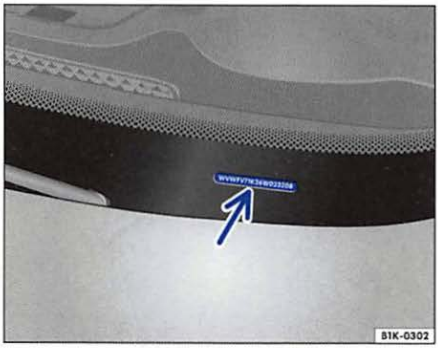


Fig. 1 View from the outside through the windshield on the driver's side: Vehicle identification number (VIN)

Vehicle identification number (VIN)

The vehicle identification number is located on the instrument panel on the driver's side so that it is visible from the outside through the windshield ⇒ fig. 1.

The safety compliance sticker

The safety compliance sticker is your assurance that your new vehicle complies with all applicable Federal Motor Vehicle Safety Standards, which were in effect at the time the vehicle was manufactured. You can find this sticker on the left front door jamb.

It shows the month and the year of production and the vehicle identification number.

The high voltage warning label

The high voltage warning label is located on the lock carrier ⇒ ⚠.

The spark ignition system meets all requirements of the Canadian Interference-Causing Equipment Regulations.

The vehicle identification label

The vehicle identification label is located on the left side of the rear panel in the luggage compartment under a styrofoam molded part.. The label contains the following information:

- Vehicle Identification No.
- Type code number / designation Engine output in kilowatts
- Engine and transmission code letter / Paint no. / Interior
- Optional equipment numbers

You can also find vehicle data in your Maintenance booklet.

⚠ WARNING

Stop! Before working in the engine compartment, always read and heed all warnings ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Working in the engine compartment." The engine compartment of any motor vehicle is a potentially dangerous area and can cause serious personal injury. ◀

How are the figures measured?

Weights

The Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR) and the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for front and rear are listed on a sticker on the left front door jamb.

The **Gross Vehicle Weight Rating** includes the weight of the basic vehicle plus full fuel tank, oil and coolant, plus maximum load, which combines passenger (150 lbs / 68 kg per designated seating position) and luggage weight.

Luggage carrying capacity is not increased by the use of a roof rack, unless the passenger capacity is reduced accordingly.

The **Gross Axle Weight Rating** is the maximum load that can be applied at each axle of the vehicle.

⚠ WARNING

Exceeding the maximum permissible weight ratings can result in accidents leading to serious personal injury.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Never let the actual Gross Axle Weight Rating at the front and rear axles exceed the permissible weights. Also never let their combination exceed the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating.**
- **Always remember that the vehicle's handling will be affected by the extra load. Therefore, adjust your speed accordingly.**
- **Exceeding permissible weight ratings can result in vehicle damage, accidents and personal injury.**

(!) Note

- The vehicle capacity weight figures apply when the load is distributed evenly in the vehicle (passengers and luggage). When transporting a heavy load in the luggage compartment, carry the load as near to the rear axle as possible so that the vehicle's handling is not impaired.
- Always observe local regulations. ◀

Roof weight

The maximum permissible roof weight is 165 lbs (75 kg).

Only use the roof rack system specifically designed, tested and approved by Volkswagen.

The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry.

Distribute the load evenly and do not exceed the Permissible Roof Weight (including the weight of the roof rack system) or the Gross Vehicle weight.

For more details see ⇒ booklet 2.1 "Safety first", chapter "Safe driving" and ⇒ booklet 3.1 "Controls and Equipment", chapter "Seats and storage."

⚠ WARNING

Transporting heavy bulky loads on the roof will change the way the vehicle handles by shifting the vehicle's center of gravity, changing its aerodynamics and the way it reacts to side winds.

⚠ WARNING (continued)

- **Cargo that is large, heavy, bulky, long or flat will have a more negative influence on the vehicle's aerodynamics, center of gravity and overall handling.**
- **Always adapt your driving and speed to what you are carrying on the roof as well as to road, traffic, weather and wind conditions.**
- **Always avoid sudden braking or driving maneuvers.**
- **Always make sure that loads are properly distributed and that heavier items are in the front.**
- **Never exceed the maximum roof load for the vehicle, maximum axle loads or the maximum gross vehicle weight.**

Note

The height of your vehicle is changed by the installation of the roof carrier and the load secured on it. Bear this in mind when driving through garage doors or low underpasses – there is danger of damage to the vehicle. ◀

Dimensions

The specifications refer to the basic model. Differences may occur depending on the model type and options ordered, for example, tire sizes.

Note

- Please be careful when parking your vehicle in areas with parking barriers or curbs. Parking barriers and curbs vary in height. They could damage your bumper and related components when the front of your vehicle moves over a barrier or a curb that is too high. To avoid damage to your car you should stop and park the car without touching the parking barrier or curb.
- When driving up steep ramps, on rough roads, over curbs, etc. it is important to remember that some parts of your vehicle, such as spoilers or exhaust system components, may be close to the ground. Be careful not to damage them.

Tips

The figures may be different if additional equipment is fitted, for different models, for special vehicles and for other countries. ◀

Technical data

200 hp gasoline engine

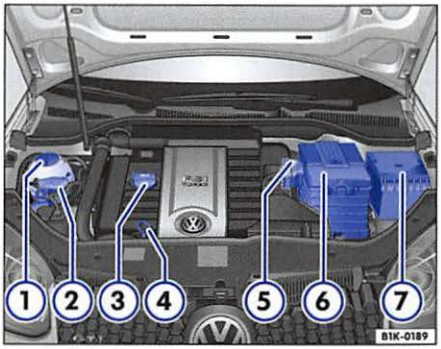


Fig. 2 Engine compartment overview

1. Engine coolant expansion tank
2. Windshield washer fluid container
3. Engine oil filler cap
4. Engine oil dipstick
5. Brake fluid reservoir
6. Vehicle battery (protected by a cover)
7. Fuse box

Details on how to connect jumper cables to the positive (+) and negative (–) terminal or on how to check and top up service fluids for the components listed above are provided in ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice."

Further explanations, tips and restrictions on the technical data ⇒ page 2, "What you need to know".

Engine data	
Maximum output SAE net	200 hp at 5100 - 6000 rpm
Maximum torque SAE net	207 lb-ft. @ 1800 - 5000 rpm 280 Nm at 1800 - 5000 rpm
No. of cylinders	4
Displacement	121 CID / 1.984 cm^3
Stroke	3.7 in / 92.8 mm
Bore	3.2 in / 82.5 mm
Compression ratio	10.3 : 1
Fuel	Premium or Regular unleaded
The correct grade of fuel for your vehicle is shown on a sticker on the inside of the fuel filler flap. For maximum engine performance, unleaded Premium is recommended ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Capacities	
Fuel tank (Reserve, included in fuel tank capacity)	14.5 gal. / 55 liters (1.9 gal. / 7 liters)
Windshield washer fluid container	approx. 3.2 qts. / 3.0 liters
Engine oil (with oil filter)	approx. 4.4 qts. / 4.6 liters
The engine oil level should be checked while topping up. **Do not overfill** ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Checking and Filling."	

Curb Weight	2 door models			
	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Auto-matic	Manu al	Auto-matic	Manu al
Curb weight	3183	3133	1444	1421
Front axle load	1987	1932	901	876
Rear axle load	1196	1201	543	545

Curb Weight	4 door models			
	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Auto-matic	Manu al	Auto-matic	Manu al
Curb weight	3246	3195	1472	1449
Front axle load	2000	1945	907	882
Rear axle load	1246	1250	565	567

Maximum Vehicle Weights	2 door models			
	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Auto-matic	Manu al	Auto-matic	Manu al
Total permis-sible weight	4167	4123	1890	1870
Maximum payload	961	968	436	439
Maximum front axle load	2315	2271	1050	1030
Maximum rear axle load	1962	1962	890	890
Maximum roof weight	165	165	75	75
The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly re-duces the other load that your vehicle can carry.				

Maximum Vehicle Weights	4 door models			
	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Auto-matic	Manu al	Auto-matic	Manu al
Total permis-sible weight	4256	4212	1930	1910
Maximum payload	1043	1050	473	476
Maximum front axle load	2337	2293	1060	1040
Maximum rear axle load	2029	2029	920	920
Maximum roof weight	165	165	75	75
The roof weight increases the weight of the front and rear axle and correspondingly re-duces the other load that your vehicle can carry.				

Maximum Permissible Trailer Weights	lbs.		kg.	
Transmission	Auto-matic	Manu al	Auto-matic	Manu al
Trailer with brakes	1000	2000	454	907
Trailer without brakes	1000	1650	454	748
Tongue load	200	200	91	91
The tongue load increases the weight of the rear axle and correspondingly reduces the other load that your vehicle can carry. Always read and heed further information about trailer towing ⇒ booklet 3.2 "Tips and Advice", chapter "Trailer towing."				

Dimensions[a)]	
Wheelbase	101,5 in / 2578 mm
Length	165,8 in / 4210 mm
Width	69,3 in / 1759 mm
Height (unloaded)	58,4 in / 1484 mm
Turning circle diameter (wall to wall)	35,7 ft. / 10,9 meters
Track front Track rear	60,6 in /1540 mm 59,8 in / 1518 mm
Ground clearance (loaded, *steel spring suspension*)	5,4 in / 137 mm

a) Slight differences to these figures are possible, depending on wheel and tire size fitted and the level selected

Afterword

Volkswagen AG works continuously to develop and improve its products. We must therefore reserve the right to change any part of the vehicle, its equipment or technical specifications at any time. No legal commitment can therefore be derived from the information, illustrations or descriptions in this manual.

The texts, illustrations and standards in this manual are based on the information available at the time of publication.

No part of this manual may be reprinted, reproduced or translated without the written permission of Volkswagen AG.

All rights under the copyright laws are expressly reserved by Volkswagen AG. Subject to alteration and amendment.

Printed in Germany

© Volkswagen AG

For the sake of environment

This paper was bleached without the use of chlorine.

3.3 Technical Data | Golf GTI
Print status: 11.2005
Art.-Nr.: 262.551.GGT.21 | englisch Nordamerika 12.2005

(D) **Volkswagen Original Zubehör - Adapter für iPod®**
Bedienungsanleitung, Seite 2

(GB) **Original Volkswagen accessory - iPod® adapter**
Operating Instructions, Page 7

(F) **Volkswagen d'origine accessoire - Adaptateur pour iPod®**
Mode d'emploi, Page 12

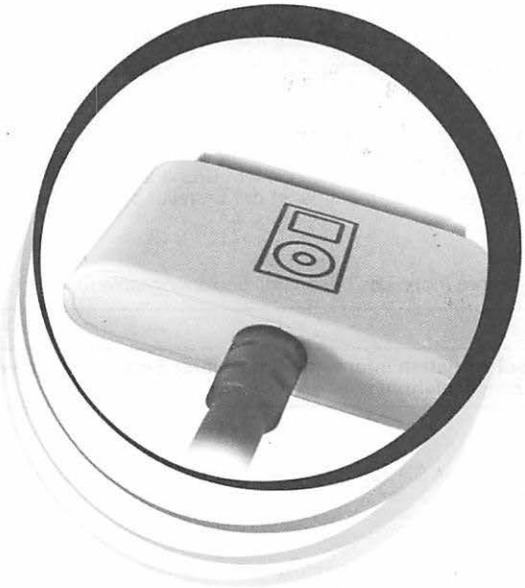
(E) **Accesorios originales Volkswagen - Adaptador para iPod®**
Manual de instrucciones, Página 17

(I) **Adattatore originale Volkswagen per iPod®**
Istruzioni per l'uso, Pagina 22

(NL) **Volkswagen origineel toebehoren adapter voor iPod®**
Gebruiksaanwijzing, Pagina 27

(S) **Volkswagen originaltillbehör adapter för iPod®**
Bruksanvisning, Sida 32

(CZ) **Originální příslušenství Volkswagen adaptér k iPod®**
Návod k použití, Strana 37



(D) Bedienungsanleitung

Inhalt

1 Einleitung ---- 2
1.1 Stand der Technik ---- 2
1.2 Verwendete Symbolik ---- 2
2 Informationen zum Adapter für iPod® ---- 3
2.1 Eigenschaften und Funktionen ---- 3
2.2 Kompatiblität ---- 3
2.3 Akkuladung ---- 3
2.4 Wartung und Service des Adapters für iPod® ---- 3
3 Nutzung des iPod® im Fahrzeug ---- 3
4 Anschluss des Adapters für iPod® ---- 4
5 Verwendung von Wiedergabelisten ---- 4
6 Bedienung mit dem Radio-/ Radio-Navigationssystem ---- 5
6.1 Ein- und Ausschalten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems ---- 5
6.2 Anwahl des iPod® ---- 5
6.3 Abspielen von iPod® Titeln ---- 5
6.4 Auswählen von iPod® Wiedergabelisten ---- 6
6.5 Titelsprung Vor- und Rückwärts ---- 6
6.6 Schneller Vor- und Rücklauf ---- 6
6.7 Titel-Anspielautomatik (SCAN) ---- 6
6.8 Zufallswiedergabe (MIX) ---- 6

1 Einleitung

Der Adapter für iPod® ist ein elektronisches Modul das die Verbindung zwischen dem iPod® und Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem herstellt. Es ermöglicht die Bedienung des iPod® über die Tastatur des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems und die Wiedergabe der auf dem iPod® gespeicherten Titel über das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem des Fahrzeuges.

Diese Bedienungsanleitung soll Ihnen die Handhabung des Adapters für iPod® mit dem iPod® erleichtern und erklären. Nehmen Sie sich bitte Zeit zum sorgfältigen Durchlesen und bewahren Sie die Bedienungsanleitung für spätere Fragen auf. Bitte geben Sie diese Bedienungsanleitung beim Verkauf des Fahrzeugs an den neuen Fahrzeugeigentümer weiter.

Wird im folgenden in der Bedienungsanleitung vom iPod® gesprochen, gilt dies für die folgenden Geräte iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano und iPod® Photo.

Ergänzende Erläuterungen zum iPod® entnehmen Sie bitte dem zugehörigen Handbuch.

1.1 Stand der Technik

Dieser Bedienungsanleitung liegt der aktuellste Stand der Technik zugrunde. Durch Weiterentwicklung der Infotainmentsysteme, kann es in Zukunft zu Unterschieden zwischen dieser Bedienungsanleitung und dem aktuell installierten Produkt kommen. Aus diesem Grund sind jeweilige Rechtsansprüche ausgeschlossen, da alle Informationen, die zum Zeitpunkt der Erstellung der Bedienungsanleitung genutzt wurden, zu Grunde liegen.

1.2 Verwendete Symbolik

Die folgenden Symbole erleichtern Ihnen das Lesen der Bedienungsanleitung:

⚠ ACHTUNG!

- **Texte mit diesem Symbol enthalten Informationen zu Ihrer Sicherheit und weisen Sie auf mögliche Unfall- und Verletzungsgefahren hin.**

Vorsicht!

- Texte mit diesem Symbol machen Sie auf mögliche Schäden am Fahrzeug, dem iPod® bzw. dem Adapter für iPod® aufmerksam.

Hinweis

- Texte mit diesem Symbol enthalten weitere Hinweise und Informationen.

Kursiv gedruckte Texte weisen auf Themen hin, die im iPod® Handbuch näher behandelt werden.

2 Informationen zum Adapter für iPod®

Der Adapter für iPod® verbindet den iPod® mit dem Radio bzw. dem Radio-Navigationssystem des Fahrzeugs, so wird der Austausch von Informationen und Steuerungsbefehlen zwischen den Geräten ermöglicht.

Hinweis

- Der Parallelbetrieb des Adapters für iPod® mit einem CD-Wechsler ist nicht möglich.

2.1 Eigenschaften und Funktionen

Durch die direkte Verbindung von iPod® und Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem können die auf dem iPod® gespeicherten Titel über die Fahrzeuglautsprecher wiedergegeben werden.

Dabei erfolgt die Steuerung über die Bedienelemente des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems und ermöglicht die Nutzung der folgenden Funktionen:

- Direktes anwählen und abspielen von bis zu 5 Wiedergabelisten
- Abspielen aller auf dem iPod® gespeicherten Titel
- SCAN-Funktion
- Wechsel zwischen Wiedergabelisten
- Wechsel des Titels (Tracks) innerhalb einer Wiedergabelisten
- Schneller Vor- und Rücklauf innerhalb eines Titels
- Zufallswiedergabe (MIX-Play)

Hinweis

- Auf dem iPod® gespeicherte Informationen über Künstler, Titel, Album und Genre werden vom Adapter für iPod® nicht verarbeitet - die Auswahl von Titeln nach diesen Sortier- und Suchkritierien ist nicht möglich und es erfolgt keine Displayanzeige im Radio- bzw. Radio-Navigationssystem.

2.2 Kompatiblität

Der Adapter für iPod® ist kompatibel zu den folgenden Geräten iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano und iPod® Photo. Die Eigenschaften und Funktionen des Adapters beziehen sich auf den aktuellen Softwarestand des Adapters.

Hinweis

- Zukünftige Änderungen des Softwarestandes bzw. der iPod® Firmware können zu abweichenden Eigenschaften und Funktionen führen, die in dieser Bedienungsanleitung nicht berücksichtigt sind.

2.3 Akkuladung

Ist der iPod® mit dem Adapter für iPod® verbunden und das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem eingeschaltet, wird der Akku des iPod® geladen. Sobald der Akku seine vollständige Kapazität erreicht hat, schaltet das System auf Ladeerhaltung um. Die Ladung des Akkus des iPod® wird beendet sobald das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem ausgeschaltet wird.

2.4 Wartung und Service des Adapters für iPod®

Der Adapter für iPod® unterliegt keinem Verschleiß und benötigt im normalen Betrieb keine Wartung. Im Falle eines Defektes ist der Adapter für iPod® durch den Volkswagen Partner auszutauschen. Durch das Öffnen der Adapterbox erlischt der Garantieanspruch.

3 Nutzung des iPod® im Fahrzeug

Alle Varianten des iPod® wurden nicht für die Nutzung im Fahrzeug entwickelt, dies gilt insbesondere für große Temperaturschwankungen, wie sie im Fahrzeug vorkommen können. Aus diesem Grund lassen Sie Ihren iPod® bitte nicht im Fahrzeug, wenn Sie dieses für längere Zeit verlassen.

Hinweis

- Sehr hohe bzw. sehr niedrige Temperaturen, wie sie im Inneren des Fahrzeugs vorkommen, können Ihren iPod® beschädigen und/ oder die Leistungsfähigkeit des Geräts beeinflussen.
- Weitere Hinweise zum Thema *Betriebs- und Lagertemperaturen* erhalten Sie im Benutzerhandbuch des iPod®.

⚠ ACHTUNG!

- **Widmen Sie Ihre Aufmerksamkeit in erster Linie dem Autofahren. Wenn der Fahrer abgelenkt wird, kann das Unfälle und Verletzungen verursachen.**
- **Lassen Sie sich nicht durch Einstellungen oder durch das Benutzen des iPod® vom Verkehrsgeschehen ablenken.**
- **Benutzen Sie den iPod® nur, wenn es die Straßen-, Wetter- und Verkehrsverhältnisse zulassen und Sie nicht abgelenkt werden.**
- **Wählen Sie die Lautstärke so, dass akustische Signale von außen, z.B. das Martinshorn von Polizei und Feuerwehr, jederzeit gut hörbar sind - Unfallgefahr!**

4 Anschluss des Adapters für iPod®

Anschluss:

Hinweis

- Bei neuen oder länger nicht benutzten iPod® sollte dieser, vor der Nutzung mit dem Adapter für iPod®, gemäß iPod® Handbuch geladen werden.
- Um eine optimale Wiedergabe zu erzielen, sollten Sie am iPod® vor dem Anschließen am Adapter für iPod® gemäß iPod® Handbuch die Einstellung *Lautstärke anpassen* aktivieren und den *EQ* (Equalizer) deaktivieren.
- Ist der iPod® mit dem Adapter für iPod® verbunden, haben die Tasten am iPod® keine Funktion.
- Die *wiederholte Wiedergabe* wird beim Einschalten des iPod® automatisch aktiviert - sobald das Ende einer Wiedergabeliste erreicht ist, wird diese wieder von vorne abgespielt.

– Schalten Sie die Zündung des Fahrzeuges aus und stecken Sie den Anschlussstecker des Adapters für iPod®, mit dem Logo nach oben zeigend, an der Unterseite des iPod® ein bis er fühlbar verrastet.

Nach dem Anschließen des iPod® wird kurzzeitig das Volkswagen Logo auf dem Display des iPod® angezeigt. Anschließend erscheint die Softwareversion des Adapters für iPod® und das Laden des Akkus wird angezeigt.

Sollte der iPod® nach dem Anschluss am Adapter für iPod® nicht erkannt werden, führen Sie ein *Zurücksetzen des iPod®* gemäß iPod® Handbuch durch.

Trennen:

– Schalten Sie die Zündung des Fahrzeuges aus, drücken Sie den Entriegelungstaster links und rechts am Anschlussstecker und ziehen Sie ihn aus der Anschlussbuchse des iPod® heraus.

5 Verwendung von Wiedergabelisten

Nach dem Anschluss des iPod® am Adapter für iPod® erfolgt automatisch die Abfrage auf gespeicherte Titel und vorhandene Wiedergabelisten. Dabei werden vorhandene Wiedergabelisten zuerst in nummerischer anschließend in alphabetischer Reihenfolge als Taste CD 1-5 zugeordnet.

Aus diesem Grund und um die Verwendung der Wiedergabelisten im Fahrzeugbetrieb zu erleichtern, empfiehlt sich das Anlegen von bis zu fünf Wiedergabelisten (z.B. 1 .... bis 5 ....) auf dem iPod®. Diese Wiedergabelisten können über das Radio bzw. Radio-Navigationssystem direkt abgerufen werden.

Der Taste CD 6 sind alle auf dem iPod® gespeicherten Titel zugeordnet.

Hinweis

- Weiterreichende Informationen zur Erstellung und Verwaltung von Wiedergabelisten finden Sie im iPod® Handbuch.

6 Bedienung mit dem Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem

Die Bedienung des iPod® erfolgt über die Tasten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems bzw. die Tasten des Multifunktionslenkrades wie bei der Bedienung eines CD-Wechslers.

Die im folgenden beschriebene Bedienung kann, abhängig vom Typ des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems, entweder direkt über die Tasten des Gerätes oder über die Menüsteuerung für den CD-Wechsler erfolgen. Detaillierte Informationen zu den Funktionen der Bedienelemente am Radio/ Radionavigationssystem entnehmen Sie bitte der Bedienungsanleitung des Radio/ Radionavigationssystem im Kapitel „CD-Wechsler".

Hinweis

- Die Tastaturbezeichnungen im Bordbuch Ihres Fahrzeuges zum Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem oder Multifunktionslenkrad können unter Umständen von den in dieser Anleitung verwendeten Bezeichnungen abweichen.

6.1 Ein- und Ausschalten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems:

Das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem wird beim Einschalten der Zündung automatisch eingeschaltet. Beim Abziehen des Zündschlüssels wird das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem automatisch ausgeschaltet.
Bei eingeschalteter Zündung kann das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem bei Bedarf manuell ausgeschaltet werden. Wurde das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem manuell ausgeschaltet, wird sie beim nächsten Einschalten der Zündung nicht automatisch eingeschaltet.
Bei Bedarf kann das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem auch manuell, ohne eingesteckten Zündschlüssel, eingeschaltet werden. In diesem Fall schaltet sich das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem, um die Fahrzeugbatterie zu schonen, automatisch nach 1 Stunde aus.

Hinweis

- Mit dem Einschalten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems wird automatisch auch der verbundene iPod® eingeschaltet. Der Akku des iPod® wird geladen.
- Nach dem Aus- und wieder Einschalten der Zündung oder des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems, setzt der iPod® die Wiedergabe an der zuletzt gespielten Stelle fort. Im Display des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems wird dann unabhängig von der tatsächlichen Wiedergabeliste immer CD6 angezeigt. Diese Anzeige bleibt bis zum Wechsel der Wiedergabeliste bestehen.
- Abhängig vom Typ des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems wird der iPod® circa 2-10 Minuten nach dem Ausschalten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems automatisch ausgeschaltet.

6.2 Anwahl des iPod®:

- Sollte sich keine CD im Laufwerksschacht des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems befinden, drücken Sie zur Anwahl des iPod® einmal auf die CD-Taste.
- Befindet sich im Laufwerksschacht des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems eine CD, drücken Sie zur Anwahl des iPod® zweimal auf die CD-Taste.

Im Display erscheint CD6, Nummer und Wiedergabedauer des aktuellen Titels (TRACK) werden angezeigt.

Hinweis

- Das Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem zeigt nur maximal zweistellige Titelnummern im Display an. Beim Anwählen eines Titels mit einer dreistelligen Nummer, wird die erste Stelle im Display des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems unterdrückt. Die Anzeige „125" im Display des iPod®, wird im Display des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems und ggf. im Kombiinstrument nur als „25" dargestellt. Aus diesem Grund wird empfohlen den Wiedergabelisten maximal 99 Titel zuzuordnen.

6.3 Abspielen von iPod® Titeln:

Das Abspielen von iPod® Titeln erfolgt wie bei der Bedienung eines CD-Wechslers über die Tasten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems. Nach der Anwahl des iPod® (s.o.) setzt der iPod® die Wiedergabe an der zuletzt gespielten Stelle fort. Im Display des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems wird dann unabhängig von der tatsächlichen Wiedergabeliste immer CD6 angezeigt. Diese Anzeige bleibt bis zum Wechsel der Wiedergabeliste bestehen.

6.4 Auswählen von iPod® Wiedergabelisten:

Das Auswählen von iPod® Wiedergabelisten erfolgt wie bei der Bedienung eines CD-Wechslers über die Tasten des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems.

Die Taste bzw. Menüfunktion CD (1)...(5) des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems sind automatisch mit den ersten fünf Playlisten des iPod® belegt.

Die Taste bzw. Menüfunktion CD (6) des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems wählt alle gespeicherten Titel des iPod® aus und spielt diese als eine Playliste ab.

Detaillierte Informationen zu den Funktionen der Bedienelemente am Radio/ Radionavigationssystem entnehmen Sie bitte der Bedienungsanleitung des Radio/ Radionavigationssystem im Kapitel „CD-Wechsler".

Hinweis

- Wird eine leere oder eine nicht vorhandene Wiedergabeliste des iPod® ausgewählt, wird die Wiedergabe automatisch mit der nächsten verfügbaren Wiedergabeliste fortgesetzt.
- Beim Wechsel der Wiedergabeliste kann, abhängig vom Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem, kurzzeitig noch ein Titel der vorhergehenden Wiedergabeliste zu hören sein. Diese Funktion ist systembedingt und kein Anzeichen für einen Defekt.

6.5 Titelsprung Vor- und Rückwärts:

Titelsprung Vor- und Rückwärts erfolgt wie bei der Bedienung eines CD-Wechslers über den Dreh-/ Druckknopf oder die Tasten bzw. Menüfunktionen (◀) (▶) des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems. Detaillierte Informationen zu den Funktionen der Bedienelemente am Radio/ Radionavigationssystem entnehmen Sie bitte der Bedienungsanleitung des Radios/ Radionavigationssystems im Kapitel „CD-Wechsler".

Hinweis

- Titelsprung Vorwärts bzw. Rückwärts kann bei einigen Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystemen nur bis zur Titelnummer 99 mit dem Dreh-/Druckknopf durchgeführt werden. Titel mit höheren Titelnummern müssen mit den Tasten durchgeführt werden. Beim Anwählen eines Titels mit einer dreistelligen Nummer, wird die erste Stelle im Display des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems unterdrückt.
- Bei sehr schneller wiederholter Betätigung von Titelsprung Vorwärts bzw. Rückwärts kann es zu Verzögerungen kommen und die Audioausgabe wird für längere Zeit stumm geschaltet. Unter Umständen werden übersprungene Titel kurz angespielt.

6.6 Schneller Vor- und Rücklauf:

Schneller Vor- und Rücklauf erfolgt wie bei der Bedienung eines CD-Wechslers über die Tasten bzw. Menüfunktionen (◀◀) (▶▶) des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems. Sollten diese Tasten am Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem nicht vorhanden sein, kann die Funktion durch langes Betätigen der Taste (◀) bzw. (▶) angewählt werden. Detaillierte Informationen zu den Funktionen der Bedienelemente am Radio/ Radionavigationssystem entnehmen Sie bitte der Bedienungsanleitung des Radios/ Radionavigationssystems im Kapitel „CD-Wechsler".

6.7 Titel-Anspielautomatik (SCAN):

Mit der SCAN-Funktion kann ein Suchlauf gestartet werden, bei dem jeder Titel der aktuellen Wiedergabeliste einige Sekunden lang angespielt wird.

- Aktivieren Sie SCAN zum Start der Titel-Anspielautomatik.
- Wählen Sie SCAN erneut um den aktuell angespielten Titel auszuwählen und die Titel-Anspielautomatik zu beenden.

6.8 Zufallswiedergabe (MIX):

Die Zufallswiedergabe kann mit einer Taste (MIX) oder im Menü des Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystems aktiviert werden und ermöglicht die Wiedergabe der Titel einer Wiedergabeliste in zufälliger Reihenfolge.

Hinweis

- Ist am iPod® bereits beim Anschluss die Funktion *Zufällige Titel* aktiviert, wird diese direkt auch für den Betrieb mit dem Radio/ Radio-Navigationssystem übernommen und kann dann durch zweimaliges Betätigen der Taste MIX deaktiviert werden.
- Die Titelnummern im Display des Radios/ Radio-Navigationssystems werden dabei fortlaufend mitgezählt. Im Display des iPod® wird die Nummer des Titels innerhalb der Wiedergabeliste angezeigt. Dadurch kommt es zu abweichenden Anzeigen auf den Displays der beiden Geräte.

(GB) Operating Instructions

Contents

1 Introduction ---- 7
1.1 Technology version ---- 7
1.2 Symbols used here ---- 7
2 iPod® adapter information ---- 8
2.1 Features and functions ---- 8
2.2 Compatibility ---- 8
2.3 Recharging the battery ---- 8
2.4 iPod® adapter maintenance and service ---- 8
3 Using the iPod® inside a vehicle ---- 8
4 Connecting the iPod® adapter ---- 9
5 Using the play lists ---- 9
6 Operating via the radio, navigation system/radio ---- 10
6.1 Switching the radio or navigation system/radio on and off ---- 10
6.2 Selecting the iPod® ---- 10
6.3 Playing iPod® tracks ---- 10
6.4 Choosing from the iPod's play lists ---- 11
6.5 Skipping forwards or backwards from a track ---- 11
6.6 Fast forwards and backwards skipping ---- 11
6.7 Automatic track playing (SCAN) ---- 11
6.8 Random play (MIX) ---- 11

1 Introduction

The adapter for the iPod® is an electronic module that makes a connection between the iPod® and the radio / radio-navigation system. It permits control of the iPod® using the keyboard of the radio / radio-navigation system and playback of the tracks stored on the iPod® over the car radio / radio-navigation system.

This handbook will explain how easy it is to use the special iPod® adapter with the iPod® . Please take the time to read this handbook through carefully and keep it handy in case any questions arise later on. Please ensure that this handbook is left in your car for the next owner if you sell your car.

Whenever iPod® is mentioned in this handbook it also applies to the following units: iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano and iPod® Photo.

You will find a more detailed iPod® explanation in the associated handbook.

1.1 Technology version

This handbook is based on the most up-to-date technology available. This handbook and the actual installed product might well differ in the future as a result of further infotainment system developments. Therefore we have not included the respective legal entitlements for this reason, as all of the information used at the time that this handbook was prepared is fundamental information.

1.2 Symbols used here

The following symbols will make it easier for you to read the handbook.

⚠ ATTENTION!

- **Text that accompanies this symbol contains safety information that tells you about potential accident and injury hazards.**

Beware!

- Text that accompanies this symbol warns you about the possibility of damaging your car, the iPod® or the iPod® adapter.

Note

- Text accompanying this symbol contains additional information.

Text printed in italics tells you about a topic that is covered in depth in the iPod® handbook.

2 iPod® adapter information

The iPod® adapter connects your iPod® to your radio or your car's navigation system/radio and this enables information and control commands to be exchanged between the units.

Note

- It is not possible to run the iPod® adapter in parallel with a CD-changer.

2.1 Features and functions

The tracks stored in the iPod® can be played over the car's loudspeakers thanks to the direct connection between the iPod® and the radio or navigation system/radio.

This means that the iPod® is controlled using the radio or navigation system/radio's controls and this enables the following functions to be used:

- Direct selection and playing from up to 5 play lists
- Playing of all tracks stored in the iPod®
- SCAN function
- Swapping between the play lists
- Changing the track order within a play list
- Fast forwarding and reversing within a track
- Random play (MIXED play)

Note

- The artist, track, album and genre information stored in the iPod® is not processed by the iPod® adapter – therefore track selection using this sorting and search criteria is not possible and it is not displayed on the radio or navigation system/radio.

2.2 Compatibility

The iPod® adapter is compatible with the following units: iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano and iPod® Photo. The adapter's features and functions refer to the latest adapter's software version.

Note

- Future modifications to the software version or the iPod® firmware might well result in different features and functions being used, which cannot be taken into consideration in this handbook.

2.3 Recharging the battery

The iPod® battery will be recharged when the iPod® is connected to the iPod® adapter and the radio or navigation system/radio is switched on . As soon as the power pack has reached full capacity, the system switches over to charge retention. Charging of the iPod® battery ends as soon as the radio / radio-navigation system is switched off.

2.4 iPod® adapter maintenance and service

The iPod® adapter is not subject to wear and, under normal circumstances, does not require any maintenance. The iPod® adapter will be exchanged by your Volkswagen partner if a fault occurs. Opening of the adapter box invalidates the warranty.

3 Using the iPod® inside a vehicle

Not all of the different iPod® versions have been developed for use inside a vehicle and this applies in particular to major temperature fluctuations that can occur inside a vehicle. This is why we ask you not to leave your iPod® in your car if you be away from it for a long time.

Note

- Very high or very low temperatures, which always occur inside a vehicle, might damage your iPod® and/or affect the unit's working capability.
- Further information regarding *working and storage temperatures* can be found in the iPod® handbook.

⚠ ATTENTION!

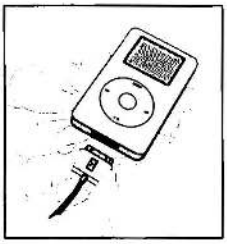
- **Ensure your attention is primarily focussed on driving. Distraction of the driver can result in accident and injuries.**
- **Do not let adjusting or use of the iPod® distract you from the traffic situation.**
- **Only use the iPod® if road, weather and traffic conditions allow and you will not be distracted from driving.**
- **Set the volume such that signals outside the car, e.g. police and fire service klaxons, are clearly audible at all times - there is a very real danger of an accident!**

4 Connecting the iPod® adapter

Connection:

Note

- An new iPod® or one that has not been used for a long time must be charged in accordance with the details given in the handbook before being used with the iPod® adapter.
- Before connecting the iPod® adapter to your iPod® you should activate the *volume* settings and de-activate the *EQ* (equaliser) as listed in the handbook in order to realise optimum playing.
- The buttons on the iPod® are de-activated when it is connected to the iPod® adapter.
- *Repeat play* ⟲ is activated automatically when the iPod® is switched on – i.e. it will start from the beginning once again after reaching the end of the play list.



– Switch the vehicle ignition off and then plug the iPod® adapter's connecting plug, with the logo pointing upwards, into the bottom of the iPod® until you feel it latch into place.

The Volkswagen logo will be briefly displayed on the iPod's screen after the iPod® has been connected to the adapter. The iPod® adapter software version will be displayed afterwards as well as the battery charge level.

Reset the iPod® as shown in the iPod® handbook if the iPod® is not recognised after being connected up to the iPod® adapter.

Disconnecting:

– Switch the vehicle ignition off and then press the unlocking buttons on the left and right of the connection plug inwards and pull the plug out of the iPod's socket.

5 Using the play lists

The saved tracks and the existing play lists will be polled automatically after the iPod® has been connected up to the iPod® adapter. The available play lists will first be listed in numerical order, assigned to the buttons CD 1-5, and then in alphabetical order when a button is selected.

This is why we recommend that you first set up five play lists (e.g. 1 .... to 5 ....) on the iPod® in order to make using the play lists easier whilst driving. These play lists can be called up straight from the radio or navigation system/radio.

Button CD 6 is assigned to display a list of all the tracks stored in the iPod®.

Note

- You will find more detailed information regarding the setting up and administering the play lists in the iPod® handbook.

6 Operating via the radio, navigation system/radio

The iPod® is operated via the radio's or navigation system/radio's buttons or via the buttons on the multi-function steering wheel in the same way as you would operate a CD-changer.

It can be operated as described in the following, depending on the type of radio or navigation system/radio, either directly via the unit's buttons or via the CD-changer's menu-fed controller. You will find more detailed information regarding the function of the radio's or navigation system/radio's controls in the "CD-changer" chapter in the radio or navigation system/radio handbook.

Note

- The button names shown in your vehicles instruction manual for the radio or navigation system/radio or multi-function steering wheel might, under certain circumstances, differ from the names used in this handbook.

6.1 Switching the radio or navigation system/radio on and off:

The radio or navigation system/radio is switched on automatically when the ignition is switched on. The radio or navigation system/radio is switched off automatically when the ignition key is removed.
You can also switch the radio or navigation system/radio off manually when the ignition is switched on. If the radio or navigation system/radio has been switched off manually it will not be switched back on automatically the next time the ignition is switched on.
You can also switch the radio or navigation system/radio on manually without having to insert the ignition key. In this case the radio or navigation system/radio will be switched off automatically after 1 hour in order to protect the car's battery.

Note

- The interconnected iPod® will also be switched on automatically when the radio or navigation system/radio is switched on. The iPod's battery will also be recharged.
- The iPod® will start playing from the position it was previously playing from after the ignition, the radio or the navigation system/radio has been switched off and back on again. CD6 will always be displayed on the radio or navigation system/radio regardless of the actual play list. This will remain displayed until the play list is changed.
- The iPod® will be switched off automatically approximately 2 - 10 minutes after the radio or navigation system/radio is switched off, regardless of the type of radio or navigation system/radio being used.

6.2 Selecting the iPod® :

- Press the CD button just once to select the iPod® if you do not have a CD in the radio's or navigation system/radio's drive slot.
- Press the CD button twice to select the iPod® if you do have a CD in the radio's or navigation system/radio's drive slot.

CD 6, the number and playing time of the current track will be displayed on the screen.

Note

- The track number display on the radio or navigation system/radio has a maximum of two digits. The first digit in a three-digit number will be suppressed on the radio's or navigation system/radio's display if you choose a track with a three-digit number. If "125" is displayed on the iPod® then only "25" will be displayed on the radio, the navigation system/radio or the multi-function unit. This is why we recommend that your play lists always have a maximum number of 99 tracks.

6.3 Playing iPod® tracks:

iPod® tracks are played in the same way as using a CD-changer, i.e. by using the radio's or navigation system/radio's buttons. The iPod® will start to play from the last position that it was playing from after the iPod® (see above) has been selected. CD6 will always be displayed on the radio or navigation system/radio regardless of the actual play list. This will remain displayed until the play list is changed.

6.4 Choosing from the iPod's play lists:

iPod® play lists are selected in the same way as you would use a CD-changer, i.e. by using the radio's or navigation system/radio's buttons.

The radio's or navigation system/radio's buttons or CD menu function (1)...(5) are automatically loaded with the iPod's first five play lists.

The radio's or navigation system/radio's buttons or CD menu function (6) selects all of the tracks saved in the iPod® and plays these as a single play list.

You will find more detailed information about the functions of the radio or navigation system/radio's controls in the "CD-changer" chapter in the radio or navigation system/radio handbook.

Note

- If you select an empty or non-existent iPod® play list then play will start automatically from the next available play list.
- A track from the previous play list might be played when changing play lists, but this depends on the radio or navigation system/radio that is being used. The function is a system dependent and is not a defect.

6.5 Skipping forwards or backwards from a track:

Skipping forwards or backwards from a track is carried out in the same way as you would use a CD-changer, i.e. via the radio's or navigation system/radio's knob/push button, buttons or menu functions (◀) (▶). You will find more detailed information about the functions of the radio or navigation system/radio's controls in the "CD-changer" chapter in the radio or navigation system/radio handbook.

Note

- When using the knob/push button or control wheel/button with certain radios or navigation system/radios it is only possible to skip forwards or backwards to track number 99. Tracks with higher track numbers must be selected using the buttons. The first digit in a three-digit number will be suppressed on the radio's or navigation system/radio's display if you choose a track with a three-digit number.
- Very fast and repeated forward or backwards track skipping might well result in delays and the audio will be muted for a long period. The skipped tracks will be played briefly under certain circumstances.

6.6 Fast forwards and backwards skipping:

Fast forwards and backwards skipping is carried out in the same way as when you use a CD-changer, i.e. by using the (◀◀) (▶▶) radio's or navigation system/radio's buttons or menu functions. The function can be run (◀) or (▶) selected by pressing the button for a few seconds if these buttons are not fitted to your radio or navigation system/radio. You will find more detailed information about the functions of the radio or navigation system/radio's controls in the "CD-changer" chapter in the radio or navigation system/radio handbook.

6.7 Automatic track playing (SCAN):

The SCAN function can be used to start a search and each track in the current play list will be played for a few seconds.

- Activate the SCAN function to start automatic track playing.
- Select SCAN once again to select the track that is currently being played and to terminate the automatic track playing function.

6.8 Random play (MIX):

Random selection can be activated via the radio's or navigation system/radio's (MIX) button or the menu and this enables tracks to be played from the play lists in random order.

Note

- If the *random track* function is already activated when the iPod® is connected up it will be accepted automatically for use with the radio or navigation system/radio and can be deactivated by pressing the MIX button twice.
- The track numbers displayed on the radio or navigation system/radio will run consecutively. The track number from the play list will be displayed on the iPod®. This means that you will have different numbers displayed on the two units.

(F) Mode d'emploi

Sommaire

1 Introduction ---- 12
1.1 Etat de la technologie ---- 12
1.2 Symboles utilisés ---- 12
2 A propos de l'adaptateur pour iPod® ---- 13
2.1 Caractéristiques et fonctions ---- 13
2.2 Compatibilité ---- 13
2.3 Charge de la batterie ---- 13
2.4 Maintenance de l'adaptateur pour iPod® ---- 13
3 Utilisation de l'iPod® dans le véhicule ---- 13
4 Branchement de l'adaptateur pour iPod® ---- 14
5 Utilisation de listes de lecture ---- 14
6 Commande par l'intermédiaire de l'autoradio / du système de navigation ---- 15
6.1 Mise en marche et arrêt de l'autoradio / du système de navigation ---- 15
6.2 Sélection de l'iPod® ---- 15
6.3 Lecture de morceaux iPod® ---- 15
6.4 Sélection de listes de lecture iPod® ---- 16
6.5 Saut de titre avant / arrière ---- 16
6.6 Avance et retour rapide ---- 16
6.7 Lecture automatique des titres (SCAN) ---- 16
6.8 Lecture aléatoire (MIX) ---- 16

1 Introduction

L'adaptateur pour iPod® est un module électronique qui assure la liaison entre l'iPod® et l'autoradio / le système de navigation. Il permet de piloter l'iPod® à l'aide des touches de l'autoradio / du système de navigation et de lire les morceaux enregistrés sur l'iPod® via l'autoradio / le système de navigation du véhicule.

Ce mode d'emploi est destiné à vous aider à utiliser l'adaptateur pour iPod® . Lisez-le attentivement et conservez-le en lieu sûr afin de pouvoir vous y reporter le cas échéant. N'oubliez pas de le remettre au nouveau propriétaire en cas de revente du véhicule.

La désignation iPod® utilisée ci-après se réfère aux modèles iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano et iPod® Photo.

Pour de plus amples informations sur l'iPod® , consultez le guide de l'utilisateur correspondant.

1.1 Etat de la technologie

Ce mode d'emploi est basé sur l'état d'avancement actuel de la technologie. En raison de l'évolution des systèmes Infotainment, il peut arriver par la suite que le produit effectivement installé diffère de celui présenté ici. Nul ne pourra donc se prévaloir des informations contenues dans ce mode d'emploi à l'appui de revendications de quelque nature que ce soit, celles-ci reflétant l'état de la technologie au moment de la rédaction.

1.2 Symboles utilisés

Les symboles suivants vous faciliteront la lecture du mode d'emploi :

⚠ ATTENTION !

- **Les passages précédés de ce symbole comportent des informations relatives à votre sécurité et signalent des risques d'accident et de blessure.**

Attention !

- Les passages précédés de ce symbole attirent votre attention sur d'éventuels dommages au véhicule, à l'iPod® ou à l'adaptateur pour iPod®.

Nota

- Les passages précédés de ce symbole comportent des remarques et des informations supplémentaires.

Les textes en italique indiquent des thèmes abordés plus en détail dans le guide de l'utilisateur de l'iPod®.

2 A propos de l'adaptateur pour iPod®

L'adaptateur pour iPod® assure la liaison entre l'iPod® et l'autoradio ou le système de navigation du véhicule et permet ainsi aux systèmes d'échanger des informations et des ordres de commande.

Nota

- L'adaptateur pour iPod® ne peut pas être utilisé en parallèle avec un changeur de CD.

2.1 Caractéristiques et fonctions

Grâce à la liaison directe entre l'iPod® et l'autoradio / le système de navigation, il est possible d'écouter les morceaux enregistrés sur l'iPod® par le biais des haut-parleurs du véhicule.

Le pilotage s'effectue via les éléments de commande de l'autoradio / du système de navigation et permet d'utiliser les fonctions suivantes :

- Sélection directe et lecture de 1 à 5 listes
- Lecture de tous les morceaux enregistrés sur l'iPod®
- Fonction Scan
- Changement de liste de lecture
- Changement de morceau (piste) dans une liste de lecture
- Avance et retour rapide dans un morceau
- Lecture aléatoire (MIX)

Nota

- Les informations enregistrées sur l'iPod®, telles que l'artiste, le titre, l'album et le genre, ne sont pas traitées par l'adaptateur. Il n'est donc pas possible de sélectionner des morceaux d'après ces critères de tri et de recherche. De plus, aucun affichage n'apparaît sur l'écran de l'autoradio / du système de navigation.

2.2 Compatibilité

L'adaptateur pour iPod® est compatible avec les modèles iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano et iPod® Photo. Les caractéristiques et les fonctions de l'adaptateur se rapportent à la version actuelle du logiciel de l'adaptateur.

Nota

- Des modifications ultérieures de la version du logiciel ou du firmware de l'iPod® peuvent se traduire par des caractéristiques et des fonctions différentes qui ne sont pas prises en compte dans ce mode d'emploi.

2.3 Charge de la batterie

La batterie de l'iPod® est chargée lorsque celui-ci est connecté à l'adaptateur pour iPod® et que l'autoradio / le système de navigation est en marche. Dès que la batterie est complètement chargée, le système passe en mode de maintien de la charge. Si l'autoradio / le système de navigation est arrêté, la charge de la batterie de l'iPod® est aussitôt interrompue.

2.4 Maintenance de l'adaptateur pour iPod®

L'adaptateur pour iPod® ne s'use pas et ne nécessite aucun entretien dans le cadre d'une utilisation normale. En cas de défaut, il doit être remplacé par le partenaire Volkswagen. L'ouverture du boîtier entraîne l'annulation des droits à la garantie.

3 Utilisation de l'iPod® dans le véhicule

Toutes les versions de l'iPod® n'ont pas été conçues pour être utilisées en voiture, eu égard notamment aux fortes variations de température auxquelles l'habitacle peut être soumis. Ne laissez par conséquent pas votre iPod® dans le véhicule lorsque vous vous absentez pour une durée prolongée.

Nota

- Les températures très élevées ou très basses qui peuvent régner dans l'habitacle sont susceptibles d'endommager l'iPod® et/ou d'influer sur ses performances.
- Vous trouverez de plus amples informations sur les *températures d'utilisation et de stockage* dans le guide de l'utilisateur de l'iPod® .

⚠ ATTENTION !

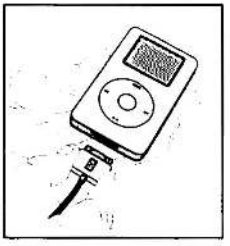
- **Concentrez-vous avant tout sur la conduite. Un moment d'inattention du conducteur peut être à l'origine d'accidents et de blessures.**
- **Ne vous laissez pas distraire par des opérations de réglage ou l'utilisation de l'iPod®.**
- **Utilisez l'iPod® uniquement lorsque les conditions routières, les conditions atmosphériques et les conditions de circulation le permettent et que votre attention ne risque pas d'être détournée.**
- **Réglez le volume de façon à toujours pouvoir entendre les signaux acoustiques extérieurs, tels que les sirènes des services de police ou des services de secours - Risque d'accident !**

4 Branchement de l'adaptateur pour iPod®

Branchement :

Nota

- Si votre iPod® est neuf ou si vous ne vous en êtes pas servi depuis un certain temps, rechargez la batterie conformément au guide de l'utilisateur avant de l'utiliser avec l'adaptateur pour iPod®.
- Pour bénéficier d'une qualité d'écoute optimale, sélectionnez sur l'iPod® le menu *Réglages* et désactivez l'*égaliseur de volume* conformément au guide de l'utilisateur avant de procéder au branchement.
- Une fois que l'iPod® est connecté à l'adaptateur, ses boutons sont sans effet.
- La *lecture en boucle* ⟲ est automatiquement activée à l'allumage de l'iPod® : dès que la fin de la liste est atteinte, la lecture reprend au début.



– Coupez le contact du véhicule et introduisez la fiche de raccordement de l'adaptateur pour iPod®, logo vers le haut, dans le port situé sur la face inférieure de l'iPod® jusqu'à encliquetage.

Après le branchement, le logo Volkswagen apparaît brièvement sur l'écran de l'iPod®. Ce dernier affiche ensuite la version du logiciel de l'adaptateur et l'icône de charge de la batterie.

Si, une fois raccordé à l'adaptateur, l'appareil n'est pas reconnu, procédez à une *réinitialisation de l'iPod®* conformément au guide de l'utilisateur.

Débranchement :

– Coupez le contact du véhicule, appuyez sur les boutons de déverrouillage situés de chaque côté de la fiche de raccordement et retirez la fiche du port de connexion de l'iPod®.

5 Utilisation de listes de lecture

Après que vous avez raccordé l'iPod® à l'adaptateur, le système recherche automatiquement les morceaux enregistrés et les listes de lecture existantes. Les listes sont d'abord affectées dans l'ordre numérique, puis alphabétique aux touches CD 1 à CD 5.

C'est pourquoi il est conseillé de créer jusqu'à cinq listes de lecture (par ex. de 1 .... à 5 ....) sur l'iPod®, et ce, également afin de faciliter l'utilisation des listes en voiture. Les listes peuvent ensuite être directement sélectionnées via l'autoradio ou le système de navigation.

La touche CD 6 permet d'accéder à tous les morceaux enregistrés sur l'iPod®.

Nota

- Pour de plus amples informations sur la création et la gestion de listes de lecture, consultez le guide de l'utilisateur de l'iPod®.

6 Commande par l'intermédiaire de l'autoradio / du système de navigation

L'iPod® peut être piloté à l'aide des touches de l'autoradio / du système de navigation ou des touches du volant multifonction, comme un changeur de CD.

En fonction du type d'autoradio / de système de navigation, les actions décrites ci-après peuvent être effectuées directement au moyen des touches de l'appareil ou via la commande de menu pour le changeur de CD. Vous trouverez de plus amples informations sur les différentes fonctions des éléments de commande de l'autoradio / du système de navigation dans la notice d'utilisation de l'autoradio / du système de navigation, au chapitre "Changeur de CD".

Nota

- Les désignations employées dans le livre de bord du véhicule concernant les touches de l'autoradio / du système de navigation ou du volant multifonction peuvent éventuellement différer de celles utilisées dans ce mode d'emploi.

6.1 Mise en marche et arrêt de l'autoradio / du système de navigation :

L'autoradio / le système de navigation s'allume automatiquement à la mise du contact et s'éteint lors du retrait de la clé.
Le cas échéant, l'appareil peut également être coupé manuellement lorsque le contact est mis. Si l'autoradio / le système de navigation a été arrêté manuellement, il ne sera pas rallumé automatiquement à la prochaine mise du contact.
Si besoin est, il est aussi possible de mettre l'autoradio / le système de navigation en marche manuellement sans que la clé se trouve dans le contact-démarreur. Dans ce cas, l'appareil se coupe automatiquement au bout d'une heure afin d'épargner la batterie du véhicule.

Nota

- L'iPod® connecté s'allume en même temps que l'autoradio / le système de navigation. La batterie de l'iPod® est chargée.
- Une fois le contact remis ou l'autoradio / le système de navigation rallumé, l'iPod® reprend la lecture là où il s'était arrêté. Dans ce cas, l'écran de l'autoradio / du système de navigation affiche toujours CD6, indépendamment de la liste de lecture active, jusqu'au prochain changement de liste de lecture.
- En fonction du type d'autoradio / de système de navigation, l'iPod® est automatiquement éteint au bout d'environ 2 à 10 minutes après l'arrêt de l'autoradio / du système de navigation.

6.2 Sélection de l'iPod® :

– Si le tiroir de lecteur de l'autoradio / du système de navigation est vide, appuyez une fois sur la touche CD pour sélectionner l'iPod® .

– S'il contient un CD, appuyez deux fois sur la touche CD.

CD6 apparaît à l'écran, ainsi que le numéro et la durée du morceau en cours (TRACK).

Nota

- L'autoradio / le système de navigation affiche uniquement les numéros de titre à deux chiffres maximum. Si le morceau sélectionné a un numéro à trois chiffres, la première position n'apparaît pas sur l'écran. Le numéro "125" sur l'écran de l'iPod® sera seulement noté "25" sur l'écran de l'autoradio / du système de navigation et, le cas échéant, sur le combiné d'instruments. Il est donc recommandé de limiter les listes de lecture à 99 morceaux maximum.

6.3 Lecture de morceaux iPod® :

La lecture de morceaux iPod® s'effectue, comme dans le cas d'un changeur de CD, par l'intermédiaire des touches de l'autoradio / du système de navigation. Une fois l'iPod® sélectionné (voir plus haut), celui-ci reprend la lecture là où il s'était arrêté. Dans ce cas, l'écran de l'autoradio / du système de navigation affiche toujours CD6, indépendamment de la liste de lecture active, jusqu'au prochain changement de liste de lecture.

6.4 Sélection de listes de lecture iPod® :

La sélection de listes de lecture iPod® s'effectue, comme dans le cas d'un changeur de CD, par l'intermédiaire des touches de l'autoradio / du système de navigation.

Les touches / fonctions de menu CD (1)...(5) de l'autoradio / du système de navigation sont automatiquement associées aux cinq premières listes de lecture de l'iPod®.

La touche / fonction de menu CD (6) permet de sélectionner tous les morceaux enregistrés sur l'iPod® et de les écouter comme s'il s'agissait d'une liste de lecture.

Vous trouverez de plus amples informations sur les différentes fonctions des éléments de commande de l'autoradio / du système de navigation dans la notice d'utilisation de l'autoradio / du système de navigation, au chapitre "Changeur de CD".

Nota

- Si une liste iPod® vide ou non existante est sélectionnée, la lecture passe automatiquement à la prochaine liste disponible.
- Lors du changement de liste, il est possible, suivant l'autoradio / le système de navigation, qu'un morceau de la liste de lecture précédente soit encore entendu brièvement. Cela est dû au système et n'indique pas la présence d'un défaut.

6.5 Saut de titre avant / arrière :

Le saut de titre avant / arrière s'effectue, comme dans le cas d'un changeur de CD, par l'intermédiaire du bouton poussoir rotatif ou des touches / fonctions de menu ◀ ▶ de l'autoradio / du système de navigation. Vous trouverez de plus amples informations sur les différentes fonctions des éléments de commande de l'autoradio / du système de navigation dans la notice d'utilisation de l'autoradio / du système de navigation, au chapitre "Changeur de CD".

Nota

- Sur certains autoradios / systèmes de navigation, le saut de titre avant / arrière à l'aide du bouton poussoir rotatif permet seulement d'aller jusqu'au numéro de titre 99. Pour atteindre les numéros situés au-delà, il faut utiliser les touches. Si le morceau sélectionné a un numéro à trois chiffres, la première position n'apparaît pas sur l'écran de l'autoradio / du système de navigation.
- Si la fonction Saut de titre avant / arrière est activée à plusieurs reprises et très rapidement, il peut se produire un décalage temporel. La transmission audio est alors interrompue pendant une durée prolongée. Dans certains cas, le début des morceaux passés est lu pendant un court instant.

6.6 Avance et retour rapide :

L'avance et le retour rapide s'effectuent, comme dans le cas d'un changeur de CD, par l'intermédiaire des touches / fonctions de menu ◀◀ ▶▶ de l'autoradio / du système de navigation. Si l'appareil ne dispose pas de ces touches, il est possible d'activer la fonction correspondante en appuyant longuement sur la touche ◀ ou ▶. Vous trouverez de plus amples informations sur les différentes fonctions des éléments de commande de l'autoradio / du système de navigation dans la notice d'utilisation de l'autoradio / du système de navigation, au chapitre "Changeur de CD".

6.7 Lecture automatique des titres (SCAN) :

La fonction SCAN permet de lancer une recherche et d'écouter les premières secondes de chacun des titres de la liste de lecture active.

– Pour démarrer la lecture automatique des titres, appuyez sur la touche SCAN.
– Pour sélectionner le titre en cours et désactiver la lecture automatique, actionnez de nouveau la touche SCAN.

6.8 Lecture aléatoire (MIX) :

La lecture aléatoire peut être activée à l'aide d'une touche (MIX) ou dans le menu de l'autoradio / du système de navigation et permet d'écouter les morceaux d'une liste de lecture dans un ordre aléatoire.

Nota

- Si l'iPod® est déjà configuré pour la *lecture aléatoire* au moment du raccordement, la fonction est directement reprise pour l'exploitation avec l'autoradio / le système de navigation. Elle peut être désactivée en appuyant deux fois sur la touche MIX.
- Les numéros de titre affichés sur l'écran de l'autoradio / du système de navigation se suivent. L'écran de l'iPod® affiche le numéro du morceau dans la liste de lecture. Les affichages ne sont donc pas identiques sur les deux appareils.

(E) Manual de instrucciones

Índice

1 Introducción ---- 17
1.1 Estado de la técnica ---- 17
1.2 Símbolos utilizados ---- 17
2 Informaciones sobre el adaptador para iPod® ---- 18
2.1 Características y funciones ---- 18
2.2 Compatibilidad ---- 18
2.3 Carga de la batería ---- 18
2.4 Mantenimiento y servicio del adaptador para iPod® ---- 18
3 Utilización del iPod® en el vehículo ---- 18
4 Conexión del adaptador para iPod® ---- 19
5 Utilización de las listas de reproducción ---- 19
6 Manejo con la radio / el sistema de navegación de la radio ---- 20
6.1 Conectar y desconectar la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio ---- 20
6.2 Selección del iPod® ---- 20
6.3 Reproducir títulos del iPod® ---- 20
6.4 Seleccionar listas de reproducción del iPod® ---- 21
6.5 Salto de título hacia delante y hacia atrás ---- 21
6.6 Avance y retroceso rápido ---- 21
6.7 Sistema automático de reproducción de títulos (SCAN) ---- 21
6.8 Reproducción al azar (MIX) ---- 21

1 Introducción

El adaptador para iPod® es un módulo electrónico que establece una conexión entre el iPod® y la radio/ el sistema de radionavegación. Permite el manejo del iPod® a través del teclado de la radio/del sistema de radionavegación y la reproducción de los títulos memorizados en el iPod® a través de la radio/del sistema de radionavegación del vehículo.

Este manual de instrucciones tiene la misión de facilitarle y aclararle el manejo del adaptador para iPod® con el iPod®. Por favor tómese el tiempo para leer cuidadosamente el manual de instrucciones y consérvelo para las dudas que pudieran presentársele más adelante. Si vende su vehículo, entregue por favor este manual de instrucciones al nuevo propietario del vehículo.

Cuando se hable en lo sucesivo en el manual de instrucciones del iPod®, se estará haciendo referencia bajo esa denominación a los siguientes aparatos iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano y iPod® Photo.

Para explicaciones complementarias sobre el iPod®, le rogamos que consulte el manual que pertenece al mismo.

1.1 Estado de la técnica

Este manual de instrucciones está basado en el estado más moderno de la técnica. Dado que el desarrollo de los sistemas infotainment siempre va adelante, pueden producirse en el futuro diferencias entre este manual de instrucciones y el producto instalado actualmente. Por esa razón, queda descartada cualquier demanda legal ya que todo se basa en las informaciones que se usaron en el momento de la elaboración del manual de instrucciones.

1.2 Símbolos utilizados

Los siguientes símbolos le facilitarán la lectura del presente manual de instrucciones:

⚠ ¡ATENCIÓN!

- **Los textos con este símbolo comprenden informaciones relativas a su seguridad y señalan peligros de accidentes y lesiones.**

¡Cuidado!

- Los textos con este símbolo le señalan posibles daños en su vehículo, en el iPod® y/o en el adaptador para iPod®.

Nota

- Los textos con este símbolo contienen indicaciones e informaciones adicionales.

Los textos imprimidos en cursiva hacen referencia a temas que se tratan en más profundidad en el manual del iPod®.

2 Informaciones sobre el adaptador para iPod®

El adaptador para iPod® conecta el iPod® con la radio y/o con el sistema de navegación de la radio del vehículo de manera que sea posible el intercambio de informaciones y órdenes de mando entre los aparatos.

Nota

- No es posible un funcionamiento paralelo del adaptador para iPod® con un cambiador de CDs.

2.1 Características y funciones

Gracias a la conexión directa de iPod® y radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, los altavoces del vehículo pueden reproducir los temas grabados en el iPod®.

El mando se efectúa con los elementos de manejo de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio y permite el uso de las siguientes funciones:

- Selección y reproducción directas de hasta 5 listas de reproducción
- Reproducción de todos los títulos grabados en el iPod®
- Función SCAN
- Cambio entre las listas de reproducción
- Cambio de título (Tracks) dentro de una lista de reproducción
- Avance y retroceso rápido dentro de un título
- Reproducción al azar (Play MIX)

Nota

- Las informaciones grabadas en el iPod® sobre el artista, título, álbum y género no son procesadas por el adaptador para iPod® – la selección de títulos con esos criterios de clasificación y búsqueda no es posible y no se realiza ninguna indicación de display en el sistema de radio ni en el sistema de navegación de la radio.

2.2 Compatibilidad

El adaptador para iPod® es compatible con los siguientes aparatos iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano y iPod® Photo. Las características y funciones del adaptador se refieren al estado de software actual del adaptador.

Nota

- Las modificaciones futuras del estado de software y/o del firmware del iPod® pueden conducir a características y funciones distintas de las que se contemplan en este manual de instrucciones.

2.3 Carga de la batería

Si el iPod® está conectado al adaptador para iPod® yla radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio encendida, la batería del iPod® carga. Tan pronto como la batería haya alcanzado su capacidad máxima, el sistema activa el modo de conservación de la carga. El proceso de carga de la batería del iPod® el finalizado una vez que se apague la radio/el sistema de radionavegación.

2.4 Mantenimiento y servicio del adaptador para iPod®

El adaptador para iPod® no está sujeto al desgaste y no requiere ningún tipo de mantenimiento para el servicio normal. En caso de algún defecto se cambiará el adaptador para iPod® en uno de los concesionarios Volkswagen. El derecho de garantía vence al abrir la carcasa del adaptador.

3 Utilización del iPod® en el vehículo

No todas las variantes del iPod® se desarrollaron para la utilización en el vehículo, esto rige especialmente para grandes fluctuaciones de temperatura, tales como las que se dan en el vehículo. Por esa razón, por favor no deje su iPod® en el vehículo si lo abandona por mucho tiempo.

Nota

- Las temperaturas muy altas o muy bajas, como las que se producen en el interior del vehículo, pueden dañar su iPod® y/o afectar el funcionamiento del aparato.
- Encontrará más indicaciones sobre el tema *Temperaturas de funcionamiento y de depósito* en el manual de instrucciones del iPod®.

⚠ ¡ATENCIÓN!

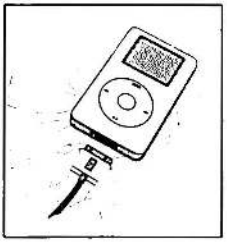
- **Dedica sus atención en primer lugar a conducir. Al estar distraído el conductor, pueden causarse accidentes y lesiones.**
- **No deje distraerse del tráfico por hacer ajustes o manejar el iPod®.**
- **Utilice el iPod® únicamente si lo permiten las condiciones viales, climáticas y del tráfico y no es distraído.**
- **Ajuste el volumen de sonido de modo que pueda fácilmente oír en cada momento las señales acústicas procedentes del exterior, como p.ej. la sirena de la policía y de los bomberos - ¡peligro de accidente!**

4 Conexión del adaptador para iPod®

Conexión:

Nota

- En el caso de iPod®s nuevos o no usados en mucho tiempo, se recomienda cargarlos siguiendo las indicaciones del manual de instrucciones del iPod®, antes de utilizarlos con el adaptador para iPod®.
- Para conseguir una reproducción óptima, antes de conectar el adaptador para iPod® debería activar el ajuste *ajustar volumen* y desactivar *EQ* (Ecualizador) siguiendo el manual de instrucciones del iPod®.
- Cuando el iPod® está conectado al adaptador para iPod®, las teclas del iPod® no funcionan.
- La *reproducción repetida* ⊂⊃ se conecta automáticamente al encender el iPod® – en cuanto se llegue al fin de la lista de reproducción, se volverá a reproducir la misma desde el principio.



– Corte el encendido del vehículo y enchufe el conector del adaptador para iPod®, con el logo mirando hacia arriba, en la parte inferior del iPod® hasta que confirme su encastre.

Después de la conexión del iPod® aparece por unos instantes el logo Volkswagen en el display del iPod®. A continuación se visualiza la versión del software del adaptador para iPod® y la carga de la batería.

Si después de conectar el iPod® al adaptador para iPod®, éste no fuera reconocido, ejecute una*reinicialización del iPod®* siguiendo las indicaciones del manual de instrucciones del iPod®.

Desconexión:

– Corte el encendido del vehículo, presione el pulsador de desbloqueo izquierdo y derecho del conector y retírelo de la clavija de conexión del iPod®.

5 Utilización de las listas de reproducción

Después de conectar el iPod® al adaptador para iPod® se genera automáticamente la llamada de títulos grabados y listas de reproducción existentes. Las listas de reproducción existentes se clasifican primero en orden numérico y luego en orden alfabético como tecla CD 1-5.

Por esa razón y para facilitar la utilización de las listas de reproducción durante la conducción, se recomienda la creación de hasta cinco listas de reproducción (p. ej. 1 .... a 5 ....) en el iPod®. Estas listas de reproducción se pueden llamar directamente desde la radio y/o desde el sistema de navegación de la radio.

A la tecla CD 6 están asignados todos los títulos memorizados en el iPod®.

Nota

- Encontrará amplias informaciones sobre la creación y administración de listas de reproducción en el manual de instrucciones del iPod®.

6 Manejo con radio / con sistema de navegación de la radio

El manejo del iPod® se lleva a cabo mediante las teclas de la radio/ del sistema de navegación de la radio y/o mediante las teclas del volante de conducción multifuncional como sucede en el caso del manejo de un cambiador de CDs.

El manejo descrito a continuación puede llevarse a cabo, independientemente del tipo de radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, bien directamente con las teclas del aparato o bien mediante el control por menús para el cambiador de CDs. Para consultar informaciones más detalladas sobre los elementos de manejo de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, le rogamos que consulte el manual de instrucciones de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio en el capítulo "Cambiador de CDs".

Nota

- Las denominaciones del teclado en el libro de instrucciones de su vehículo para la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio o para el volante de conducción multifuncional pueden ser en algunos casos distintas a las denominaciones empleadas en este manual de instrucciones.

6.1 Conectar y desconectar la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio:

La radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio se conecta automáticamente al conectar el encendido. Al sacar la llave del encendido se desconecta automáticamente la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio.
Cuando el encendido está conectado es posible desconectar la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio manualmente en caso de necesidad. Si la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio se desconecta manualmente, no se conectará automáticamente con la próxima conexión del encendido.
En caso de necesidad se puede también conectar manualmente la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio cuando la llave de encendido no esté puesta. En este caso, la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio se desconectará automáticamente después de 1 hora, para proteger la batería del vehículo.

Nota

- Al conectar la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio se conecta automáticamente también el iPod® conectado. La batería del iPod® se carga.
- Después de desconectar y volver a conectar el encendido o la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio, el iPod® continua la reproducción en la última posición reproducida. En el display de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, se visualiza entonces siempre CD6 independientemente de la lista de reproducción real. Esta visualización se mantiene hasta que se produce un cambio de la lista de reproducción.
- En función del tipo de radio / tipo de sistema de navegación de la radio, el iPod® se desconecta automáticamente aproximadamente 2-10 minutos después de la desconexión de la radio / del sistema de navegación de la radio.

6.2 Selección del iPod®:

– Si en la caja de la unidad de disco de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio no hay ningún CD, pulse una vez la tecla CD para seleccionar el iPod®.
– Si en la caja de la unidad de disco de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio hay un CD, pulse dos veces la tecla CD para seleccionar el iPod®.

En el display aparece CD6, se visualizan número y duración de reproducción del título actual (TRACK).

Nota

- La radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio visualiza en el display únicamente números de título de un máximo de dos dígitos. Al seleccionar un título con un número de tres dígitos, se suprime el primer dígito en el display dela radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio. La visualización de "125" en el display del iPod®, se representa en el display de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio y, dado el caso, en el instrumento combinado únicamente como "25". Por esa razón se recomienda asignar a las listas de reproducción un máximo de 99 títulos.

6.3 Reproducir títulos del iPod®:

La reproducción de títulos del iPod® se lleva a cabo con las teclas de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio al igual que en el manejo de un cambiador de CDs. Después de seleccionar el iPod® (véase arriba), el iPod® continúa la reproducción en la última posición reproducida. En el display de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, se visualiza entonces siempre CD6 independientemente de la lista de reproducción real. Esta visualización se mantiene hasta que se produce un cambio de la lista de reproducción.

6.4 Seleccionar listas de reproducción del iPod®:

La selección de las listas de reproducción del iPod® se lleva a cabo igual que en el manejo de un cambiador de CDs utilizando las teclas de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio.

La tecla y/o la función de menú CD (1)...(5) de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio se programan automáticamente con las cinco primero listas de reproducción del iPod®.

La tecla y/o la función menú CD (6) de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio selecciona todos los títulos grabados en el iPod® y los reproduce como si fueran una lista de reproducción.

Para consultar informaciones más detalladas sobre las funciones de los elementos de manejo de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, le rogamos que consulte el capítulo "Cambiador de CDs" del manual de instrucciones de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio.

Nota

- Si se selecciona una lista vacía o inexistente del iPod®, la reproducción continuará automáticamente con la lista de reproducción siguiente disponible.
- Al cambiar de lista de reproducción puede ser que se escuche temporalmente aún un título de la lista de reproducción anterior, independientemente de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio. Esta función está condicionada por el sistema y no es el síntoma de ningún defecto.

6.5 Salto de título hacia delante y hacia atrás:

El salto de título hacia delante y hacia atrás se lleva a cabo como en el manejo de un cambiador de CDs utilizando el botón giratorio/pulsador o las teclas y/o funciones del menú (◀) (▶) de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio. Para consultar informaciones más detalladas sobre las funciones de los elementos de manejo de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, le rogamos que consulte el capítulo "Cambiador de CDs" del manual de instrucciones de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio.

Nota

- El salto de título hacia delante y/o hacia atrás se puede realizar con algunas radios/ sistemas de navegación de radios sólo hasta el número de título 99 con el botón giratorio/pulsador. Los títulos con números de título más altos se tienen que ejecutar con las teclas. Al seleccionar un título con un número de tres dígitos, se suprime el primer dígito en el display dela radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio .
- Cuando se acciona repetida y rápidamente el salto de título hacia delante y/o hacia atrás pueden llegar a producirse demoras y la emisión audio pasa a modo mudo durante mucho tiempo. En algunos casos se reproducen brevemente los títulos saltados.

6.6 Avance y retroceso rápido:

El avance y retroceso rápido se lleva a cabo como en el manejo de un cambiador de CDs mediante las teclas y/o las funciones del menú (◀◀) (▶▶) de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio. Si en la radio/ en el sistema de navegación de la radio no existieran estas teclas, se puede seleccionar la función pulsando mucho rato la tecla (◀) o (▶). Para consultar informaciones más detalladas sobre las funciones de los elementos de manejo de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio, le rogamos que consulte el capítulo "Cambiador de CDs" del manual de instrucciones de la radio/ sistema de navegación de la radio.

6.7 Sistema automático de reproducción de títulos (SCAN):

Con la función SCAN se puede poner en marcha una búsqueda en la que cada título de la lista de reproducción actual se reproduce durante unos segundos.

– Active SCAN para poner en marcha el sistema automático de reproducción de títulos.
– Seleccione SCAN de nuevo para seleccionar el título que se reproduce en ese momento y para finalizar la función del sistema automático de reproducción de títulos.

6.8 Reproducción al azar (MIX):

La reproducción al azar se puede activar con una tecla (MIX) o en el menú de la radio/ del sistema de navegación de la radio y permite reproducir los títulos de una lista de reproducción en un orden aleatorio.

Nota

- Si al conectar el iPod® estaba activa la función *Títulos al azar* en el iPod®, esta función será asumida directamente por la radio/ el sistema de navegación de la radio y podrá desactivarse luego presionando dos veces la tecla MIX.
- Los números de los títulos en el display de la radio/ del sistema de navegación de la radio se contabilizan al mismo tiempo correlativamente. En el display del iPod® se visualiza el número del título dentro de la lista de reproducción. Debido a ello se dan visualizaciones divergentes en los displays de los dos aparatos.

(I) Istruzioni per l'uso

Indice

1 Introduzione ---- 22
1.1 Caratteristiche tecniche ---- 22
1.2 Simboli utilizzati ---- 22
2 Informazioni sull'adattatore per iPod® ---- 23
2.1 Caratteristiche e funzioni ---- 23
2.2 Compatibilità ---- 23
2.3 Caricamento della batteria ---- 23
2.4 Manutenzione e assistenza per l'adattatore per iPod® ---- 23
3 Utilizzo dell'iPod® sul veicolo ---- 23
4 Collegamento dell'adattatore per iPod® ---- 24
5 Utilizzo delle liste di riproduzione programmata ---- 24
6 Utilizzo con radio / sistema di navigazione radio ---- 25
6.1 Attivazione e disattivazione della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio ---- 25
6.2 Selezione dell'iPod® ---- 35
6.3 Riproduzione di brani dell'iPod® ---- 35
6.4 Selezione e riproduzione di liste di riproduzione programmata dell'iPod® ---- 35
6.5 Ricerca di un brano (avanti e indietro) ---- 36
6.6 Scorrimento rapido (avanti e indietro) ---- 36
6.7 Riproduzione automatica dei brani (SCAN) ---- 36
6.8 Riproduzione casuale (MIX) ---- 36

1 Introduzione

L'adattatore per iPod® è un modulo elettronico che stabilisce il collegamento tra iPod® e la radio/il sistema di navigazione radio. Questo modulo consente di utilizzare l'iPod® impiegando i tasti della radio/del sistema di navigazione radio e di riprodurre i brani memorizzati nell'iPod® tramite la radio/il sistema di navigazione radio del veicolo.

Questo manuale ha lo scopo di illustrare le funzioni dell'adattatore per iPod® e di facilitarne il corretto utilizzo. Leggerlo con attenzione e conservarlo per eventuali consultazioni future. In caso di vendita del veicolo, consegnarlo al nuovo proprietario.

Le istruzioni per l'uso contenute in questo manuale sono valide per i modelli iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano e iPod® photo.

Per ulteriori informazioni sull'iPod® si veda il rispettivo manuale per l'uso.

1.1 Caratteristiche tecniche

Le istruzioni per l'uso contenute in questo manuale fanno riferimento alle caratteristiche tecniche più all'avanguardia. Un ulteriore sviluppo dei sistemi di informazione potrà essere causa di un'eventuale discrepanza tra le istruzioni di questo manuale e il prodotto installato. Si declina ogni responsabilità in merito a eventuali differenze, in quanto il presente manuale fa riferimento alle informazioni disponibili più attuali al momento della sua compilazione.

1.2 Simboli utilizzati

I seguenti simboli facilitano la lettura delle istruzioni per l'uso:

⚠ ATTENZIONE!

- **I testi che riportano questo simbolo contengono informazioni relative alla sicurezza e segnalano situazioni di pericolo e rischio di lesioni.**

Attenzione!

- I testi che riportano questo simbolo segnalano il rischio di danni al veicolo, all'iPod® o all'adattatore per iPod®.

Avvertenza

- I testi che riportano questo simbolo contengono ulteriori avvertenze e informazioni.

I testi in corsivo indicano gli argomenti che vengono trattati in modo più approfondito nel manuale dell'iPod®.

2 Informazioni sull'adattatore per iPod®

L'adattatore per iPod® collega l'iPod® con la radio o il sistema di navigazione radio del veicolo e rende possibile lo scambio di informazioni e comandi tra i due dispositivi.

Avvertenza

- Non è possibile l'utilizzo parallelo dell'adattatore per iPod® e del commutatore CD.

2.1 Caratteristiche e funzioni

Attraverso il collegamento diretto dell'iPod® con la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio, i brani memorizzati sull'iPod® possono essere riprodotti tramite gli altoparlanti del veicolo.

Il comando viene trasmesso attraverso gli elementi di comando della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio e rende possibile l'utilizzo delle seguenti funzioni:

- Selezione diretta e riproduzione da una a 5 liste di riproduzione programmata
- Riproduzione di tutti i brani memorizzati sull'iPod®
- Funzione SCAN
- Passaggio da una lista di riproduzione programmata all'altra
- Passaggio da un brano (track) all'altro all'interno di una lista di riproduzione programmata
- Scorrimento rapido (avanti e indietro) all'interno di un brano
- Riproduzione casuale (MIX)

Avvertenza

- Le informazioni riguardanti artista, brano, album e genere musicale memorizzate sull'iPod® non vengono elaborate dall'adattatore. Non è possibile effettuare una selezione dei brani secondo questi criteri di classificazione e ricerca e le informazioni non vengono visualizzate sul display della radio o del sistema di navigazione radio.

2.2 Compatibilità

L'adattatore per iPod® è compatibile con i dispositivi iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano e iPod® photo. Le caratteristiche e le funzioni dell'adattatore si riferiscono ai software disponibili più attuali dell'adattatore.

Avvertenza

- Future modificazioni del software o del firmware dell'iPod® possono introdurre caratteristiche e funzioni nuove non considerate in questo manuale.

2.3 Caricamento della batteria

Se l'iPod® è collegato con l'adattatore per iPod® e la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio è attivata, la batteria dell'iPod® viene caricata. Quando la batteria è completamente carica, il sistema passa automaticamente alla modalità di mantenimento. La ricarica della batteria dell'iPod® termina non appena la radio/il sistema di navigazione radio viene spento.

2.4 Manutenzione e assistenza dell'adattatore per iPod®

L'adattatore per iPod® non è soggetto ad usura e nel corso del normale funzionamento non richiede manutenzione. Nel caso in cui l'adattatore per iPod® dovesse risultare difettoso, è possibile sostituirlo rivolgendosi ad un partner Volkswagen. In caso di apertura della scatola dell'adattatore, il diritto di garanzia decade automaticamente.

3 Utilizzo dell'iPod® sul veicolo

Le diverse caratteristiche dell'iPod® non sono state sviluppate per l'utilizzo sul veicolo. Questo vale in particolare per le forti variazioni di temperatura che spesso si verificano all'interno dell'abitacolo. Si raccomanda pertanto di non lasciare a lungo l'iPod® sul veicolo, quando non viene utilizzato.

Avvertenza

- Temperature molto elevate o molto basse, che spesso si registrano all'interno del veicolo, possono danneggiare l'iPod® o influire sulle prestazioni del dispositivo.
- Per ulteriori informazioni sulle*temperature di utilizzo e conservazione*consultare il manuale d'uso dell'iPod®.

⚠ ATTENZIONE!

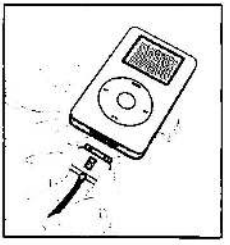
- **Il guidatore deve concentrarsi innanzi tutto sulla guida. In caso di distrazione del guidatore, possono verificarsi incidenti e lesioni.**
- **L'utilizzo dell'iPod® o le impostazioni da effettuare non devono rappresentare una fonte di distrazione. L'attenzione deve restare focalizzata sul traffico.**
- **L'iPod® deve essere utilizzato solo quando la viabilità, le condizioni meteorologiche e il traffico lo consentono senza causare distrazioni al guidatore.**
- **Regolare il volume in modo tale che sia sempre possibile riconoscere i segnali acustici provenienti dall'esterno, per es. la sirena della polizia o dei vigili del fuoco. Attenzione: rischio di incidenti!**

4 Collegamento dell'adattatore per iPod®

Collegamento:

Avvertenza

- Un iPod® nuovo o a lungo inutilizzato deve essere caricato secondo le istruzione contenute nel manuale dell'iPod® prima dell'utilizzo con l'adattatore.
- Per ottenere una riproduzione ottimale, è necessario attivare l'impostazione Regolazione volume*e disattivare EQ (Equalizer)* prima del collegamento con l'adattatore,*secondo le istruzioni*riportate nel manuale dell'iPod®.
- Se l'iPod® è collegato con l'adattatore,le funzioni dei tasti non sono attive.
- All'accensione dell'iPod®, *si attiva automaticamente* ⊂⊃ la riproduzione ripetuta. Al termine della riproduzione, la lista viene ripetuta nuovamente dall'inizio.



– Spegnere il veicolo e inserire la spina di collegamento dell'adattatore con il logo rivolto verso l'alto nella parte inferiore dell'iPod® assicurandosi che sia bloccata correttamente.

Dopo avere eseguito il collegamento, sul display dell'iPod® viene visualizzato brevemente il logo Volkswagen, quindi la versione del software dell'adattatore e il caricamento della batteria.

Nel caso in cui l'iPod® non venisse riconosciuto dopo il collegamento all'adattatore,*eseguire il reset del sistema* seguendo le istruzioni contenute nel relativo manuale.

Scollegamento:

– Spegnere il veicolo, premere il tasto di sblocco a sinistra e a destra sulla spina di collegamento ed estrarla dalla presa dell'iPod®.

5 Utilizzo delle liste di riproduzione programmata

Dopo aver collegato l'iPod® all'adattatore, si avvia automaticamente la ricerca dei brani e delle liste di riproduzione programmata disponibili. Le liste disponibili vengono ordinate prima in ordine numerico, poi in ordine alfabetico come tasto CD 1-5.

Per facilitare l'utilizzo delle liste di riproduzione programmata mentre il veicolo è in movimento, si raccomanda di creare da una a cinque liste (per es. 1 .... 5 ....) sull'iPod®. Le liste di riproduzione possono essere richiamate direttamente tramite la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio.

Tutti i brani memorizzati sull'iPod® sono assegnati al tasto CD 6.

Avvertenza

- Per ulteriori informazioni sulla creazione e gestione di liste di riproduzione programmata vedere il manuale d'uso dell'iPod®.

6 Utilizzo con radio / sistema di navigazione radio

L'utilizzo dell'iPod® avviene tramite i tasti della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio o attraverso il volante multifunzione, come per il commutatore CD.

L'utilizzo di seguito descritto, in base al tipo di radio / sistema di navigazione radio, può avvenire direttamente tramite i tasti del dispositivo o attraverso il comando di menu per il commutatore CD. Per informazioni dettagliate sulle funzioni degli elementi di comando della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio vedere le istruzioni per l'uso della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio nel capitolo "Commutatore CD".

Avvertenza

- Le definizioni utilizzate nel manuale di bordo del veicolo per indicare i tasti della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio o del volante multifunzione possono essere differenti da quelle riportate in queste istruzioni per l'uso.

6.1 Attivazione e disattivazione della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio:

La radio / il sistema di navigazione radio si attiva automaticamente all'accensione del veicolo. Estraendo la chiave di accensione, la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio si disattiva automaticamente.
Quando il veicolo è acceso, se necessario, la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio può essere disattivata / o manualmente. Quando la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio viene disattivata in modo manuale, all'accensione successiva non si attiva automaticamente.
Se necessario, la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio può essere attivato anche manualmente, senza inserire la chiave di accensione. In questo caso, la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio si spegne automaticamente dopo un'ora per non esaurire la batteria del veicolo.

Avvertenza

- Accendendo la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio, si attiva automaticamente anche l'iPod® collegato. La batteria dell'iPod® viene caricata.
- Dopo lo spegnimento e la nuova accensione del veicolo o della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, l'iPod® riprende la riproduzione dal punto in cui era stata interrotta. Sul display della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, indipendentemente dalla lista effettivamente riprodotta, viene quindi sempre visualizzato CD6. Questa visualizzazione viene mantenuta fino a quando non si seleziona un'altra lista.
- In base al tipo di radio / sistema di navigazione radio, l'iPod® si disattiva automaticamente circa 2-10 minuti dopo la disattivazione della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio.

6.2 Selezione dell'iPod®:

– Se l'unita della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio non contiene alcun CD, premere una volta il tasto CD per selezionare l'iPod®.
– Se l'unita della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio contiene un CD, premere due volte il tasto CD per selezionare l'iPod®.

Sul display viene visualizzato CD6, il numero e la durata del brano in riproduzione (TRACK).

Avvertenza

- Laradio / il sistema di navigazione radio visualizza sul display i numeri dei brani con un massimo di due cifre. Se si seleziona un brano con un numero di tre cifre, la prima cifra non viene visualizzata sul display della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio. Il numero visualizzato come "125" sul display dell'iPod® è visualizzato come "25" sul display della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio e dell'eventuale strumento combinato. Pertanto si consiglia di assegnare a ogni lista di riproduzione non più di 99 brani.

6.3 Riproduzione di brani dell'iPod®:

La riproduzione di brani dell'iPod® si effettua tramite i tasti della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, come per l'utilizzo del commutatore CD. Dopo aver selezionato l'iPod®, la riproduzione riprende dal punto in cui era stata interrotta. Sul display della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, indipendentemente dalla lista effettivamente riprodotta, viene quindi sempre visualizzato CD6. Questa visualizzazione viene mantenuta fino a quando non si seleziona un'altra lista.

6.4 Selezione di liste di riproduzione programmata dell'iPod®:

La selezione di liste di riproduzione dell'iPod® si effettua tramite i tasti della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, come per l'utilizzo del commutatore CD.

Il tasto CD o la funzione di menu (1)...(5) della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio sono automaticamente associati alle prime 5 playlist dell'iPod®.

Il tasto CD o la funzione di menu (6) della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio seleziona tutti i brani memorizzati sull'iPod® e li riproduce come una playlist.

Per informazioni dettagliate sulle funzioni degli elementi di comando della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio vedere le istruzioni per l'uso della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio nel capitolo "Commutatore CD".

Avvertenza

- Se si seleziona una lista di riproduzione dell'iPod® vuota o non disponibile, la riproduzione riprende automaticamente dalla lista disponibile successiva.
- Se si seleziona un'altra lista, in base alla radio / al sistema di navigazione radio, è possibile che per pochi secondi venga ancora riprodotto un brano della lista precedente. Questa funzione dipende dal sistema e non è da considerarsi un difetto.

6.5 Ricerca di un brano (avanti e indietro):

La ricerca di un brano (avanti e indietro) si effettua tramite il pulsante / la manopola o attraverso i tasti della funzione di menu della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, come per l'utilizzo del commutatore CD. Per informazioni dettagliate sulle funzioni degli elementi di comando della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio vedere le istruzioni per l'uso della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio nel capitolo "Commutatore CD".

Avvertenza

- La ricerca di un brano (avanti o indietro), in alcune radio / sistemi di navigazione radio, può essere effettuata con il pulsante / la manopola fino al numero 99. I brani con numero successivo al 99 devono essere selezionati tramite i tasti. Se si seleziona un brano con un numero di tre cifre, la prima cifra non viene visualizzata sul display della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio.
- Se la ricerca di un brano (avanti o indietro) viene ripetuta più volte consecutivamente, si causa un rallentamento e l'audio viene temporaneamente disattivato. È possibile che i brani saltati nella ricerca vengano riprodotti per qualche secondo.

6.6 Scorrimento rapido (avanti e indietro)

Lo scorrimento rapido (avanti e indietro) si effettua tramite i testi o le funzioni di menu (◀◀) (▶▶) della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio, come per l'utilizzo del commutatore CD. Nel caso in cui i tasti della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio non fossero disponibili, la funzione può essere selezionata tramite la pressione prolungata del tasto (◀) o (▶). Per informazioni dettagliate sulle funzioni degli elementi di comando della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio vedere le istruzioni per l'uso della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio nel capitolo "Commutatore CD".

6.7 Riproduzione automatica brani (SCAN):

Con la funzione SCAN è possibile avviare una ricerca che riproduce per qualche secondo ogni brano della lista selezionata.

- Attivare SCAN all'avvio della riproduzione automatica dei brani.
- Attivare nuovamente SCAN per selezionare il brano in riproduzione e per terminare la riproduzione automatica dei brani.

6.8 Riproduzione casuale (MIX):

La riproduzione casuale può essere attivata tramite il tasto MIX o il menu della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio e consente la riproduzione dei brani di una lista in successione casuale.

Avvertenza

- Se la funzione Brani in ordine casuale è già attiva sull'iPod® *al momento del collegamento*, viene mantenuta nel funzionamento con la radio / il sistema di navigazione radio e può essere disattivata premendo due volte il tasto MIX.
- I numeri dei brani visualizzati sul display della radio / del sistema di navigazione radio vengono assegnati in modo progressivo. Sul display dell'iPod® viene visualizzato il numero del brano all'interno della lista di riproduzione. In questo modo i numeri visualizzati sul display dei due dispositivi sono diversi.

(NL) Gebruiksaanwijzing

Inhoud

1 Inleiding ---- 27
1.1 Stand van de techniek ---- 27
1.2 Gebruikte symbolen ---- 27
2 Informatie over de adapter voor iPod® ---- 28
2.1 Eigenschappen en functies ---- 28
2.2 Compatibiliteit ---- 28
2.3 Acculading ---- 28
2.4 Onderhoud en service van de adapter voor iPod® ---- 28
3 Gebruik van de iPod® in het voertuig ---- 28
4 Aansluiting van de adapter voor iPod® ---- 29
5 Gebruik van weergavelijsten ---- 29
6 Bediening met het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem ---- 30
6.1 In- en uitschakelen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem ---- 30
6.2 Selecteren van de iPod® ---- 30
6.3 Afspelen van iPod®-titels ---- 30
6.4 Selecteren van iPod®-weergavelijsten ---- 31
6.5 Titelsprong voor- en achteruit ---- 31
6.6 Snel vooruit- en achteruitspoelen ---- 31
6.7 Automatisch kort afspelen (SCAN) ---- 31
6.8 Toevallige weergave (MIX) ---- 31

1 Inleiding

De adapter voor iPod® is een elektronische module die de verbinding tussen de iPod® en radio/radionavigatieysteem tot stand brengt. Hij maakt de bediening van de iPod® via het toetsenbord van de radio/van het radionavigatiesysteem en de weergave van de op de iPod® opgeslagen titels via de radio/het radionavigatiesysteem van het voertuig mogelijk.

Deze gebruiksaanwijzing moet u het gebruik van de adapter voor iPod® met de iPod® vergemakkelijken en verklaren. Gelieve de tijd te nemen om de gebruiksaanwijzing aandachtig te lezen en bewaar deze gebruiksaanwijzing voor later gebruik. Gelieve deze gebruiksaanwijzing bij de verkoop van het voertuig aan de nieuwe eigenaar te geven.

Wordt hierna in de gebruiksaanwijzing over de iPod® gesproken, dan geldt dit voor de volgende toestellen iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano en iPod® Photo.

Aanvullende informatie over de iPod® vindt u in de bijgeleverde handleiding.

1.1 Stand van de techniek

Deze gebruiksaanwijzing beschrijft de actueelste stand van de techniek. Door verdere ontwikkeling van de infotainmentsystemen kan het in de toekomst tot verschillen tussen deze gebruiksaanwijzing en het actueel geïnstalleerde product komen. Daarom zijn alle wettige aanspraken uitgesloten, omdat alle informatie, die op het moment van het opstellen van de gebruiksaanwijzing gebruikt werden, hiervoor gebruikt werd.

1.2 Gebruikte symbolen

De volgende symbolen vergemakkelijken u het lezen van de gebruiksaanwijzing:

⚠ OPGELET!

- **Teksten met dit symbool bevatten informatie over uw veiligheid en wijzen op mogelijke gevaren voor ongevallen en verwondingen.**

Opgelet!

- Teksten met dit symbool wijzen op mogelijke schade aan het voertuig, de iPod® of de adapter voor iPod®.

Tip

- Teksten met dit symbool bevatten bijkomende aanwijzingen en informatie.

Cursief gedrukte teksten wijzen op onderwerpen die in de iPod®-handleiding nader behandeld worden.

2 Informatie over de adapter voor iPod®

De adapter voor iPod® verbindt de iPod® met de radio resp. het radionavigatiesysteem van het voertuig, zo wordt de uitwisseling van informatie en besturingsbevelen tussen de toestellen mogelijk gemaakt.

Tip

- Het parallelle gebruik van de adapter voor iPod® met een cd-wisselaar is niet mogelijk.

2.1 Eigenschappen en functies

Door de directe verbinding van de iPod® en het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem kunnen de op de iPod® opgeslagen titels via de voertuigluidsprekers weergegeven worden.

Hierbij gebeurt de besturing via de bedieningselementen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem en wordt het gebruik van de volgende functies mogelijk gemaakt:

- Direct selecteren en afspelen van max. 5 weergavelijsten
- Afspelen van alle op de iPod® opgeslagen titels
- SCAN-functie
- Wisselen tussen weergavelijsten
- Wisselen van de titel (track) binnen een weergavelijst
- Snel vooruit- en terugspoelen binnen een titel
- Toevallige weergave (MIX-play)

Tip

- Op de iPod® opgeslagen informatie over uitvoerder, titel, album en genre worden door de adapter voor iPod® niet verwerkt. Het selecteren van titels volgens deze sorteer- en zoekcriteria is niet mogelijk en er volgt geen displayaanduiding in het radio- resp. radionavigatiesysteem.

2.2 Compatibiliteit

De adapter voor iPod® is compatibel met de volgende toestellen iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano en iPod® Photo. De eigenschappen en functies van de adapter hebben betrekking op de actuele softwarestand van de adapter.

Tip

- Toekomstige wijzigingen van de softwarestand resp. van de iPod®-firmware kunnen tot afwijkende eigenschappen en functies leiden, waarmee in deze gebruiksaanwijzing geen rekening gehouden werd.

2.3 Acculading

Is de iPod® met de adapter voor iPod® verbonden en het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem is ingeschakeld, dan wordt de accu van de iPod® geladen. Zodra de accu vol is, schakelt het systeem op "behouden laadcapaciteit". De lading van de accu van de iPod® wordt beëindigd zodra de radio/het radionavigatiesysteem uitgeschakeld wordt.

2.4 Onderhoud en service van de adapter voor iPod®

De adapter voor iPod® is niet aan slijtage onderhevig en heeft bij het normale gebruik geen onderhoud nodig. In het geval van een defect moet de adapter voor iPod® door een Volkswagen-partner vervangen worden. Door het openen van de adapterbox vervalt de aanspraak op garantie.

3 Gebruik van de iPod® in het voertuig

Alle varianten van de iPod® werden niet voor het gebruik in het voertuig ontwikkeld, dit geldt in het bijzonder voor grote temperatuurschommelingen, zoals die in het voertuig kunnen voorkomen. Daarom laat u uw iPod® het best niet in het voertuig als u het voor langere tijd verlaat.

Tip

- Heel hoge of heel lage temperaturen, zoals die binnenin het voertuig voorkomen, kunnen uw iPod® beschadigen en/of de werking van het toestel beïnvloeden.
- Meer informatie over het thema *Bedrijfs- en opslagtemperaturen* vindt u in de gebruiksaanwijzing van de iPod®.

⚠ OPGELET!

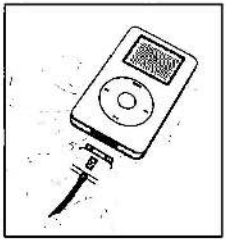
- **Richt uw aandacht op de eerste plaats op het autorijden. Als de bestuurder afgeleid wordt, kan dat ongevallen en verwondingen veroorzaken.**
- **Laat u niet door instellingen of door het gebruik van de iPod® van het verkeersgebeuren afleiden.**
- **Gebruik de iPod® alleen als de weg, het weer en het verkeer dit toestaan en u niet afgeleid wordt.**
- **Selecteer het volume zodanig dat akoestische signalen van buiten, b.v. de sirene van politie en brandweer, altijd goed hoorbaar zijn. Gevaar voor ongevallen!**

4 Aansluiting van de adapter voor iPod®

Aansluiting:

Tip

- Bij nieuwe of lange tijd niet-gebruikte iPods moet de iPod® voor het gebruik met de adapter voor iPod® volgens de aanwijzingen in de iPod®-gebruiksaanwijzing geladen worden.
- Om een optimale weergave te bereiken, moet u aan de iPod® voor het aansluiten aan de adapter voor iPod® conform de iPod®-handleiding de instelling *Volume aanpassen* activeren en de *EQ* (equalizer) deactiveren.
- Is de iPod® met de adapter voor iPod® verbonden, dan hebben de toetsen aan de iPod® geen functie.
- De *herhaalde weergave* ⟲ wordt bij het inschakelen van de iPod® automatisch geactiveerd. Zodra het einde van een weergavelijst bereikt is, wordt die opnieuw van voren afgespeeld.



– Schakel het contact van het voertuig uit en steek de aansluitstekker van de adapter voor iPod®, met het logo naar onderen wijzend, onderaan in de iPod® tot hij hoorbaar inklikt.

Na het aansluiten van de iPod® wordt gedurende korte tijd het Volkswagen-logo op het display van de iPod® weergegeven. Daarna verschijnt de softwareversie van de adapter voor iPod® en het laden van de accu wordt weergegeven.

Als de iPod® na het aansluiten aan de adapter voor iPod® niet herkend wordt, voer dan een *reset van de iPod®* volgens de aanwijzingen in de iPod®-gebruiksaanwijzing uit.

Verbreken:

– Schakel het contact van het voertuig uit, druk op de ontgrendelingsknop links en rechts aan de aansluitstekker en trek hem uit de aansluitbus van de iPod®.

5 Gebruik van weergavelijsten

Na het aansluiten van de iPod® aan de adapter voor iPod® volgt automatisch een vraag naar opgeslagen titels en voorhanden weergavelijsten. Hierbij worden voorhanden weergavelijsten eerst in numerieke en daarna in alfabetische volgorde als toets CD 1-5 toegewezen.

Daarom en om het gebruik van de weergavelijsten tijdens het rijden te vergemakkelijken, is het aan te raden om tot max. vijf weergavelijsten (b.v. 1 .... tot 5 ....) op de iPod® aan te leggen. Deze weergavelijsten kunnen via de radio resp. het radionavigatiesysteem direct opgeroepen worden.

Aan de toets CD 6 zijn alle op de iPod® opgeslagen titels toegewezen.

Tip

- Meer informatie over het opstellen en beheren van weergavelijsten vindt u in de iPod®-gebruiksaanwijzing.

6 Bediening met het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem

De bediening van de iPod® gebeurt met de knoppen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem resp. de knoppen van het multifunctionele stuurwiel, zoals bij de bediening van een cd-wisselaar.

De hierna beschreven bediening kan, afhankelijk van het type van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem, ofwel direct met de knoppen van het toestel of via de menusturing voor de cd-wisselaar gebeuren. Gedetailleerde informatie over de functies van de bedieningselementen aan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem vindt u in de gebruiksaanwijzing van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem in het hoofdstuk "Cd-wisselaar".

Tip

- De knopomschrijvingen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem of het multifunctionele stuurwiel in de boorddocumenten van uw voertuig kunnen soms van de in deze handleiding gebruikte omschrijvingen afwijken.

6.1 In- en uitschakelen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem

Het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem wordt bij het inschakelen van het contact automatisch ingeschakeld. Bij het uittrekken van de contactsleutel wordt het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem automatisch uitgeschakeld. Als het contact ingeschakeld is, kan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem indien gewenst manueel uitgeschakeld worden. Werd het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem manueel uitgeschakeld, dan wordt het bij het volgende inschakelen van het contact niet automatisch ingeschakeld.
Indien nodig kan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem ook manueel, zonder ingestoken contactsleutel, ingeschakeld worden. In dit geval schakelt het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem, om de voertuigaccu te sparen, automatisch na 1 uur uit.

Tip

- Door het inschakelen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem wordt automatisch ook de verbonden iPod® ingeschakeld. De accu van de iPod® wordt geladen.
- Na het uit- en opnieuw inschakelen van het contact of het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem zet de iPod® de weergave op de laatst gespeelde positie voort. Op het display van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem wordt dan onafhankelijk van de werkelijke weergavelijst altijd CD6 weergegeven. Deze indicatie blijft tot het wisselen van de weergavelijst bestaan.
- Afhankelijk van het type radio-/radionavigatiesysteem wordt de iPod® circa 2-10 minuten na het uitschakelen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem automatisch uitgeschakeld.

6.2 Selecteren van de iPod®:

- Bevindt er zich geen cd in het loopwerk van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem, druk dan voor het kiezen van de iPod® een keer op de cd-toets.
- Bevindt er zich in het loopwerk van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem een cd, druk dan voor het kiezen van de iPod® twee keer op de cd-toets.

Op het display verschijnt CD6, nummer en weergaveduur van de actuele titel (TRACK) worden weergegeven.

Tip

- Het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem geeft maximaal tweecijferige titelnummers op het display weer. Bij het kiezen van een titel met drie cijfers wordt het eerste cijfer op het display van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem onderdrukt. De weergave "125" op het display van de iPod® wordt op het display van hetradio-/radionavigatiesysteem en evt. in het combi-instrument slechts als "25" weergegeven. Daarom wordt aangeraden om aan de weergavelijsten slechts 99 titels toe te wijzen.

6.3 Afspelen van iPod®-titels:

Het afspelen van iPod®-titels gebeurt zoals bij de bediening van een cd-wisselaar met de knoppen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem. Na het kiezen van de iPod® (zie onderaan) zet de iPod® de weergave op de laatst afgespeelde plaats voort. Op het display van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem wordt dan onafhankelijk van de werkelijke weergavelijst altijd CD6 weergegeven. Deze indicatie blijft tot het wisselen van de weergavelijst bestaan.

6.4 Selecteren van iPod®-weergavelijsten:

Het selecteren van iPod®-weergavelijsten gebeurt zoals bij de bediening van een cd-wisselaar met de knoppen van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem.

De knop resp. de menufunctie CD (1)...(5) van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem is automatisch met de eerste vijf afspeellijsten van de iPod® geprogrammeerd.

De knop resp. de menufunctie CD (6) van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem kiest alle opgeslagen titels van de iPod® en speelt die als een afspeellijst af.

Gedetailleerde informatie over de functies van de bedieningselementen aan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem vindt u in de gebruiksaanwijzing van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem in het hoofdstuk "Cd-wisselaar".

Tip

- Wordt een lege of niet-voorhanden weergavelijst van de iPod® gekozen, dan wordt de weergave automatisch met de volgende beschikbare weergavelijst voortgezet.
- Bij het wisselen van de weergavelijst kan, afhankelijk van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem, gedurende korte tijd nog een titel van de vorige weergavelijst te horen zijn. Deze functie is afhankelijk van het systeem en is geen teken van een defect.

6.5 Titelsprong voor- en achteruit:

Titelsprong voor- en achteruit gebeurt zoals bij de bediening van een cd-wisselaar via de draai-/drukknop of de toetsen resp. menufuncties (◀) (▶) van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem. Gedetailleerde informatie over de functies van de bedieningselementen aan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem vindt u in de gebruiksaanwijzing van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem in het hoofdstuk "Cd-wisselaar".

Tip

- Titelsprong vooruit resp. achteruit kan bij sommige radio-/radionavigatiesystemen slechts tot titelnummer 99 met de draai-/drukknop uitgevoerd worden. Titels met hogere titelnummers moeten met de knoppen gekozen worden. Bij het kiezen van een titel met drie cijfers wordt het eerste cijfer op het display van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem onderdrukt.
- Bij het heel snel na elkaar indrukken van titelsprong vooruit resp. achteruit kan het tot vertragingen komen en de audioweergave wordt langere tijd uitgeschakeld. Onder bepaalde omstandigheden worden overgeslagen titels kort afgespeeld.

6.6 Snel vooruit- en achteruitspoelen:

Snel vooruit- en terugspoelen gebeurt zoals bij de bediening van een cd-wisselaar via de draai-/drukknop of de toetsen resp. menufuncties (◀◀) (▶▶) van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem. Als de knoppen aan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem niet voorhanden zijn, dan kan de functie door het lang indrukken van de toets (◀) resp. (▶) gekozen worden. Gedetailleerde informatie over de functies van de bedieningselementen aan het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem vindt u in de gebruiksaanwijzing van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem in het hoofdstuk "Cd-wisselaar".

6.7 Automatisch kort afspelen (SCAN):

Met de SCAN-functie kan een zoekloop gestart worden waarbij elke titel van de actuele weergavelijst enkele seconden lang afgespeeld wordt.

- Activeer SCAN voor het starten van de automatische titelafspeelfunctie
- Kies opnieuw SCAN om de actueel afgespeelde titel te kiezen en het automatisch kort afspelen van titels te beëindigen.

6.8 Toevallige weergave (MIX):

De toevallige weergave kan met een toets (MIX) of in het menu van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem geactiveerd worden en maakt de weergave van de titels van een weergavelijst in toevallige volgorde mogelijk.

Tip

- Is aan de iPod® al bij de aansluiting de functie *Toevallige titels* geactiveerd, dan wordt die functie direct ook voor het gebruik met het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem overgenomen en kan dan door twee keer indrukken van de toets MIX gedeactiveerd worden.
- De titelnummers op het display van het radio-/radionavigatiesysteem worden hierbij doorlopend meegeteld. Op het display van de iPod® wordt het nummer van de titel binnen de weergavelijst weergegeven. Daardoor komt het tot afwijkende indicaties op de displays van de beide toestellen.

(S) Bruksanvisning

Innehåll

1 Inledning ---- 32
1.1 Teknikens ståndpunkt ---- 32
1.2 Använda symboler ---- 32
2 Informationer över adaptern för iPod® ---- 33
2.1 Egenskaper och funktioner ---- 33
2.2 Kompatiblitet ---- 33
2.3 Ackumulatorladdning ---- 33
2.4 Underhåll och service för adaptern för iPod® ---- 33
3 Användning av iPoden i bilen ---- 33
4 Anslutning av adaptern för iPod® ---- 34
5 Användning av musiklistor ---- 34
6 Manövrering med radio-/radionavigationssystem ---- 35
6.1 Till- och frånkoppling av radio/ radionavigationssystemet ---- 35
6.2 Välja iPoden ---- 35
6.3 Spelning av iPod® titlar ---- 35
6.4 Välja frln iPod® musiklistor ---- 36
6.5 Titelhopp framlt och baklt ---- 36
6.6 Snabb flyttning framlt och baklt ---- 36
6.7 Titel-provspelningsautomatik (SCAN) ---- 36
6.8 Slumpvis spelning (MIX) ---- 36

1 Inledning

Adaptern för iPod® är en elektronisk modul som upprättar förbindelsen mellan iPod® och radio/ radionavigationssystemet. Den möjliggör manövreringen av iPod® via tangentbordet till radio/ radionavigationssystemet och spelning av de på iPod® sparade titlarna med radio/ radionavigationssystemet i bilen.

Denna bruksanvisning skall underlätta och förklara hanteringen av adaptern för iPod® med iPoden. Ta dig tid för att läsa bruksanvisningen omsorgsfullt och förvara denna för senare uppkommande frågor. Var snäll och ge denna bruksanvisning till den nya fordonsägaren vid försäljning av fordonet.

Talas i fortsättningen om iPod® i bruksanvisningen, gäller detta för följande instrument iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano och iPod® Photo.

Kompletterande förklaringar till iPod® finns i den tillhörande handboken.

1.1 Teknikens ståndpunkt

Teknikens aktuellaste ståndpunkt ligger till grund för denna bruksanvisning. Genom vidareutveckling av Infotainmentsystemen, kan det i framtiden uppstå skillnader mellan denna bruskanvisning och den aktuellt installerade produkten. Av detta skäl är alla rättsanspråk uteslutna, eftersom alla informationer, som vid tidpunkten för framställningen av bruksanvisningen fanns tillgängliga, ligger till grund.

1.2 Använda symboler

De följande symbolerna underlättar läsningen av bruksanvisningen:

⚠ VIKTIGT!

- **Texter med denna symbol innehåller informationer för din säkerhet och hänvisar till möjliga olycksfalls- och skaderisker.**

Se upp!

- Texter med denna symbol gör dig uppmärksam på möjliga skador på bilen, iPoden resp. adaptern för iPoden.

Observera

- Texter med denna symbol innehåller ytterligare anvisningar och information.

Kursivt skrivna texter hänvisar till teman som behandlas närmare i iPod® handboken.

2 Informationer över adaptern för iPod®

Adaptern för iPod® förbinder iPoden med radion resp. radionavigationssystemet i bilen; så möjliggörs utbytet av informationer och styrkommandon mellan instrumenten.

Observera

- Parallelldrift av adaptern för iPod® med en CD-växlare är inte möjlig.

2.1 Egenskaper och funktioner

Genom den direkta förbindelsen av iPod® och radio/ radionavigationssystemet kan de på iPoden sparade titlarna återges över bilens högtalare.

Därvid sköts styrningen via radio/ radionavigationssystemet manöverdon och möjliggör användningen av följande funktioner:

- Direkt välja och spela från upp till 5 musiklistor
- Spela alla på iPoden sparade titlarna
- SCAN-funktion
- Växel mellan musiklistorna
- Växel av titel (track) inom en musiklista
- Snabb flyttning framåt och bakåt inom en titel
- Slumpvis spelning (MIX-play)

Observera

- På iPoden sparad information över musiker, titlar, album och genre bearbetas inte av adaptern för iPoden - valet av titlar efter dessa sorterings- och sökkriterier är inte möjligt och ingen visning i displayen till radio- resp. radionavigationssytemet sker.

2.2 Kompatiblitet

Adaptern för iPod® är kompatibel med följande instrument iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano och iPod® Photo. Egenskaper och funktioner hos adaptern hänför sig till den aktuella mjukvaruversionen för adaptern.

Observera

- Framtida ändringar av mjukvaruversionen resp. iPod® firmware kan leda till avvikande egenskaper och funktioner, som det inte tagits hänsyn till i denna bruksanvisning.

2.3 Ackumulatorladdning

Är iPoden förbunden med adaptern för iPod® och radio/ radionavigationssystemet är tillkopplat, laddas ackumulatorn till iPoden. Så snart som ackumulatorn har uppnått sin fullständiga kapacitet, kopplar systemet om till uppehållande av laddningen. Laddningen av ackumulatonr till iPod® avslutas så snart som radio/radionavigationssystemet kopplas från.

2.4 Underhåll och service för adaptern för iPod®

Adaptern för iPod® undergår inget slitage och behöver inget underhåll vid normal drift. I händelse av en defekt skall adaptern för iPod® bytas ut av en Volkswagen partner. Om adapterboxen öppnas slutar garantin att gälla.

3 Användning av iPoden i bilen

Alla varianter av iPoden utvecklades inte för användning i bilen, detta gäller speciellt vid stora variationer i temperaturen, vilket kan förekomma i bilen. Lämna av detta skäl inte din iPod® i bilen, när du lämnar denna för längre tid.

Observera

- Mycket höga resp. låga temperaturer, som förekommer inne i bilen, kan skada din iPod® och/ eller negativt påverka instrumentets prestationsförmåga.
- Ytterligare anvisningar till temat *drifts- och lagertemperaturer* erhåller du i användarhandboken till iPoden.

⚠ VIKTIGT!

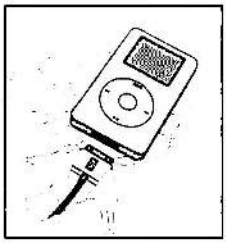
- **Tillägna i första hand bilkörningen din uppmärksamhet. Om föraren distraheras kan olyckor och personskador bli följden.**
- **Låt inte din uppmärksamhet avledas från vad som händer i trafiken genom inställning eller användning av iPod®.**
- **Använd iPod® endast när väg-, väder- och trafikförhållanden tillåter det och du inte blir distraherad.**
- **Välj ljudstyrkan så att akustiska signaler utifrån, t.ex. sirenen från polis och brandkår, alltid kan höras ordentligt - olycksfallsrisk!**

4 Anslutning av adaptern för iPod®

Anslutning:

Observera

- Vid nya eller under längre tid ej använda iPoder skall denna, före användning med adaptern för iPod®, laddas enlig iPod® handboken.
- För att uppnå en optimal återgivning, bör du före anslutningen till adaptern för iPod® aktivera inställningen *Anpassa ljudstyrka* och inaktivera *EQ* (Equalizer) på iPoden enligt iPod® handboken.
- Är iPoden förbunden med adaptern för iPod®, har knapparna på iPoden ingen funktion.
- *Upprepad spelning* ⟲ aktiveras vid tillkoppling av iPoden automatiskt - så snart som slutet på en musiklista uppnåtts, spelas denna åter från början.



– Koppla från tändningen på bilen och stick in anslutningsstickförbindningen till adaptern för iPod®, med logotypen pekande uppåt, på undersidan av iPoden tills den kännbart går in i rätt läge.

Efter anslutningen av iPoden visas Volkswagen logotypen kort på iPodens display. Sedan visas mjukvaruversionen för adaptern för iPod® och laddningen av ackumulatorn.

Skulle iPoden inte identifieras efter anslutningen av adaptern för iPod®, gör du en *Återställning av iPoden* enlig iPod® handboken.

Skilja från:

– Koppla från tändningen till bilen, tryck uppreglingsknapparna till vänster och till höger om anslutningsstickförbindningen och dra ut den ur anslutningsuttaget på iPoden.

5 Användning av musiklistor

Efter anslutningen av iPoden vid adaptern för iPod® sker automatiskt förfrågan efter sparade titlar och förekommande musiklistor. Därvid tillordnas förekommande musiklistor först i numerisk och sedan i alfabetisk ordningsföljd som knapp CD 1-5.

Av detta skäl och för att underlätta användningen av musiklistorna under bildrift, rekommenderar vi att anlägga upp till fem musiklistor (t.ex. 1 .... till 5 ....) på iPoden. Dessa musiklistor kan hämtas direkt via radio resp. radionavigationssystemet.

Knappen CD 6 har tillordnast alla på iPod® sparade titlar.

Observera

- Ytterligare informationer för att upprätta och förvalta musiklistor finner du i iPod® handboken.

6 Manövrering med radio-/radionavigationssystem

Manövreringen av iPoden sker via knapparna till radio/ radionavigationssystemet resp. knapparna till multifunktionsratten som vid manövreringen av en CD-växlare.

Den i det följande beskrivna manövreringen kan, beroende av typen av radio/ radionavigationssystem, antingen ske via knapparna på instrumentet eller via menystyrningen för CD-växlaren. Detaljerade informationer över funktionerna till manöverdonen på radio/ radionavigationssystemet framgår av bruksanvisningen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet i kapitlet "CD-växlare".

Observera

- Beläggningen av knapparna i bilens instruktionsbok för radio/ radionavigationssystemet eller multifunktionsratten kan eventuellt avvika från de i denna bruksanvisning använda beteckningarna.

6.1 Till- och frånkoppling av radio/ radionavigationssystemet:

Radio/ radionavigationssystemet kopplas till automatiskt vid tillkopplingen av tändningen. När tändnyckeln dras ur kopplas radio/ radionavigationssystemet automatiskt från.
Vid tillkopplad tändning kan radio/ radionavigationssystemet vid behov kopplas från manuellt. Kopplades radio/ radionavigationssystemet från manuellt, kopplas den vid nästa tillkoppling av tändningen inte automatiskt till.
Vid behov kan radio/radionavigationssystemet också kopplas till manuellt, utan isatt tändnyckel. I detta fall kopplas radio/ radionavigationssystemet automatiskt från efter 1 timme, för att spara på bilens batteri.

Observera

- Med tillkoppling av radio/ radionavigationssystemet kopplas också den förbundna iPoden automatiskt till. Ackumulatorn till iPoden laddas.
- Efter från- och åter tillkoppling av tändningen eller radio/ radionavigationssystemet, fortsätter iPoden återgivningen vid det ställe som spelades sist. I displayet till radio/ radionavigationssystemet visas sedan oberoende av den verkliga musiklistan alltid CD6. Denna indikering består till byte av musiklistan.
- Beroende på typen av radio/ radionavigationssystem kopplas iPoden från automatiskt cirka 2-10 minuter efter frånkopplingen av radio/ radionavigationssystemet.

6.2 Välja iPoden:

- Befinner sig ingen CD i enhetsöppningen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet, trycker du för att välja iPoden en gång på CD-knappen.
- Befinner sig en CD i enhetsöppningen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet, trycker du för att välja iPoden två gånger på CD-knappen.

I displayen visas CD6, nummer och speltid för den aktuella titeln (TRACK).

Observera

- Radio/ radionavigationssystemet visar endast maximalt tvåsiffriga titelnummer i displayen. När man väljer en titel med ett tresiffrigt nummer, undertrycks den första platsen i displayen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet. Indikeringen "125" i displayen till iPoden, visas i displayen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet och ev. i kombiinstrument endast som "25". Av detta skäl rekommenderar vi att tillordna musklistorna maximalt 99 titlar.

6.3 Spelning av iPod® titlar:

Spelningen av iPod® titlar sker som vid manövreringen av en CD-växlare via knapparna till radio/ radionavigationssystemet. Efter valet av iPoden (se ovan) fortsätter iPoden återgivningen vid det ställe som spelades sist. I displayet till radio/ radionavigationssystemet visas sedan oberoende av den verkliga musiklistan alltid CD6. Denna indikering består till byte av musiklistan.

6.4 Välja från iPod® musiklistor:

Valet från iPod® musiklistor sker som vid manövreringen av en CD-växlare via knapparna till radio/ radionavigationssystemet.

Knappen resp. menyfunktionen CD (1)...(5) till radio/ radionavigationssystemet är automatiskt belagda med de första fem musiklistorna på iPoden.

Knappen resp. menyfunktionen CD (6) till radio/ radionavigationssystemet väljer alla sparade titlar på iPoden och spelar dessa som en musiklista.

Detaljerade informationer över funktionerna till manöverdonen på radio/ radionavigationssystemet framgår av bruksanvisningen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet i kapitlet "CD-växlare".

Observera

- Väljs en tom eller ej förefintlig musiklista på iPoden, fortsätts återgivningen automatiskt med nästa disponibla musiklista.
- Vid byte av musiklistan kan beroende av radio/ radionavigationssystemet, en titel från den föregående muskilistan höras en kort stund. Denna funktion är systemrelaterad och inget tecken på en defekt.

6.5 Titelhopp framåt och bakåt:

Titelhopp framåt och bakåt görs som vid manövreringen av en CD-växlare via vredet/tryckknappen eller knapparna resp. menyfunktionerna (◀) (▶) till radio/ radionavigationssystemet. Detaljerade informationer över funktionerna till manöverdonen på radio/ radionavigationssystemet framgår av bruksanvisningen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet i kapitlet "CD-växlare".

Observera

- Titelhopp framåt resp. bakåt kan för några radio/ radionavigationssystemet endast göras upp till titelnummer 99 med vredet/tryckknappen. Titlar med högre titelnummer måste väljas med knapparna. När man väljer en titel med ett tresiffrigt nummer, undertrycks den första platsen i displayen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet.
- Vid mycket snabbt upprepad manövrering av titelhopp framåt resp. bakåt kan det uppstå fördröjningar och ljudutgivningen stumkopplas för en längre tid. Under vissa villkor spelas överhoppade titlar en kort stund.

6.6 Snabb flyttning framåt och bakåt:

Snabb flyttning framåt och bakåt görs som vid manövreringen av en CD-växlare via knapparna resp. menyfunktionerna (◀◀) (▶▶) till radio/ radionavigationssystemet. Skulle dessa knappar på radio/ radionavigationssystemet inte finnas, kan funktionen väljas genom att länge trycka på knappen (◀) resp. (▶). Detaljerade informationer över funktionerna till manöverdonen på radio/ radionavigationssystemet framgår av bruksanvisningen till radio/ radionavigationssystemet i kapitlet "CD-växlare".

6.7 Titel-provspelningsautomatik (SCAN):

Med SCAN-funktionen kan en sökning startas, vid vilken varje titet i den aktuella musiklistan provspelas under några sekunder.

- Aktivera SCAN för att starta titel-provspelningsautomatiken.
- Välj SCAN på nytt för att välja den provspelade titeln och avsluta titel-provspelningsautomatiken.

6.8 Slumpvis spelning (MIX):

Slumpvis spelning kan aktiveras med en knapp (MIX) eller i menyn till radio/ radionavigationssystemet och möjliggör spelningen av titlarna i en musiklista i slumpartad ordningsföljd.

Observera

- Är på iPoden redan vid anslutningen funktionen *Slumpartad titel* aktiverad, övertas denna också för driften med radio/ radionavigationssystemet och kan sedan inaktiveras genom att trycka två gånger på knappen MIX.
- Titelnumren i displayen till radio/ radionvaigationssystemet räknas därvid med fortlöpande. I displayen till iPoden visas numret på titeln inom musiklistan. Därigenom uppstår avvikande indikeringar på displayerna till de båda instrumenten.

(CZ) Návod k použití

Obsah

1 Úvod ---- 37
1.1 Stav techniky ---- 37
1.2 Použité symboly ---- 37
2 Informace k adaptéru k iPod® ---- 38
2.1 Vlastnosti a funkce ---- 38
2.2 Kompatibilita ---- 38
2.3 Nabíjení akumulátoru ---- 38
2.4 Údržba a servis adaptéru k iPod® ---- 38
3 Použití iPod® ve vozidle ---- 38
4 Připojení adaptéru k iPod® ---- 39
5 Využití seznamů nahrávek ---- 39
6 Ovládání pomocí rádia/radionavigačního systému ---- 40
6.1 Zapnutí a vypnutí rádia/ radionavigačního systému ---- 40
6.2 Navolení iPod® ---- 40
6.3 Reprodukce titulů iPod® ---- 40
6.4 Výběr seznamů nahrávek iPod® ---- 41
6.5 Přeskakování titulů vpřed a vzad ---- 41
6.6 Rychlý dopředný a zpětný posun ---- 41
6.7 Automatické přehrávání titulů (SCAN)) ---- 41
6.8 Nahodilá reprodukce (MIX) ---- 41

1 Úvod

Adaptér k iPod® je elektronický modul, který vytváří spojení mezi iPod® a rádiem/radionavigačním systémem. Tento adaptér umožňuje obsluhu iPod® přes klávesnici rádia/radionavigačního systému a reprodukci titulů uložených na iPod® přes rádio/radionavigační systém vozidla.

Tento návod k použití Vám má ulehčit a objasnit zacházení s adaptérem k iPod® s iPod. Přečtěte si tento návod k obsluze pečlivě v klidu a uschovejte si jej pro eventuální pozdější otázky. Při prodeji vozidla předejte prosím tento návod k použití novému majiteli vozidla.

Pokud se v návodu k použití dále hovoří o iPod®, platí tento název pro následující přístroje iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano a iPod® Photo.

Doplňující informace k iPod® najdete v příslušné příručce.

1.1 Stav techniky

Tento návod k použití vychází z nejaktuálnějšího stavu techniky. Díky neustálému vývoji informačních systémů se mohou v budoucnosti objevit rozdíly mezi tímto návodem k použití a aktuálně nainstalovaným výrobkem. Z tohoto důvodu jsou příslušné právní nároky vyloučeny. V době vyhotovení návodu k použití jsme totiž měli všechny informace, které byly k návodu potřebné.

1.2 Požité symboly

Následující symboly Vám usnadní orientaci při čtení návodu k obsluze:

⚠ POZOR!

- **Texty doprovázené tímto symbolem obsahují informace týkající se Vaší bezpečnosti, a upozorňují Vás na hrozící nebezpečí nehod a zranění.**

Pozor!

- Texty s tímto symbolem upozorňují na možná poškození Vašeho vozidla, iPod® resp. adaptéru k iPod®.

Upozornění

- Texty s tímto symbolem obsahují další upozornění a informace.

Texty psané kurzívou poukazují na témata, která jsou podrobněji zpracována v příručce iPod®.

2 Informace k adaptéru k iPod®

Adaptér k iPod® spojuje iPod® s rádiem resp. radionavigačním systémem vozidla, což umožňuje výměnu informací a ovládacích povelů mezi přístroji.

Upozornění

- Paralelní provoz adaptéru k iPod® a CD měniče není možný.

2.1 Vlastnosti a funkce

Díky přímému spojení iPod® s rádiem/ radionavigačním systémem lze přes reproduktory vozidla přehrát tituly uložené na iPod®.

Ovládání se přitom uskutečňuje přes obslužné prvky rádia/ radionavigačního systému a umožňuje využití následujících funkcí:

- Přímé navolení a reprodukce až 5 seznamů nahrávek
- Reprodukce všech titulů uložených na iPod®
- Funkce SCAN
- Přechod mezi seznamy nahrávek
- Změna titulu (Tracks) v rámci seznamu nahrávek
- Rychlý dopředný posun a zpětný posun v rámci jednoho titulu
- Nahodilá reprodukce (MIX-Play)

Upozornění

- Informace o umělci, titulu, albu a žánru uložené na iPod® adaptér k iPod® nezpracovává - výběr titulů na základě těchto třídících a vyhledávacích kritérií není možný a není k dispozici žádný údaj na displeji rádia resp. radionavigačního systému.

2.2 Kompatibilita

Adaptér k iPod® je kompatibilní s následujícími přístroji iPod® 20 GB, iPod® 30 GB, iPod® 40 GB, iPod® 60 GB, iPod® mini, iPod® nano a iPod® Photo. Vlastnosti a funkce adaptéru se vztahují k aktuálnímu stavu softwaru adaptéru.

Upozornění

- Budoucí změny stavu softwaru resp. iPod® firmwaru mohou vést k odchylným vlastnostem a funkcím, které v tomto návodu k použití nejsou zohledněny.

2.3 Nabíjení akumulátoru

Je-li iPod® spojen s adaptérem k iPod® a rádio/ radionavigační systém jsou zapnuty, akumulátor iPod® se nabíjí. Jakmile akumulátor dosáhne plné kapacity, systém přepne do režimu udržování náboje. Nabíjení akumulátoru iPod® se ukončí ihned po vypnutí rádia/ radionavigačního systému.

2.4 Údržba a servis adaptéru k iPod®

Adaptér k iPod® nepodléhá žádnému opotřebení a při normálním provozu nevyžaduje žádnou údržbu. V případě defektu nechejte adaptér k iPod® vyměnit partnerem VW. Otevřením krabice adaptéru zaniká nárok na záruku.

3 Použití iPod® ve vozidle

Všechny varianty iPod® nebyly vyvinuty pro použití ve vozidle, to platí především pro velké výkyvy teplot, ke kterým ve vozidle může dojít. Z tohoto důvodu neponechávejte Váš iPod® ve vozidle, pokud vozidlo na delší dobu opustíte.

Upozornění

- Příliš vysoké resp. příliš nízké teploty, ke kterým může uvnitř vozidla dojít, mohou Váš iPod® poškodit a/ nebo ovlivnit výkonnost přístroje.
- Další odkazy k tématu *provozní a ukládací teploty* najdete v uživatelské příručce iPod®.

⚠ POZOR!

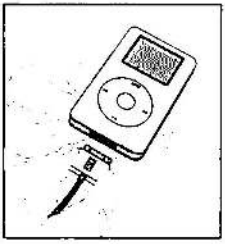
- **Věnujte Vaši pozornost v prvé řadě řízení vozidla. Nepozornost řidiče může způsobit nehody a zranění.**
- **Neodvádějte Vaši pozornost od dopravního dění nastavováním nebo obsluhou iPod®.**
- **iPod® používejte pouze tehdy, pokud to situace na silnici i povětrnostní a dopravní podmínky dovolí, a pokud se tím nesníží Vaše pozornost.**
- **Nastavte hlasitost tak, abyste za každé situace dobře slyšeli vnější akustické signály, např. sirény policie a hasičů - nebezpečí nehod!**

4 Připojení adaptéru k iPod®

Připojení:

Upozornění

- Nové nebo delší dobu nepoužívané iPody se musí před jejich použitím s adaptérem k iPod® dle příručky iPod® nabít.
- K docílení optimální reprodukce byste měli na iPod® před jeho připojením k adaptéru k iPod® dle příručky iPod® aktivovat nastavení *přizpůsobení hlasitosti* a *EQ* (equalizer) deaktivovat.
- Je-li iPod® spojen s adaptérem k iPod®, nejsou tlačítka na iPod® funkční.
- *Opakovaná reprodukce* ⊂⊃ se při zapnutí iPod® automaticky aktivuje - jakmile je dokončena reprodukce seznamu nahrávek, začne se soubor přehrávat znovu od začátku.



– Vypněte zapalování vozidla a zasuňte konektor adaptéru k iPod® logem nahoru do spodní strany iPod® až citelně zaskočí.

Po připojení iPod® se na displeji iPod® krátce objeví logo Volkswagen. Potom se zobrazí verze softwaru adaptéru k iPod® a signalizace nabíjení akumulátoru.

Pokud není iPod® po připojení k adaptéru k iPod® rozpoznán, zaveďte *nastavení iPod® do původního stavu* dle příručky iPod®.

Odpojení:

– Vypněte zapalování vozidla, stiskněte na konektoru vlevo a vpravo odjišťovací tlačítko a vytáhněte jej ze zdířky iPod®.

5 Využití seznamů nahrávek

Po připojení iPod® k adaptéru k iPod® dojde k automatickému načítání uložených titulů a disponibilních seznamů nahrávek. Při tom se disponibilní seznamy nahrávek seřadí nejprve v numerickém a potom v abecedním pořadí jako tlačítko CD 1-5.

Z tohoto důvodu a pro usnadnění použití seznamů nahrávek při provozu vozidla doporučujeme na iPod® vkládat maximálně pět souborů nahrávek (např. 1 .... až 5 ....) . Seznamy nahrávek je možné vyvolat přímo přes rádio resp. radionavigační systém.

Tlačítku CD 6 jsou přiřazeny všechny tituly uložené na iPod®.

Upozornění

- Obsáhlejší informace k vytváření a správě seznamů nahrávek najdete v příručce iPod®.

6 Ovládání pomocí rádia/radionavigačního systému

iPod® se obsluhuje tlačítky rádia/ radionavigačního systému resp. tlačítky multifunkčního volantu stejně jako při obsluze CD měniče.

V následujícím popsané ovládání se může v závislosti na typu rádia/ radionavigačního systému provádět buď přímo tlačítky přístroje, anebo přes ovládací menu pro CD měnič. Podrobné informace k funkcím obslužných prvků rádia/ radionavigačního systému najdete v návodu k použití rádia/ radionavigačního systému v kapitole "CD měnič".

Upozornění

- Označení tlačítek rádia/ radionavigačního systému nebo multifunkčního volantu uvedená v příručce Vašeho vozidla se mohou v určitých případech lišit od označení uvedených v tomto návodu.

6.1 Zapnutí a vypnutí rádia/ radionavigačního systému:

Rádio/ radionavigační systém se při zapnutí zapalování automaticky zapne. Při vytažení klíče ze zapalování se rádio/ radionavigační systém automaticky vypne
Při zapnutém zapalování je možné rádio/ radionavigační systém podle potřeby ručně vypnout. Pokud bylo rádio/ radionavigační systém vypnuty ručně, při dalším zapnutí zapalování se automaticky nezapnou.
Dle potřeby je možné rádio/ radionavigační systém zapnout také ručně bez zasunutého klíče zapalování. V tomto případě se rádio/ radionavigační systém z důvodu šetření baterie vozidla po 1 hodině automaticky vypne.

Upozornění

- Při zapnutí rádia/ radionavigačního systému se spolu s ním automaticky zapne také připojený iPod®. Akumulátor iPod® se nabíjí.
- Po vypnutí a opětovném zapnutí zapalování nebo rádia/ radionavigačního systému pokračuje iPod® s reprodukcí na naposledy hraném místě. Na displeji rádia/ radionavigačního systému se pak nezávisle na skutečném seznamu nahrávek objeví vždy CD6. Tento údaj zůstane nezměněn až do přechodu na jiný seznam nahrávek.
- V závislosti na typu rádia/radionavigačního systému se iPod® cca 2-10 minut po vypnutí rádia/ radionavigačního systému automaticky vypne.

6.2 Navolení iPod®:

- Není-li v šachtě hnací jednotky rádia/ radionavigačního systému žádné CD, stiskněte pro na volení iPod® jednou tlačítko CD.
- Nachází-li se v šachtě hnací jednotky rádia/ radionavigačního systému CD, stiskněte pro na volení iPod® dvakrát tlačítko CD.

Na displeji se objeví CD6, zobrazí se číslo a doba reprodukce aktuálního titulu (TRACK).

Upozornění

- Rádio/ radionavigační systém na displeji zobrazuje jen maximálně dvoumístná čísla titulů. Při navolení titulu s trojmístným číslem je první místo na displeji rádia/ radionavigačního systému potlačeno. Údaj "125" na displeji iPod® se na displeji rádia/ radionavigačního systémua v daném příp. v kombinovaném přístroji zobrazí jen jako "25". Z tohoto důvodu doporučujeme přiřadit seznamům nahrávek maximálně 99 titulů.

6.3 Reprodukce titulů iPod®:

Reprodukce titulů iPod® se provádí stejně jako při obsluze CD měniče tlačítky rádia/ radionavigačního systému. Po navolení iPod® (viz nahoře) pokračuje iPod® s reprodukcí na naposledy hraném místě. Na displeji rádia/ radionavigačního systému se pak nezávisle na skutečném seznamu nahrávek objeví vždy CD6. Tento údaj zůstane nezměněn až do přechodu na jiný seznam nahrávek.

6.4 Výběr seznamů nahrávek iPod®:

Výběr seznamů nahrávek iPod® se provádí stejně jako při obsluze CD měniče tlačítky rádia/ radionavigačního systému.

Tlačítko resp. funkce menu CD (1)...(5) rádia/ radionavigačního systému jsou automaticky obsazeny pěti prvními seznamy nahrávek iPod®.

Tlačítko resp. funkce menu CD (6) rádia/ radionavigačního systému vybírá všechny uložené tituly iPod® a přehrává je jako jeden seznam nahrávek.

Podrobné informace k funkcím obslužných prvků rádia/ radionavigačního systému najdete v návodu k použití rádia/ radionavigačního systému v kapitole "CD měnič".

Upozornění

- Vyberete-li prázdný seznam nahrávek iPod® nebo seznam nahrávek iPod®, který není k dispozici, bude reprodukce automaticky pokračovat následujícím dostupným seznamem nahrávek.
- Při přechodu na jiný seznam nahrávek se může stát, že v závislosti na rádiu/ radionavigačním systému krátce uslyšíte titul z předcházejícího seznamu nahrávek. Tato funkce je podmíněna systémem a není známkou závady.

6.5 Přeskakování titulů vpřed a vzad:

Přeskakování titulů vpřed a vzad se provádí jako u ovládání CD měniče otočným/stiskacím knoflíkem nebo tlačítky resp. funkcemi menu (◀) (▶) rádia/ radionavigačního systému. Podrobné informace k funkcím obslužných prvků rádia/ radionavigačního systému najdete v návodu k použití rádia/ radionavigačního systému v kapitole "CD měnič".

Upozornění

- Přeskakování titulů vpřed resp. vzad je možné u některých rádií/ radionavigačních systémů provádět jen do čísla titulu 99 pomocí otočného/stiskacího knoflíku resp. ovládacího kolečka/knoflíku. Tituly s vyššími čísly se musí vybrat tlačítky. Při navolení titulu s trojmístným číslem je první místo na displeji rádia/ radionavigačního systému potlačeno.
- Při velmi rychle opakovaném přeskakování titulů vpřed resp. vzad se mohou objevit časové prodlevy a audio výstup se na delší dobu odmlčí. V určitých případech se mohou přeskočené tituly krátce zahrát.

6.6 Rychlý dopředný a zpětný posun:

Rychlý dopředný a zpětný posun se provádí jako u ovládání CD měniče tlačítky resp. funkcemi menu (◀◀) (▶▶) rádia/ radionavigačního systému. Nejsou-li tlačítka na rádiu/ radionavigačním systému k dispozici, lze tuto funkci navolit dlouhým stisknutím tlačítka (◀) resp. (▶). Podrobné informace k funkcím obslužných prvků rádia/ radionavigačního systému najdete v návodu k použití rádia/ radionavigačního systému v kapitole "CD měnič".

6.7 Automatické přehrávání titulů (SCAN):

Pomocí funkce SCAN můžete spustit vyhledávání, při němž se každý z titulů aktuálního seznamu nahrávek po dobu jedné sekundy zahraje.

– Ke spuštění automatického přehrávání titulů aktivujte SCAN.

– Abyste vybrali aktuálně zahraný titul a zároveň ukončili automatické přehrávání titulů, navolte znovu SCAN.

6.8 Nahodilá reprodukce (MIX):

Nahodilou reprodukci lze aktivovat tlačítkem (MIX) nebo v menu rádia/radionavigačního systému a umožňuje reprodukci titulů ze seznamu nahrávek v nahodilém pořadí.

Upozornění

- Je-li na iPodu při připojení funkce *nahodilý titul* již aktivována, převezme se přímo také pro provoz s rádiem/ radionavigačním systémem a lze ji pak dvojím stisknutím tlačítka MIX deaktivovat.
- Čísla titulů na displeji rádia/ radionavigačního systému se při tom započítávají postupně. Na displeji iPod® se zobrazuje číslo titulu v rámci seznamu titulů. Z tohoto důvodu může dojít k rozdílům v údajích na displejích obou přístrojů.